



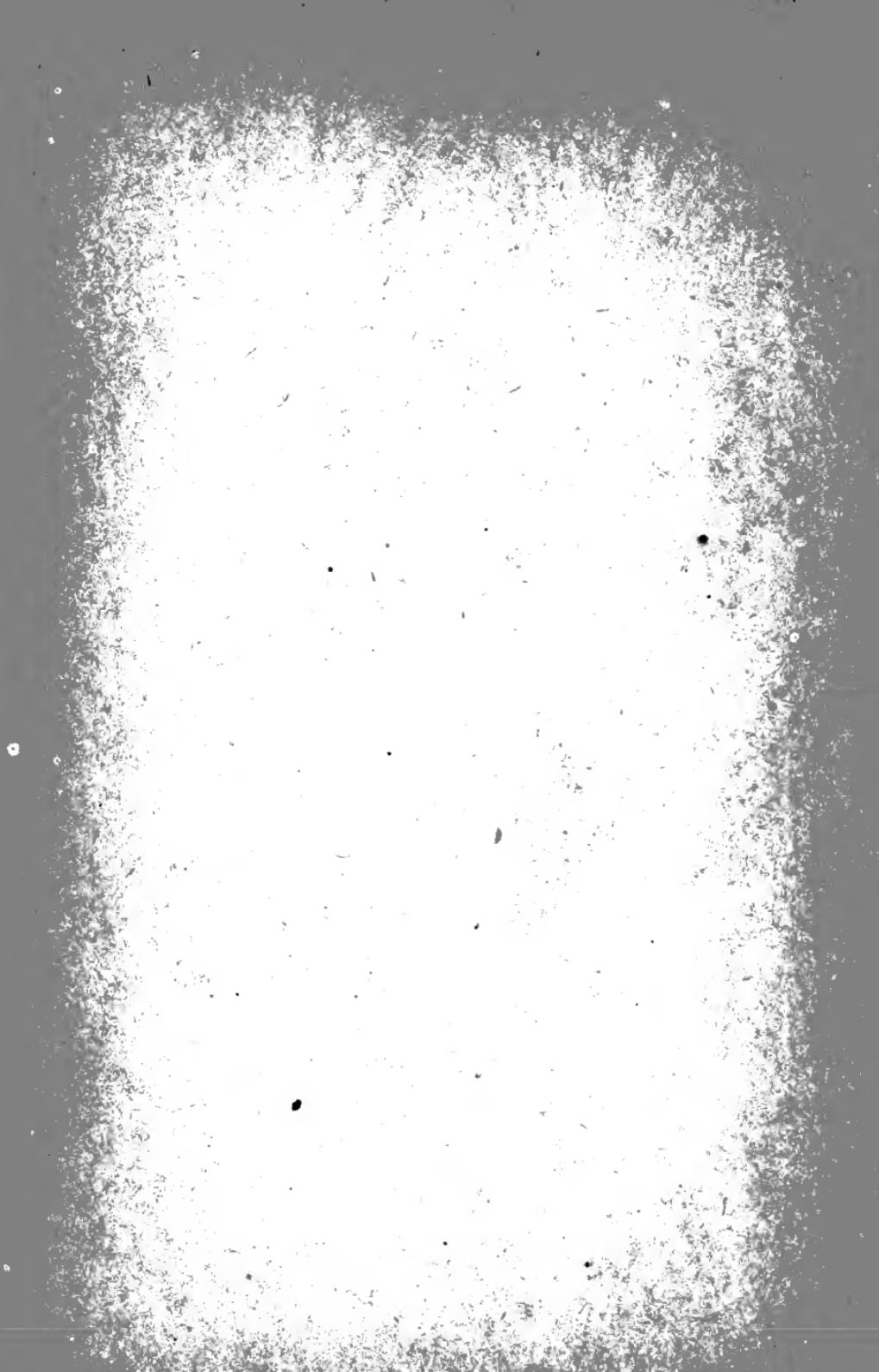
GIFT OF  
Provost  
Monroe E. Deutsch



EX LIBRIS

Monroe C. Deutsch.

June 4, 1904.



# TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

---

## CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY  
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

<http://www.archive.org/details/firstlatinbook00moorrich>

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE, PH.D.  
ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY  
1903

*Syphilis Provenel Novak & Reubel*

760  
M 821

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY  
**D. APPLETON AND COMPANY**

## P R E F A C E

---

THIS First Latin Book is intended to provide the necessary preparation for the reading of Nepos and Caesar. Whatever objections may be urged against the custom, the fact remains that the majority of schools begin these authors immediately, or very soon, after the first book is completed, and therefore the beginner must be prepared as fully as possible for this reading. To provide this preparation, the 850 words most frequent in Caesar's *Gallic War* and Nepos's *Lives* were selected to form the main vocabulary of this book ; then, since every art is acquired only by the frequent practice of the same or similar exercise, each word, with few exceptions, has been used eight times or more in the sentences for translation. Although this repetition and the large type chosen to relieve the pupil's eyes may at first glance make the exercises seem long to some teachers, the author holds that the principle of frequent use is of vital importance, and believes that in no other way can an adequate knowledge of the essential vocabulary be acquired. If the exercises here given be done faithfully, the pupil will find on passing to Nepos or Caesar that he is acquainted with all the common words in the senses in which they are used by these authors, and will escape the discouragement incident to the acquisition of a new vocabulary.

Some may miss lists of related words such as are given in many books. Experience, however, shows that such lists have little value compared with those made by the

pupil himself in his note-book. The making of such lists should be steadily encouraged and the lists frequently reviewed. In the vocabularies allied words are regularly given to assist the pupil's memory.

The method of presentation, so far as possible, is the natural one. Sentences are used from the beginning; the unnatural order at first, all inflections with little syntax, then syntax, has been avoided; but the simplest and most familiar constructions of the noun and verb are employed early in connection with the fundamental inflections. The demonstrative pronouns are introduced in Lesson XII; and the simple independent uses of the subjunctive are begun in Lesson XXIX, followed by those dependent constructions which naturally belong with the independent. The introduction of Indirect Discourse in connection with the Subject and Object Infinitive will, it is hoped, free the learner from one of the time-honored terrors of Latin. Throughout, inflections and syntax are gradually developed and fully illustrated. In the treatment of the latter, recourse has constantly been made to points of similarity in Latin and English, and constructions familiar to the learner from his daily speech, as, for example, appositives, predicate nouns and adjectives, subject and object infinitives, have been freely used before they receive formal treatment. As a result of this, the rule is simply the codification of the learner's knowledge rather than the presentation of a new principle. As some teachers prefer to use a grammar with the first book, references have been given under each rule to the Latin grammar of West (W.), Bennett (B.), Allen and Greenough (AG.), and Harkness (H.).

The author hopes that this book will prove interesting as well as useful. To secure this end the subject-matter of the exercises has been considered with care, and in most lessons the sentences taken together tell some

story rather than remain isolated illustrations of inflections and syntax. Passages of connected Latin, fables and stories from Greek and Roman history, are early introduced and used with increasing frequency to the end. These have been drawn and adapted from Livy, Eutropius, Florus, *Viri Romae*, etc. At the end Caesar's account of his first invasion of Britain is given as possessing unique interest for English-speaking pupils.

Yet while every effort has been made to give the necessary elementary knowledge in a simple and interesting manner, care has been taken not to avoid or to slur over the real difficulties of beginning Latin. The author has no sympathy with the notion, now fortunately disappearing, that a study must be made easy to escape being dull. A knowledge of Latin, like that of every other subject, can only be acquired by hard work; and the author's own experience in teaching the elements of Latin has convinced him that nothing contributes so certainly to an interest in the subject as hard study and, the mastery of each principle as it is met. Real acquisition is a delight, and nothing has done so much to create a distaste for Latin or caused so many to drop the language at the end of the first year as careless work in the beginning and the useless half-knowledge resulting therefrom. Inflections and rules should be *learned*, and the exercises should be mastered. If this be done throughout the study of this book, the pupil will find a genuine interest in Nepos and Caesar.

Finally, no attempt has here been made to supplant the intelligent teacher. The printed word can never be so potent as the living voice, and each topic can be advantageously illustrated by the instructor.

The author wishes to thank Prof. A. F. West for permission to make free use of the excellent statements employed in his Latin Grammar in the TWENTIETH CENTURY SERIES; to express his obligation for invaluable aid

of every kind to Dr. J. W. H. Walden, of Cambridge; to Dr. J. W. Hewitt, Master in Worcester Academy, and to Mr. Peterssen of the Harvard Graduate School for their kind assistance in proof-reading; and especially to Prof. Charles H. Forbes, of Phillips Academy, Andover, for his help at many points where his large experience has been of great service.

All suggestions and corrections will be gratefully received.

C. H. M.

CAMBRIDGE, MASS., *August 15, 1903.*

## CONTENTS

---

LESSON	PAGES
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1-6
I. FIRST DECLENSION.—Nominative and Accusative Singular and Plural. Subject. Object . . . . .	7-9
II. FIRST DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Possessive Genitive. Dative of the Indirect Object . . . . .	9-12
III. FIRST DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Predicate Nominative. Dative of Possessor . . . . .	12-14
IV. SECOND DECLENSION.—Appositives. Ablative of Place.	14-17
V. SECOND DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Adjectives. Predicate of Adjectives . . . . .	17-20
VI. SECOND DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Ablative of Accompaniment . . . . .	21-23
VII. THE VERB <b>sum</b> . Present system in the Indicative and Infinitive. Agreement of Verbs. Adjectives in -er . . . . .	24-26
VIII. FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive . . . . .	27-29
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Retort Truthful</i> . . . . .	29-30
IX. FIRST CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Passive Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Agent . . . . .	30-32
X. THE VERB <b>sum</b> . Perfect System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Means or Instrument . . . . .	33-35
XI. FIRST CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Perfect System of <b>amō</b> in the Indicative and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Ablative of Cause . . . . .	36-39
XII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <b>hic</b> AND <b>ille</b> . . . . .	39-42
XIII. THE RELATIVE <b>qui</b> . Agreement of the Relative Pronoun . . . . .	43-45
XIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>is</b> : THE INTERROGATIVE <b>quis</b> . . . . .	46-49

LESSON		PAGES
XV.	THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems . . . . .	49-52
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Early Kings of Rome</i> . . . . .	52
XVI.	THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems ( <i>continued</i> ). —Ablative of Manner . . . . .	53-56
XVII.	THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Liquid, Na- sal, and Spirant Stems. Objective Genitive . . . . .	56-60
XVIII.	THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Stems in <b>i</b> . . . . .	60-64
XIX.	THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Mixed Stems . . . . .	64-67
XX.	THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Rules for Gender. Accusative and Ablative of Time . . . . .	67-70
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of the Re- public</i> . . . . .	70-71
XXI.	ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	71-74
XXII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—Declension of Com- paratives. Ablative of Comparison . . . . .	74-77
XXIII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>continued</i> ).—Adjec- tives in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ilis</b> . Ablative of Degree of Difference . . . . .	78-80
XXIV.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>continued</i> ).—Irregu- lar Comparison. Ablative of Separation . . . . .	81-84
XXV.	FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	84-87
	READING EXERCISE: <i>Wars with the Gauls</i> . . . . .	87-88
XXVI.	FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS . . . . .	89-92
XXVII.	SECOND CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire and the Present Infinitive of <b>habeō</b> , active and passive . . . . .	92-94
XXVIII.	THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY . . . . .	95-97
XXIX.	SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Pres- ent System of the Subjunctive of <b>sum</b> , <b>amō</b> , and <b>habeō</b> . Volitive Subjunctive. Optative Subjunctive . . . . .	97-101
XXX.	SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Pur- pose and Result Clauses . . . . .	101-104
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Persian Wars</i> . . . . .	105
XXXI.	THIRD CONJUGATION. Present System of <b>regō</b> in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	106-109
XXXII	THIRD CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Perfect System of <b>regō</b> in the Indicative, Active and Passive	109-111

LESSON	PAGES
XXXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in <i>-iō</i> ).—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of <b>capiō</b> , Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Result. Clauses introduced by <b>quīn</b> . . . . .	111-115
XXXIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of <b>audiō</b> , Active and Passive . . . . .	115-117
XXXV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—Relative Clauses of Purpose and of Characteristic . . . . .	117-121
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Marathon</i> . . . . .	121-122
XXXVI. DEONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	122-124
XXXVII. DEONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—Semi-Deponent Verbs. Ablative with Deponents . . . . .	125-127
XXXVIII. THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	128-130
XXXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	131-134
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	134-137
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis</i> . . . . .	137-139
XLI. THE INFITIVE.—Subject and Object Infinitives. Indirect Discourse . . . . .	139-143
XLII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE ( <i>continued</i> ).—Indirect Questions. Conditions in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	143-146
READING EXERCISE: <i>Roman History from 60 B. C.</i> . . . . .	147-148
XLIII. THE COMPOUNDS OF <b>sum</b> .—Dative with Compounds . . . . .	148-150
XLIV. <b>Volō</b> , <b>nōlō</b> , <b>mālō</b> . . . . .	150-152
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of Civil War</i> . . . . .	153-154
XLV. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS . . . . .	154-156
XLVI. <b>Eō</b> AND <b>fīō</b> . . . . .	157-158
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Civil Wars (continued)</i> . . . . .	159-160
XLVII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—Clauses introduced by <b>antequam</b> and <b>priusquam</b> ; by <b>dum</b> . . . . .	160-164

LESSON		PAGES
XLVIII.	CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY <b>cum</b> . . . . .	164-167
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Assassination of Cae-sar</i> . . . . .	167-168
XLIX.	CAUSE AND CONCESSION . . . . .	169-171
L.	PARTICIPLES.—Ablative Absolute . . . . .	172-175
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Destruction of the Con-spirators</i> . . . . .	176-177
LI.	THE VERB <b>ferō</b> . . . . .	177-179
LII.	REVIEW OF PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJEC-TIVES. . . . .	179-181
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Actium and the End of the Civil Wars</i> . . . . .	181-183
LIII.	REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE . . . . .	183-187
LIV.	REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE . . . . .	187-191
	READING EXERCISE: <i>Octavian's Triumph and Rule</i> . . . . .	191-193
LV.	PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	193-195
LVI.	GERUND AND SUPINE . . . . .	196-199
LVII.	NUMERALS . . . . .	199-200
	CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN . . . . .	201-215
	APPENDIX.—Declensions and Conjugations . . . . .	217-258
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	259-285
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	286-298

# FIRST LATIN BOOK

---

## INTRODUCTION

### THE LATIN LANGUAGE

- 1 THE Latin language is so named because it was first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until it became the principal language of the Roman Empire, which once covered the whole western civilized world. It lasted as the common spoken language well into the Middle Ages, and as the universal language of scholars until about the middle of the eighteenth century. Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars speak it. It is also used in our time as the language of the Roman Catholic Church.
- 2 Latin is the parent of those modern languages which are known as Romance languages—such as French, Italian, and Spanish. About one-half of all our English words are borrowed from foreign languages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come either directly or indirectly from Latin.

### Alphabet

- 3 The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no j or w.

**4** **U** as the vowel form of **V** was not invented until the Middle Ages, but for convenience both forms are generally used. **K** is found only in **Kalendae**, *Calends, the first of the month*, and a very few other words. **Q** is always followed by **u** as in English. **Y** and **Z** were introduced about 50 b. c. to represent the sounds of the corresponding Greek letters, and are found only in foreign words.

**5** The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui**.

**6** The consonants are all other letters. They are divided into

Mutes (stopped sounds) **p, b, t, d, c, k, q, g.**

Liquids . . . . **l, m, n, r.**

Sibilant . . . . **s.**

Double consonants . . **x = cs or gs, z = ds.**

### Pronunciation

#### 7 VOWELS

The mark - over a vowel means that it is *long*, and ~ that it is *short*.

**ā** as the last *a* of *aha'*.

**ē** as in *whey.*

**ī** as in *pique.*

**ō** as in *omen.*

**ū** as *oo* in *pool.*

**ÿ** **ÿ** like the German *ü* or the French *u.*

**ă** as the first *a* of *aha!*

**ĕ** as in *whet.*

**ĭ** as in *pick.*

**ŏ** as in *omit.*

**ۇ** as in *put.*

#### 8 DIPHTHONGS

**ae** as *ai* in *aisle.*

**oe** as *oi* in *oil.*

**au** as *ow* in *owl.*

**eu** as *eu* in *feud.*

**ei** as *ei* in *feint.*

**ui** as *we.*

9 The sounds of **ei**, **ui**, **eu**, will be more accurately reproduced if the English words are somewhat drawled, so that the component vowels may be heard more distinctly, e. g., *fee-int.*

10 CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

**c** and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *get*.

**i** consonant is always like *y* in *yet*.

**s** is always sharp, as in *sun*, *sea*.

**t** is always sounded as in *time*.

**v** is always like *w* in *wine*.

**x** is like *ks*.

**z** is like *dz* in *adze*.

**bs** is like *ps*.

**bt** is like *pt*.

**ch** is like *k*.

Doubled consonants, like **ll**, **nn**, **tt**, must be sounded separately: *il-le*, *án-nus*, *mít-tō*. Compare the English *book-case*, *rat-trap*.

### Syllables

11 A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs: *au-rum*, *gold*; *a-má-vit*, *he loved*; *for-ti-tú-dō*, *bravery*.

12 In dividing words into syllables:

(a) A single consonant is attached to the following vowel: *lē-gā-tus*, *ambassador*.

(b) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are usually attached to the following vowel as can begin a word: *for-tis*, *brave*; *prō-vín-ci-a*, *province*; *cō-gnō-scō*, *I recognize*.

(c) But compound words are divided into their component parts: *ád-sum*, *I am present*.

### Quantity of Vowels

**13** Vowels are either *long* (marked -) or *short* (marked ~).

In this book all long vowels are marked ; all vowels not marked may be regarded as short.

**14** A vowel is regularly short before a vowel or h : měus, *mine* ; nihil, *nothing*.

(a) A few exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek : **Aenēas**.

**15** It will be useful to remember that, with a few exceptions which will be marked, a vowel before nt or nd is short.

**16** Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and vowels due to contraction are long : cāusa, *reason* ; inīquus (in + aēquus), *unfair* ; cōgō (cō + āgō), *compel*.

Also a vowel before i consonant, nf, ns, and often before gn, is long : éius, *of him, his* ; ínfans, *child* ; mēnsa, *table* ; régnum, *kingdom*.

### Quantity of Syllables

**17** A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is also long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant : ex, *from* ; mors, *death*.

It is important to remember that it is the *syllable*, not the vowel, which is long by position. Thus the last *syllable* of ámant is long by position, owing to the time required to pronounce the consonants nt, but the *vowel* a is short.

### Accent

18 The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult*.

19 Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pā-ter, mā-ter.*

20 Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: *Rō-mā-nus.* Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: *tā-bu-la, table; ma-ri-ti-mus, maritime.*

21 A few monosyllables, called enclitics because they are closely joined to the preceding words, always throw an accent upon the syllable before them, even if that syllable be short. The most common enclitics are *-ne, a sign of a question, and -que, and: auditne, does he hear? rosāque, and a rose.*

### Exercise for Pronunciation

In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde  
*In the throat of a wolf a bone had stuck. For pay*  
 igitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrahat. Hōc  
*therefore he hired a crane who it was to take out. This*  
 grūs longitūdine collī facile effēcit. Cum  
*the crane because of the length of his neck easily did. When,*  
 autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et  
*however, his pay he asked for, smiling the wolf and*  
 dentibus īfrendēns, "Num tibī," inquit, "parva mercēs  
*his teeth gnashing, "Does it to you," said he, "small pay*  
 vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus  
*seem that your head unharmed from a wolf's throat*  
 extrāxisti?"  
*you have got out?"*

**23** The Latin language has the same parts of speech as the English, and the same grammatical terms—*case, number, mood, tense, voice, declension*, etc.—are for the most part used in both English and Latin grammar.

### Cases

**24** The cases in Latin are the *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative*. These are partially distinguished by different forms, as will be explained later. There are also a few nouns which have a *locative* case, but this case had been nearly lost before the Romans developed a literature. The meanings of the cases will be shown in the following lessons.

### Gender

**25** There are three genders in Latin, as in English; but the gender of a Latin noun is more often determined by its ending than by its meaning. Special rules for gender will be given for each class of nouns; but the following general rules are useful :

(a) *Masculine* are names of males, also names of rivers, winds, and months : **pater**, *father*; **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*; **Eurus**, *east wind*; **Martius**, *March*.

(b) *Feminine* are names of females, also names of countries, islands, towns, and trees : **māter**, *mother*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*; **Eurōpa**, *Europe*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **quercus**, *oak*.

## LESSON I

### FIRST OR -ā DECLENSION

26

#### Stem in ā<sup>1</sup>

THE Gender is *Feminine*, except of nouns which denote males (25 a).

#### NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL

27

#### EXAMPLES

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābula, story.} \\ \text{rosa, rose.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulae, stories.} \\ \text{rosae, roses.} \end{array} \right.$
ACCUSATIVE	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulam, story.} \\ \text{rosam, rose.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulās, stories.} \\ \text{rosās, roses.} \end{array} \right.$

(a) Notice how the Latin plural is distinguished from the singular, and that, while in English the nominative and accusative (i. e. objective) have the same form, in Latin the endings differ.

Form the accusative singular, the nominative and accusative plural of **puella**, *girl*; **via**, *road*; **parva**, *small*; **māgna**, *large*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Stem is the body of the word to which the endings are attached. The term is used here for convenience, but the changes of stems in forming the cases are too complicated for the beginner to attempt to understand.

## 28

## VOCABULARY

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
<i>ancilla</i> , f. <i>maid-servant</i> .	<i>bona</i> , f. <i>good</i> .
<i>fābula</i> , f. <i>story, tale</i> .	<i>lāta</i> , f. <i>wide, broad</i> .
<i>Iūlia</i> , f. <i>Julia</i> .	<i>longa</i> , f. <i>long</i> .
<i>puella</i> , f. <i>girl</i> .	<i>māgna</i> , f. <i>large</i> .
<i>rosa</i> , f. <i>rose</i> .	<i>parva</i> , f. <i>small, little</i> .
<i>Tullia</i> , f. <i>Tullia</i> .	
<i>via</i> , f. <i>road</i> .	
PARTICLES	VERBS
-ne, a sign of a question (21).	<i>est</i> , ( <i>he, she, it</i> ) <i>is</i> .
<i>et</i> , <i>and</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are</i> .
	<i>amat</i> , ( <i>he, she, it</i> ) <i>loves, likes</i> .
	<i>amant</i> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>love, like</i> .

## 29

## EXAMPLES

1. *Puella est parva.* *The girl is small.*
2. *Viae sunt longae.* *The roads are long.*
3. *Iūlia amat parvam puellam.* *Julia loves the little girl.*
4. *Amantne puellae rosās?* *Do the girls like roses?*

(a) Notice that in Latin there is no article : we may translate *puella*, *girl*, *a girl*, *the girl*, as the situation requires. The fourth example above might have been translated, *Do girls like the roses?*

(b) Notice also that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *gender, number, and case*, as in English.

30     *Rule.*—The Subject of a finite<sup>1</sup> verb is in the Nominative.

31     *Rule.*—The Direct Object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative.

W. 289, 308; B. 166, 172; AG. 173, 237; H. 387, 404.

32     1. *Fābula est longa.* 2. *Lāta est via.* 3. *Longa via est lāta.* 4. *Iūlia est puella.* 5. *Parva puella est Tullia.*

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

6. Iūlia amat māgnās rosās. 7. Amatne Iūlia longās fābulās? 8. Parvae puellae fābulās amant. 9. Iūlia est ancilla. 10. Estne<sup>1</sup> bona ancilla? 11. Tullia et Iūlia sunt bonae ancillae. 12. Ancillae parvam puellam amant.

33 1. The road is long. 2. The wide road is long.  
 3. Girls like roses. 4. Does Julia like roses? 5. Julia likes large roses. 6. Are Julia and Tullia little girls?  
 7. They are maid-servants. 8. Is the story good? 9. It is good and long.

---

## LESSON II

## FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

34

## PARADIGM

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc. <sup>2</sup>	<i>rosa, a rose.</i>	<i>rosae, roses.</i>
GEN.	<i>rosae, of a rose.</i>	<i>rosārum, of roses.</i>
DAT.	<i>rosae, to a rose.</i>	<i>rosis, to roses.</i>
ACCU.	<i>rosam, a rose.</i>	<i>rosās, roses.</i>
ABL.	<i>rosā, with<sup>3</sup> a rose.</i>	<i>rosis, with roses.</i>

(a) The terminations, printed above in full-faced type, represent the case-endings combined with the stem; but in some forms no case-ending appears.

(b) Notice what cases are alike in the paradigm. Make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the number of the subject is shown by the verb-ending.

<sup>2</sup> The vocative is the case of address; in most nouns it is the same as the nominative.

<sup>3</sup> This translation of the ablative is only one of a number possible; the various meanings will be given later.

## POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

35

## EXAMPLES

1. **Rosa** puellae est alba. *The girl's rose is white.*
2. **Ancilla** Tulliae est bona. *Tullia's maid is good.*

(a) Notice that the genitives **puellae** and **Tulliae** tell the persons who possess the rose and the maid-servant. Such a genitive is called a *Possessive Genitive*.

36     **Rule.**—The Genitive is used to denote the Possessor.

W. 353; B. 198; AG. 214, a. I; H. 440, 1.

## DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

37

## EXAMPLES

1. **Iūlia** rosam **ancillae** dat. *Julia gives the maid a rose.*
2. **Tullia** fābulam **puellis** narrat. *Tullia tells the girls a story.*

(a) Notice that the datives **ancillae** and **puellis** tell the persons to whom something is given or told. Such a dative, denoting the person toward whom the action of the verb is directed, is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*. It may often be translated by the English Objective case with *to* or *for*.

38     **Rule.**—The Indirect Object of a verb is in the Dative case.

W. 326; B. 187; AG. 224; H. 424.

39

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

cūra, f. *care.*  
 epistula, f. *letter.*  
 filia,<sup>1</sup> f. *daughter.*  
 patria, f. *fatherland.*  
 rēgina, f. *queen.*  
 silva, f. *wood, forest.*

## ADJECTIVES

cāra, f. *dear, beloved.*  
 mala, f. *bad, wicked.*  
 multa, f. *much, many.*  
 nova, f. *new.*  
 pulchra, f. *beautiful, pretty.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative and ablative plural **filiā-bus**.

**sed**, conj. *but.*

**nōn**, adv. *not.*

VERBS

**dat**, (*he, she, it*) *gives.*

**narrant**, (*they*) *tell.*

**dant**, (*they*) *give.*

**habet**, (*he, she, it*) *has.*

**narrat**, (*he, she, it*) *tells.*

**habent**, (*they*) *have.*

**40** 1. Tullia est rēgīnae filia. 2. Rēgīna novam fābulam filiae narrat. 3. Rēgīna habet pulchrās filiās. 4. Rēgīnae filiābus (dat.) pulchram fābulam narrat. 5. Parvae puellae (nom.) rosās multās rēgīnae dant. 6. Rēgīna amat patriam. 7. Patria rēgīnae (dat.) cāra est. 8. Rēgīna est bona et patriam amat. 9. Rēgīna filiae epistulam dat. 10. Suntne viae patriae longae? 11. Sunt longae sed nōn lātae. 12. Silva pulchra est lāta. 13. Rēgīnae bonae multam cūram habent. 14. Mala ancilla est māgna cūra.

**41** Notice how the order of the preceding sentences differs from that in English. Latin being an inflected language, that is, having different forms to express the relation of words, admits of greater freedom in the arrangement of a sentence than ours. For example, if some one should say in English, *The queen the girl loves*, we should not know whether *queen* was subject or object; but in the Latin **Rēgīna puellam amat**, the case-endings make the construction clear. Study the following sentences:

1. **Rēgīna parvam puellam amat.** *The QUEEN (in contrast to the king, or any one else) loves the little girl.*

2. **Parvam puellam amat rēgīna.** *It is the LITTLE GIRL (not some one else) the queen loves.*

3. **Amatne rēgīna parvam puellam?** *Does the queen LOVE the little girl?*

The following general principles should be remembered :

(a) In a Latin sentence the subject, as the most important part, is ordinarily placed first; then the object

follows, as the next most important part; the indirect object, if any, follows; and the verb comes at the end, except such unimportant forms as *est*, *sunt*, and other parts of the Latin verb ‘to be,’ which may generally be placed in any convenient part of the sentence.

(b) Adjectives usually precede their nouns.

(c) If a word is to be made emphatic, it is ordinarily put first in the sentence.

**42** With these principles in mind translate the following sentences, and see the varying meaning you can give by changing the position of the Latin words. Remember the Latin order is significant; it is never a matter of chance.

1. Tullia's letter is long.
2. The maid gives the letter to the queen.
3. The queen's daughter is not beautiful, but (she is)<sup>1</sup> dear.
4. The maid is telling Julia a new story.
5. Julia is a little girl, but she loves long stories.
6. Large forests are beautiful.
7. A good<sup>2</sup> queen loves her country, but a bad<sup>2</sup> queen does not.

### LESSON III

#### FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

##### PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

**43**

##### EXAMPLES

1. **Alexandra est rēgīna.** *Alexandra is the queen.*
2. **Tullia et Iūlia sunt par-** *Tullia and Julia are little*  
**vae pueræ.** *girls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the nominatives **rēgīna**, **pueræ**, are in the predicates, and mean the same

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Express emphasis by the order.

as the subjects **Alexandra** and **Tullia et Iūlia**. Such nouns as **rēgina** and **puella** are called *Predicate Nouns*.

(b) Notice that nouns were used in this way in sentences 4, 5, 9, 10, and 11 of Lesson I, and sentences 1 and 14 of Lesson II.

**44 Rule.**—A *Predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case.

W. 290; B. 168; AG. 185; H. 393.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

**45 EXAMPLES**

1. **Bona ancilla est Iūliae** (dative). *Julia has a good maid.*
2. **Rosae sunt pueris** (dative). *The girls have roses.*

(a) Notice that the datives **Iūliae** and **pueris** are used in the predicate with **est** and **sunt** to tell the persons to whom **ancilla** and **rosae** belong, and that the meaning is the same as **Iūlia bonam ancillam habet**, **Pueriae rosas habent**. Such a dative is called the *Dative of Possessor*. The thing possessed is the subject of the verb.

**46 Rule.**—The Dative is used with *est*, and other forms of the Latin verb meaning “to be,” to denote the Possessor.

W. 340; B. 190; AG. 231; H. 430.

### VOCABULARY

#### NOUNS

<b>āra</b> , f. <i>altar.</i>	<b>Graecia</b> , f. <i>Greece.</i>
<b>Britannia</b> , f. <i>Britain, England.</i>	<b>Ītalia</b> , f. <i>Italy.</i>
<b>dea</b> , <sup>1</sup> f. <i>goddess.</i>	<b>nauta</b> , m. <i>sailor.</i>
<b>fāma</b> , f. <i>fame, reputation.</i>	<b>poēta</b> , m. <i>poet.</i>
	<b>vīta</b> , f. <i>life.</i>

#### ADJECTIVES

<b>clāra</b> , f. <i>renowned, famous.</i>	<b>mea</b> , f. <i>my.</i>
<b>grāta</b> , f. <i>pleasing, acceptable.</i>	<b>tua</b> , f. <i>your (singular).</i>

<sup>1</sup> **Dea** forms the dative and ablative plural like **fīlia** (39).

## VERBS

**laudat**, (*he, etc.*) *praises*.      **habitat**, (*he, etc.*) *lives, dwells*.  
**laudant**, (*they*) *praise*.      **habitant**, (*they*) *live, dwell*.

## ADVERBS

**ibi**, *there*.      **ubi**, *where* (relative and interrogative).

**48**    1. Graecia est mea patria, Italia est patria Tulliae.  
 2. Deae habent multās ārās. 3. Deābus sunt multae ārae.  
 4. Ubi<sup>1</sup> sunt ārae deārum? 5. Laudatne poēta deam?  
 6. Poēta, māgna est tua fāma. 7. Longa vīta nōn est  
 nautae. 8. Vīta rēgīnae est longa. 9. Rēgīna multās  
 filiās habet. 10. Rēgīnae (dat.) sunt multae filiae. 11.  
 Fāma est poētae grāta. 12. Clāra est poētae fāma. 13.  
 Italia est patria nautae, sed ibi nōn habitat.

**49**    1. The poet loves great fame. 2. Altars are acceptable to the goddesses. 3. England is the sailor's native land and he lives there. 4. Poets love and praise their native land. 5. The queen has a beautiful daughter.<sup>2</sup> 6. Do the broad forests belong to the queen?<sup>2</sup> 7. My daughter, your letter is not long.

## LESSON IV

## SECOND OR -o DECLEMNSION

## Stem in o

**50**    THE Gender of nouns of the Second Declension ending in -us in the nominative is usually *Masculine*.

<sup>1</sup> As **ubi** is itself an interrogative particle, -ne is not needed.

<sup>2</sup> In how many ways can this be translated?

51

## PARADIGM

**Servus**, *slave*.

servo-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	<b>servus</b> , serve	<b>servī</b>
GEN.	<b>servī</b>	<b>servōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>servō</b>	<b>servīs</b>
ACCU.	<b>servum</b>	<b>servōs</b>
ABL.	<b>servō</b>	<b>servīs</b>

(a) The vocative singular of such nouns ends in -e. In all other nouns and in all plurals it is the same as the nominative.

(b) Notice what cases have the same terminations; make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

(c) All the feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have corresponding masculine forms in -us declined like **servus**: **bonus**, **cārus**, **clārus**, **longus**, **māgnus**, **parvus**, etc.

(d) Decline together, **bonus amīcus, lātus campus**.

## APPOSITIVES

52

## EXAMPLES

1. **Dea Vesta āram habet.** *The goddess, Vesta, has an altar.*
2. **Iūliae puellae rosam**    **dat ancilla.** *The maid gives a rose to the girl Julia.*

(a) Notice that **Vesta** is in the same case as **dea**, and explains what goddess is meant; that **Iūliae** bears the same relation to **puellae**. Such a noun explaining another noun referring to the same person or thing is called an *Appositive*, as in English.

53    **Rule.—An Appositive agrees with its subject in case.**

W. 291; B. 169, 2; AG. 184; H. 393.

Decline together **dea Vesta, Marcus dominus**.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE

54

## EXAMPLES

1. **Amicus est in hortō.** *A friend is in the garden.*  
 2. **Dea āram in campō habet.** *The goddess has an altar in the plain.*

(a) Notice that **in hortō**, **in campō** answer the question *Where?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of the Place Where*.

55     **Rule.**—The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition.

W. 401; B. 228; AG. 258, c; H. 483.

56

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

<b>agricola</b> , -ae, m. <i>farmer.</i>	<b>servus</b> , -ī, m. <i>slave.</i>
<b>amicus</b> , -ī, m. <i>friend.</i>	<b>terra</b> , -ae, f. <i>land, earth,</i> <i>ground.</i>
<b>campus</b> , -ī, m. <i>plain, field.</i>	
<b>dominus</b> , -ī, m. <i>master, owner.</i>	<b>Vesta</b> , -ae, f. <i>Vesta</i> (a goddess).
<b>hortus</b> , -ī, m. <i>garden.</i>	<b>vīlicus</b> , ī, m. <i>steward, superintendent of an estate.</i>
<b>Marcus</b> , -ī, m. <i>Marcus.</i>	
<b>ōceanus</b> , -ī, m. <i>ocean.</i>	<b>villa</b> , -ae, f. <i>country house, farm.</i>
<b>Quīntus</b> , -ī, m. <i>Quintus.</i>	

## VERBS

<b>cūrat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>cares for, takes care of.</i>	<b>errant</b> , (they) <i>wander, stray about.</i>
<b>cūrant</b> , (they) <i>care for, take care of.</i>	<b>labōrat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>works.</i>
<b>errat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>wanders, strays about.</i>	<b>labōrant</b> , (they) <i>work.</i>
	<b>nāvigat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>sails.</i>
	<b>nāvигant</b> , (they) <i>sail.</i>

**in**, preposition with abl., *in.* **itaque**, conj., *therefore.*

57     1. **Āra deae Vestae est in silvā.** 2. **Deae grāta est rosa.** 3. **Itaque Marcus multās rosās deae dat.** 4. **Marcus est agricola et amīcus Quīntī.** 5. **Quīntō sunt lātī campī**

et māgnus hortus. 6. Habet villam et multōs servōs.  
 7. Servī labōrant in campīs domini. 8. Quīntus in terrā nōn habitat, sed ūceanum nāvigat. 9. Marcus est Quīntī vīlicus. 10. Itaque Marcus hortum et villam meī amicī Quīntī cūrat. 11. Amīce Quīnte, Marcus est bonus vīlicus. 12. Iūlia et Tullia, filiae dominī, ibi errant, ubi sunt multae et pulchrae rosae.

**58** 1. The steward's reputation is good. 2. Marcus, the owner of the country house, has a new steward.<sup>1</sup> 3. Where are the new slaves working? 4. They are working in your garden, but the maids are working in my country house. 5. The ocean is dear to the sailor, but the farmer praises the land. 6. Julia, where are your beautiful roses? 7. My roses are on (in) the altar of the goddess. 8. Poets praise the famous forests of Italy, where the goddess has many altars.<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON V

### SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

#### NEUTER NOUNS

**59** THE Gender of all nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-um* is *Neuter*.

**60**

#### PARADIGM

**Dōnum, gift.**  
dono-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnō	dōnīs
ACCU.	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	dōnō	dōnīs

<sup>1</sup> Translate the sentence in two ways.

(a) Notice that the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative have the same form. This is true of all neuters.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**61** The masculine and feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have neuter forms in *-um*: *bonum*, *cārum*, *clārum*, *longum*, *māgnūm*, *parvum*, etc. These are declined like *dōnum*.

The full declension of these adjectives is shown thus :

**62**

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	<i>bonus</i> , <i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
Gen.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
Dat.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
Accu.	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
Abl.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
Gen.	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
Accu.	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
Abl.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

**63**

## EXAMPLES

1. <i>Amīcus est bonus.</i>	4. <i>Amīci sunt bonī.</i>
2. <i>Puella est pulchra.</i>	5. <i>Puellae sunt pulchrae.</i>
3. <i>Dōnum est grātūm.</i>	6. <i>Dōna sunt grāta.</i>
	7. <i>Rēgina māgnam cūram habet.</i>
	8. <i>Poēta pulchrōs hortōs laudat.</i>

(a) Notice that in these sentences and in those of all the preceding lessons the adjectives have the same *Gen-*

*der, Number, and Case* as the nouns they modify; also that in the first six sentences the adjectives are in the predicate. Compare these with predicate nouns (43).

64 *Rule.*—An Adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

W. 293; B. 234; AG. 186; H. 394.

65 In the sentences used thus far the adjectives have the same terminations as the nouns they modify; but this is not always so—e. g., we must say, *bonus agricola*, *bonī agricolae*, etc., since *agricola* is masculine.

Decline *clārus poēta*.

66

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

<i>argentum</i> , -ī, n. <i>silver, money</i> .	<i>Horātius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -ī, m. <i>Horace</i> .
<i>dōnum</i> , -ī, n. <i>gift</i> .	<i>lupus</i> , -ī, m. <i>wolf</i> .
<i>filius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -ī, m. <i>son</i> .	<i>Mūsa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Muse</i> .
<i>gladius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -ī m. <i>sword</i> .	<i>periculum</i> , -ī, n. <i>danger</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , -ae, f. <i>gratitude</i> ,	<i>populus</i> , -ī, m. <i>people</i> .
<i>favor</i> ( <i>grātus</i> , -a, -um).	<i>scūtum</i> , -ī, n. <i>shield</i> .
<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	<i>quoque</i> , adv., <i>also, too</i> .

## VERBS

<i>erat</i> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>was</i> .	<i>errābat</i> , <sup>2</sup> ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>was wandering, wandered</i> .
<i>erant</i> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>were</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> The Genitive singular of all nouns in -ius ends in single -ī; the accent is always on the penult: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

The Vocative singular of *filius* and all proper names in -ius also ends in -ī: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

<sup>2</sup> Notice how the form of this tense is related to the present **errat**. **Errābat** is called the Imperfect tense and is equivalent to the English Progressive Preterite or to the simple Preterite. Form the Imperfects of **fugat**, **laudat**, **narrat**, and **servat**. The imperfect of **dat** is **dābat**, **dābant**.

<i>errābant, (they) were wan-</i>	<i>habitābat, (he, etc.) was liv-</i>
<i>dering, wandered.</i>	<i>ing, lived, dwelt.</i>
<i>fugat, (he, etc.) puts to flight.</i>	<i>habitābant, (they) were liv-</i>
<i>fugant, (they) put to flight.</i>	<i>ing, lived, dwelt.</i>
<i>habēbat, (he, etc.) was hav-</i>	<i>servat, (he, etc.) saves, pro-</i>
<i>ing, had.</i>	<i>tects.</i>
<i>habēbant, (they) were hav-</i>	<i>servant, (they) save, protect.</i>
<i>ing, had.</i>	

**67** 1. Horātius erat clārus poēta. 2. In Ītaliā habitābat et populō Rōmānō cārus erat. 3. Filius vīlicī erat et villam parvam, dōnum amīcī, habēbat. 4. Ibi habitābat et villam amābat. 5. Nōn multum argentum sed multōs amīcōs habēbat. 6. Horātius parvus filius vīlicī in silvā errābat. 7. Ibi lupus quoque errābat. 8. Gladius et scūtum nōn erant Horātiō. 9. Itaque māgnō in<sup>1</sup> periculō erat Horātius, sed Mūsae poētam servābant. 10. Horātius lupum fugābat et Mūsīs grātiam habēbat.

**68** 1. Where did the famous poet Horace live? 2. Italy was the native land of the poet Horace. 3. The poet's life was not long, but it was dear to the Muses. 4. The Muses saved Horace's life; therefore he felt grateful<sup>2</sup> to the goddesses and gave (them)<sup>3</sup> many gifts. 5. Horace put a wolf to flight in the forest. 6. Horace's friend gave (him)<sup>3</sup> a beautiful country house. 7. Horace did not have great gardens and many slaves. 8. But the gifts of his friend were acceptable to the poet.

<sup>1</sup> A monosyllabic preposition frequently stands between an adjective and its noun.

<sup>2</sup> Compare sentence 10 above.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

## LESSON VI

## SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

## Nouns in -er and -ir

69

## PARADIGMS

**Puer,** *boy.***puero-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	puer	puerī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs
Accu.	puerum	puerōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs

**Ager,** *field.***agro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	ager	agri
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs
Accu.	agrum	agrōs
Abl.	agrō	agrīs

**Vir,** *man.***viro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	vir	virī
Gen.	virī	virōrum
Dat.	virō	virīs
Accu.	virum	virōs
Abl.	virō	virīs

(a) Notice that with the exception of the nominative and vocative singular these nouns are declined like **ser-vus**; also that the only difference between the declension

of **puer** and **āger** is that **puer** keeps the **e** of the nominative throughout, while **āger** drops it. Most nouns in -er of the Second Declension are declined like **āger**.

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70

## EXAMPLES

1. **Poēta cum filiō errat.** *The poet is walking with (his) son.*
2. **Quintus cum vīlicō habi-tābat.** *Quintus lived with (his) steward.*
3. **Rēgīna cum filiābus in hortō erat.** *The queen was in the garden with (her) daughters.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablative with **cum** is used to denote the person who accompanies the subject. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

71     **Rule.**—Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **cum**.

W. 392; B. 222; AG. 248 *a*; II. 473, 1.

72

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

<b>āger, agri</b> , m. <i>field.</i>	<b>magister, magistri</b> , m. <i>school-master, teacher.</i>
<b>bellum, -ī</b> , n. <i>war.</i>	
<b>Britanni, -ōrum</b> , m. <i>Britons, inhabitants of Britain.</i>	<b>oppidum, -ī</b> , n. <i>town.</i>
<b>liber, libri</b> , m. <i>book.</i>	<b>praemium,<sup>2</sup> -ī</b> , n. <i>reward.</i>
<b>liberi,<sup>1</sup> -ōrum</b> , m. <i>children (free-born).</i>	<b>Rōma, -ae</b> , f. <i>Rome.</i>
	<b>vir, viri</b> , m. <i>man.</i>

## ADJECTIVES

<b>antiquus, -a, -um</b> , <i>ancient, old.</i>	<b>validus, -a, -um</b> , <i>strong, sturdy.</i>
---	--

<sup>1</sup> Not used in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> The genitive singular of neuter nouns in -ium ends in single -ī; **praemium, praemī** (66, 1).

## VERBS

<i>erit, (he, etc.) will be.</i>	<i>dabunt, (they) will give.</i>
<i>erunt, (they) will be.</i>	<i>habēbit, (he, etc.) will have.</i>
<i>amābit,<sup>1</sup> (he, etc.) will love.</i>	<i>habēbunt, (they) will have.</i>
<i>amābunt, (they) will love.</i>	<i>servābit, (he, etc.) will save.</i>
<i>dabit, (he, etc.) will give.</i>	<i>servābunt, (they) will save.</i>
<i>cum, prep. with abl. with.</i>	<i>semper, always.</i>

73 1. *Vilicus cum servis est in agris.* 2. *Servi Marcī agricolae in hortō labōrant.* 3. *Bonī servis dominus praemium dabit.* 4. *In Britanniā sunt antiquae viae Rōmānae.* 5. *Multi liberī sunt Marcō agricolae, pulchra filia et validī filiī.* 6. *Liberī poētae habēbunt bonum magistrum.* 7. *Iūlia, poētae filia, librōs magistri cūrat.* 8. *Puerī cum amīcīs in lātā silvā semper errant.* 9. *Erunt validī virī, gladium et scūtum habēbunt et bella amābunt.* 10. *Nauta cum liberīs ōceanum nāvigat.* 11. *Māgnō in periculō erunt liberī, sed nauta liberōs servābit.*

74 1. *Marcus's sons live in the town with their teacher.* 2. *The children will not have much money, but they will have many good books.* 3. *The teacher wanders in the ancient woods and fields with the children.* 4. *He tells the boys and girls many good stories.* 5. *The teacher will give the boys books, not money, as a reward.* 6. *The children will love the books of the poet Horace, the gift of (their)<sup>2</sup> teacher.* 7. *The books of the poet Horace will always be famous.* 8. *A great reputation will be the reward of a good poet.*

<sup>1</sup> Notice how these Futures are related to the present and imperfect (66) forms of the same verbs. Form Futures, singular and plural, of *fugat, laudat, narrat*, and write sentences containing these forms.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

## LESSON VII

## THE VERB SUM, to be

**75** LEARN the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive of **sum** (485).

(a) Notice that the endings of the verb learned indicate the *person* and *number*, as the endings of nouns indicate the *case* and *number*. Thus far only the third person has been employed: **est**, **erat**, **erit** in the singular; **sunt**, **erant**, **erunt** in the plural. The subjects of the first and second persons are expressed only for emphasis.

**76** *Rule.*—A finite verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person.

W. 296; B. 254, 1; AG. 204; H. 388.

**77** 1. Sum, eram, erō. 2. Es, erās, eris. 3. Estis, erātis, eritis. 4. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 5. Erat, esse, erit. 6. Estis, eritis, erunt.

**78** 1. You (sing.) are, you (sing.) were. 2. You (plu.) will be, you were. 3. I was, you shall be, they are. 4. They are, they were, they shall be.

**79** Adjectives in -er

## PARADIGMS

**Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Gen.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
Dat.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
Accu.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
Abl.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

*Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Accu.	miserum	misera	miserum
Abl.	miserō	misera	miserō

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Accu.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(a) Notice that these adjectives in -er have the same peculiarities of declension as nouns in -er; the feminine nominative shows whether the adjective follows *aeger* or *puer*.

## VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, feeble,	niger, -gra, -grum, black.
sick.	pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beau-
cēterī, -ae, -a, <sup>1</sup> the rest of.	tiful.
liber, -era, -erum, free.	sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.
miser, -era, -erum, wretched,	tener, -era, -erum, delicate,
unhappy.	soft, tender.

<sup>1</sup> Usually plural; the masculine and neuter are frequently used as substantives.

**auxilium** -i, n. *aid, assistance, help.*      **equus** -i, m. *horse.*  
**herba** -ae, f. *grass.*

**dare**, *to give.*      **liberāre**, *to set free.*  
**vocāre**, *to call.*

**81** 1. Equī nigrī in lātīs agrīs errābant. 2. Herba tenera aegrīs equīs grāta erit. 3. Servus erat cum equīs in campīs et equōs dominī cūrābat. 4. Quīntus, magister filiōrum Marcī, est servus. 5. Marcus dominus argentum servō non dabit sed filiōs Quīntī liberābit. 6. Līberatne dominus cēterōs filiōs servī? grātiā habēbunt.<sup>1</sup> 7. Itaque, puerī, līberī eritis et in agrīs nōn labōrābitis. 8. In villā Horātī poētae erat antīqua āra, Mūsīs sacra. 9. Horātius puer Mūsās vocābat. 10. “Mūsae, in perīculō sum.” Bonae erant miserō puerō et auxilium dabant. 11. Poēta amīcus Mūsārum est; in perīculō Mūsās vocābit. 12. Poētam miserum semper servābunt deae. 13. Auxilium miserīs virīs dare Mūsīs est grātum.<sup>2</sup>

**82** 1. Julia, the poet's daughter, was sick, but not unhappy. 2. She had many beautiful books, the gift of her teacher. 3. The rest of the poet's children are strong and will be handsome men. 4. Greece is an ancient land, sacred to the Muses. 5. All other lands are beautiful, but they are not dear to poets. 6. The master will set the unhappy slaves free and give the boy a reward. 7. Boys gave tender grass to the sick horse. 8. To give aid to an unhappy man is good.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare 67, 10.

<sup>2</sup> Notice that the subject of **est** is the entire infinitive clause **auxilium . . . dare**, and that the neuter predicate adjective **grātum** modifies it. All clauses used as substantives are neuter.

<sup>3</sup> Compare sentence 13 above.

LESSON VIII  
FIRST OR *a* CONJUGATION  
ACTIVE VOICE; PRESENT SYSTEM

**83** THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Participle. When these are known all other forms can easily be determined. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* are:

*amō*, *I love.*   *amāre*, *to love.*   *amāvi*, *I have loved, I loved.*  
*amātus*, *having been loved.*

**84** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive active of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all these forms, with the apparent exception of the first person singular of the present indicative, are formed from the stem *amā-*, which may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive. This form *amā-* is called the Present Stem, and the tenses formed from it belong to the Present System.<sup>1</sup>

**85** The Personal Endings express Person, Number, and Voice. They are given for the active voice in the following table:

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	<i>-m</i> , <i>-ō</i>	<i>-mus</i>
SECOND.	<i>-s</i>	<i>-tis</i>
THIRD.	<i>-t</i>	<i>-nt</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> The present and imperfect subjunctive, the present and future imperative, and the present participle, which also belong to the Present System, will be taken up later.

**86** The Imperfect is formed by adding to the stem *amā-*, *-bā-*, sometimes called the Tense Sign of the imperfect, to which are added the personal endings. The Tense Sign of the Future for all verbs of the First and Second Conjugation is *-bī-*, which appears as *-bō* in the 1st pers. sing. and *-bu-* in the 3d pers. plural.

**87** Inflect like *amō* the following:

fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugā- servō, servāre, servāvī, ser-  
tus, *to put to flight.* vātus, *to save.*

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, lau- vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocā-  
dātus, *to praise.* tūs, *to call.*

**88** 1. Laudō, laudābās, laudābit. 2. Servābitis, servābā-  
mus, servat. 3. Fugāmus, fugābāmus, fugābimus. 4. Vo-  
cat, vocāre, vocābat. 5. Fugābis, laudābō, servābātis.  
6. Fugant, fugābant, fugābunt.

**89** 1. He is calling, they will save. 2. I am praising, I  
was praising, I shall praise. 3. You are putting to flight,  
you were putting to flight, you will put to flight. 4. He  
calls, they called, you will call. 5. To save, you will save,  
you saved.

**90** 1. Rōma erat antiquum oppidum in Ītaliā. 2. Ibi  
populus Rōmānus habitābat. 3. Validī virī erant Rōmānī  
et cum cēterīs populīs Ītaliae bella agēbant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Populō  
Rōmānō erant lātī agrī. 5. Multī equī in tenerā herbā  
agrōrum errābant. 6. Rōmānī Rōmam, pulchrum oppi-  
dum, semper amābunt et laudābunt. 7. Rōmulus erat  
clārus Rōmānus. 8. Magister, līberīs pulchram fābulam  
dē<sup>2</sup> (*about*) Rōmulō narrās. 9. Fābulās narrāre mihi (*to*

<sup>1</sup> Carried on.

<sup>2</sup> A common preposition with the ablative.

*me) grātum est: fābulam dē Rōmulō narrābō.* 10. *Lupa<sup>1</sup> (she-wolf) Rōmulum puerum cūrābat et vītam miserī puerī servābat.* 11. *Rōmulus cum lupā in silvā habitābat.* 12. *Puerī, amātisne fābulam dē Rōmulō?*

91 1. Master,<sup>2</sup> you will call your slaves. 2. I call my slaves; you call yours. 3. Slaves, you will work in the fields diligently<sup>3</sup> with your master. 4. You shall have a fine reward; you shall be free men. 5. He will set free the good slaves. 6. They did work diligently<sup>3</sup> and their master set them free. 7. To a good farmer the earth will give many rewards. 8. He chased away the wolf and saved the children. 9. To save the poet was pleasing to the Muses.

92

## READING EXERCISE

*The Retort Truthful*

Nāsīca<sup>4</sup> ad poētam Ennium vēnit (*came*) et quaesīvit (*asked for*) poētam. Ancilla dīxit (*said*), “Ennius nōn domī (*at home*) est;” sed Nāsīca sēnsit (*perceived that*) ancillam<sup>5</sup> domī iūssū (*at the order*) dīxisse (*had spoken*) et poētam<sup>5</sup> intus (*within*) esse (*was*). Paucīs (*few*) post diēbus<sup>6</sup> (*days*) ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius et eum (*him*) quaesīvit; sed exclāmat (*cried out*) Nāsīca sē<sup>5</sup> (*he*) domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, “Quid? (*what?*) egō (*I*) nōn cōgnoscō (*recognize*) vōcem (*voice*) tuam”? Hīc (*at this*) Nāsīca: Homō (*man*) es impudēns.<sup>7</sup> Egō cūm (*when*) tē (*you*) quaererem,<sup>8</sup> ancillae<sup>9</sup> tuae crēdidi (*I believed*) tē<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare **lupus**, 66.

<sup>2</sup> Not **magister**.

<sup>3</sup> **dīligenter.**

<sup>4</sup> A distinguished Roman lawyer.

<sup>5</sup> Subject of the following infinitive.

<sup>6</sup> Abl. of time.

<sup>7</sup> Guess at the meaning. What English word is derived from it?

<sup>8</sup> First person singular, imp. subj. act. Compare **quaesīvit**, the perf. indic. of the same verb. Translate as if indicative.

<sup>9</sup> Dative with the following verb.

domī nōn esse; tū (*you*) mihi<sup>1</sup> (*me*) nōn crēdis<sup>2</sup> ipsī<sup>3</sup> (*myself*)?

---

## LESSON IX

## FIRST OR ā CONJUGATION (Continued)

## PASSIVE VOICE

**93** THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb in the Passive Voice are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, and Perfect Participle. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* in the passive are:

*amor*, *I am loved.*   *amārī*, *to be loved.*   *amātus*, *having been loved.*

**94** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive passive of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all the forms learned are based on the present stem *amā-*, and that the imperfect and future indicative passive are formed with the same tense signs, -*bā-*, -*bi-* (*be*), as the corresponding tenses in the active.

**95** The Personal Endings of the indicative passive are:

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-r	-mur
SECOND.	-ris, -re	-minī
THIRD.	-tur	-ntur

**96** Form the principal parts in the passive and inflect *fugō*, *laudō*, *servō*, *vocō*.

<sup>1</sup> Dative with the following verb.

<sup>2</sup> Present tense. What person and number?

<sup>3</sup> Agreeing with *mihi*.

**97** 1. Amāre, amārī. 2. Amābam, amābar; vocābō, vocābor. 3. Laudātur, laudābātūr, laudābitur. 4. Laudāminī, laudābimīnī, laudābāmīnī. 5. Fugant, fugābuntur, fugāris. 6. Vocābis, vocāberis, vocābāre. 7. Amāre, laudārī, fugāre.

**98** 1. We are calling, you saved (plu.). 2. We shall be saved, they will save. 3. I did call, he is saving, he will save. 4. You will be saved, you are being saved. 5. To call, to be saved, to put to flight. 6. They were praising, they were being praised, they were praised. 7. We are being saved, you shall be saved.

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT

**99**

## EXAMPLES

- 1. **Quintus amīcum servat.** *Quintus saves his friend.*
- 2. **Amīcus ā Quīntō servātūr.** *The friend is saved by Quintus.*
- 3. **Dominus servum liberat.** *The master sets free the slave.*
- 4. **Servus ā dominō liberātur.** *The slave is set free by his master.*

(a) Notice that when a statement is changed from the active form to the passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and that the subject of the active verb is shifted from the nominative to the ablative with the preposition **ā** (or **ab**<sup>1</sup>). Such an ablative with **ā** or **ab** tells who the doer or agent of the action is, and is called *Ablative of Agent*.

**100** **Rule.**—The Agent with Passive verbs is expressed by the Ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

W. 379; B. 216; AG. 246; H. 468.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Ā** or **ab** may be used before consonants, **ab** before vowels.

101

## VOCABULARY

incola, -ae, m. *inhabitant.* oppidānus, -a, -um, *belonging to a town (oppidum);* (frequently used as a substantive) *an inhabitant of a town.*

lupa, -ae, f. *she-wolf (lupus).*

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall (of a city).*

praesidium, -ī, n. *defense, protection.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to care for.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call, name.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight.*

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *by.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning.*

102 1. Rōmulus Rōmam aedificābat. 2. Rōma ā Rōmulō, virō validō, aedificābatur. 3. Oppidum pulchrum ā Rōmulō Rōma appellābatur. 4. Rōma ab incolīs semper amābitur. 5. Clāra fābula dē Rōmulō liberīs ā magistrō narrābitur. 6. Vītam Rōmulī lupa servābat et puerum cūrābat. 7. Incolae oppidi oppidānī<sup>1</sup> appellantur. 8. Incolae antiquī Rōmae līberī virī erant et Rōmānī appellābantur. 9. Mūrus, praesidium oppidi, ab Rōmānīs aedificābatur. 10. In multīs bellīs cum cēterīs incolīs Italiae antiquī Rōmānī pūgnābant.

103 1. The poet Horace was saved by the Muses. 2. Romulus was saved and cared for by a she-wolf. 3. Ancient Rome was a strong town, and was built by Romulus. 4. Romulus was loved by the Roman people. 5. An altar sacred to Romulus was built by the Romans in the city. 6. The famous wall of Britain was not built by the ancient Britons, but by the Romans. 7. The horses are sick and are being cared for by their master. 8. To be cared for by their master is pleasant to the horses. 9. Tender grass is being given the handsome horses by the slaves.

---

<sup>1</sup> Predicate nominative.

## LESSON X

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *SUM*

**104** LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of *sum* (485).

**105** These tenses belong to the perfect system of *sum*, which is formed on the stem *fū-*, obtained by dropping *-i* of the first person singular of the perfect indicative.

(a) Notice that the perfect system of this verb is formed on a different stem from the present system.

(b) Notice also that the personal endings of the pluperfect and future perfect are the same as those of the present system. The perfect indicative has certain endings peculiar to itself.

**106** The Personal Endings of the Perfect Indicative Active are shown in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	<i>-i</i>	<i>-imus</i>
SECOND.	<i>-istī</i>	<i>-istis</i>
THIRD.	<i>-it</i>	<i>-ērunt, -ēre</i>

**107** 1. *Fuistī, fuerās, fueris.* 2. *Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.*  
3. *Fuisse, fuēre, fuimus.* 4. *Fuī, fuerō, fuerātis.* 5. *Fuis-tis, fuerātis, fueritis.*

**108** 1. I have been, I shall have been. 2. I had been, they had been, they will have been. 3. He had been, he will have been, to have been. 4. We shall have been, we have been, we had been.

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

109

## EXAMPLES

1. **Virī gladiīs armantur.** *The men are being armed with swords.*

2. **Nautae ōceanum ventō nāvigant.** *Sailors sail the sea by means of the wind.*

3. **Lupum armis fugābānt servi.** *The slaves put the wolf to flight with weapons.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **gladiīs**, **ventō**, **armis** denote the *Means or Instrument* by which the action of the verb is performed ; also that the Means or Instrument of the action goes along with, accompanies, the actor in the action, so that such an ablative, which is called the *Ablative of Means or Instrument*, is in reality similar to the Ablative of Accompaniment (71), used without the preposition. It is generally translated *with* or *by*.

110     *Rule.*—The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument.

W. 386 ; B. 218 ; AG. 248, c ; H. 476.

111

## VOCABULARY

<b>arma</b> , -ōrum, n. plu. <i>arms</i> ,	<b>hasta</b> , -ae, f. <i>spear</i> .
<i>weapons</i> .	<b>inimicus</b> , -i, m. <i>enemy</i> ( <i>amicus</i> , 56).
<b>causa</b> , -ae, f. <i>cause, reason</i> .	<b>proelium</b> , -i, n. <i>battle</i> .
<b>deus</b> , <sup>1</sup> -i, m. <i>god</i> .	<b>templum</b> , -i, n. <i>temple</i> .
<b>Gallus</b> , m. a <i>Gaul</i> .	<b>victōria</b> , -ae, f. <i>victory</i> .
<b>Gallia</b> , f. <i>Gaul</i> .	
<b>dubius</b> , -a, -um, <i>doubtful</i> .	<b>proximus</b> , -a, -um, <i>next, nearest</i> .

---

<sup>1</sup> Vocative **deus**.

**oppūgnō, -āre<sup>1</sup>**, to storm, attack.      **ōlim**, once, once on a time, formerly.

**diū**, long, for a long time.      **sine**, prep. with abl., without.

**112**    1. Terra proxima Italiae (dat.) Gallia appellābātur.  
 2. Antīquī incolae Galliae Rōmānōs nōn amābant. 3. Inimicī populī Rōmānī semper fuerant. 4. Incolae Galliae Gallī ūlim appellābantur. 5. Multae causae bellī cum Rōmānīs fuerant Gallīs. 6. Gallī ūlim erant multa pulchra oppida. 7. Multa oppida Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs oppūgnābantur. 8. Oppidānī armīs diū et fortiter pūgnābant. 9. Sed Gallī validōs mūrōs nōn habēbant; itaque oppidānī miserī sine praesidiō fuērunt. 10. Gladiīs et hastīs pūgnābant et in templīs deōs vocābant, nam (for) victōria diū fuerat dubia.

**113**    1. The Romans stormed a town of the Gauls without reason. 2. Did the Gauls have a good reason for war<sup>2</sup> with the Romans? 3. The Gauls and the Romans had been enemies for a long time. 4. The Romans did not have the protection of a wall, but they were strong men. 5. The battle had been for a long time doubtful. 6. The inhabitants called upon the gods in the temples. 7. But the gods gave the victory to their enemies. 8. The Romans put the townsmen to flight with their spears.

<sup>1</sup> In the following vocabularies only the present infinitive of verbs whose principal parts are like **amō** will be given.

<sup>2</sup> Compare **112**, 5.

## LESSON XI

## PERFECT SYSTEM OF AMŌ

114 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of amō (479).

(a) Notice that the perfect system in the active is formed from the perfect stem amāv-, which may be obtained by dropping the ending -ī of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. Observe also the additions to this stem, by means of which the pluperfect and future perfect tenses are formed. With what forms of sum may they be compared?

(b) Notice that the perfect passive system is compounded of the perfect passive participle amātus, *having been loved*, and the proper tenses of sum—the present to form the perfect amātus sum, the imperfect to form the pluperfect amātus eram, and the future to form the future perfect amātus erō.

115 The participle is declined like the adjective bonus, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case exactly like a predicate adjective (63). For example:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
MASC.	puer est amātus <sup>1</sup>	puerī sunt amātī
FEM.	puella est amāta	puellae sunt amātae
NEUT.	dōnum est amātum	dōna sunt amāta

116 1. Amāvī, amātus sum, amātī sumus. 2. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 3. Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris.

---

<sup>1</sup> This apparently reversed order is common; the predicate nature of the participle here clearly appears.

4. *Amāvistis, amātī estis, amātī eritis.* 5. *Amāverō, amātus erō, amātus eram.* 6. *Amāta est, amātae erant, amāta erit.* 7. *Amātum erat, amāta sunt, amāta erunt.* 8. *Amāvistī, amāverās, amāveris.* 9. *Amāvisse, amātus esse.* 10. *Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.*

**117** 1. We loved, we had loved, we shall have loved.  
 2. We had been loved, you shall have loved, we shall have been loved.  
 3. You had loved, you had been loved, he has been loved.  
 4. They have loved, they were loved, they had been loved.  
 5. To have been loved, to have loved.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

**118** **EXAMPLES**

1. **Puerī fābulā delectantur.** *The boys are delighted with the story.*
2. **Quīntus victōriā est laudātus.** *Quintus was praised because of his victory.*
3. **Dominus servōs industriā laudāvit.** *The master praised the slaves on account of their industry.*
4. **Agricola filiōrum causā labōrābit.** *The farmer will work for the sake of his sons.*
5. **Puer ā magistrō diligentiā laudābitur.** *The boy will be praised by the schoolmaster for his diligence.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *fābulā*, *victōriā*, *industriā*, etc., answer the question *Why?*—that is, that they express the *Cause* of the action of the verb. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Cause*, and may be translated by a variety of English phrases, as in the examples above.

**119** **Rule.—The Ablative is used to denote Cause.**  
 W. 384; B. 219; AG. 245; H. 475.

120

## VOCABULARY

<b>amicitia, -ae</b> , f. <i>friendship, alliance, friendly relations</i> ( <i>amicus</i> , 54).	<b>diligentia, -ae</b> , f. <i>carefulness, industry.</i>
<b>animus, -i</b> , m. <i>mind, courage, soul.</i>	<b>finitimī<sup>1</sup></b> m. plu. <i>neighbors.</i>
<b>cōpia, -ae</b> , f. <i>plenty, abundance.</i>	<b>frūmentum, -i</b> , n. <i>grain.</i>
<b>cōpiae, -ārum</b> , f. plu. <i>forces, troops.</i>	<b>inopia, -ae</b> , f. <i>want, lack, scarcity.</i>
<b>expūgnō, -āre</b> , <i>to take by storm, capture</i> ( <i>oppūgnō</i> , 111).	<b>odium, -i</b> , n. <i>hatred.</i>
<b>incitō, -āre</b> , <i>to arouse, stir up.</i>	<b>portō, -āre</b> , <i>to carry, bring.</i>
	<b>superō, -āre</b> , <i>to defeat, overcome.</i>
	<b>vāstō, -āre</b> , <i>lay waste.</i>

121

1. Gallī odiō Rōmānōrum<sup>2</sup> incitātī sunt. 2. Māgnus fuit animus Gallōrum; diū et fortiter pūgnāvērunt.
3. Sed cōpiae oppidānōrum inopiā frūmentī superātæ sunt. 4. In oppidō erat cōpia armōrum, nōn frūmentī.
5. Inopiā frūmentī auxilium oppidānīs dabant finitimī.
6. Amīcī populī Rōmānī appellātī sunt; causā amīcitiae frūmentum portānt.
7. Rōmānī oppidānōs armīs superāvērunt, et sacra templa deōrum vāstāvērunt.
8. Inopiā frūmentī, nōn cōpiis Rōmānōrum superātī fuerimus.
9. Sed finitimī auxilium miserīs oppidānīs odiō nōn dabunt.
10. Oppidum ab Rōmānīs amīcōrum causā expūgnātū est; incolae oppidi fugātī et agrī vastātī sunt.<sup>3</sup>
11. Oppidum inimīcōrum expūgnāvisse fuit Rōmānīs grātum.
12. Victōriā deōs laudābant Rōmānī et in templo arma portābant.

<sup>1</sup> Also used as an adjective—**fīnitimus, -a, -um**, *neighboring, bordering on.*

<sup>2</sup> The Latin language here uses the genitive case to represent the English objective case with the preposition *for*.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that **sunt** does double duty for both **fugātī** and **vastātī**.

122 1. A wall has been built by the inhabitants of the town. 2. The inhabitants of the town built a strong wall on account of (their) many wars. 3. The neighbors had been stirred up by their hatred for the townsmen.<sup>1</sup> 4. The townsmen had been attacked by their neighbors, and because of (their) hatred their fields had been laid waste. 5. The forces in the town fought long and bravely with swords and spears, but the victory was doubtful. 6. The enemies of the Gauls were defeated and pacified by lack of supplies. 7. The Gauls' spirit is great; they will fight long and bravely. 8. A strong wall will be a great protection to the Gauls. 9. The friends of the Romans brought a supply of grain with great diligence; the Romans praised them for their friendship.

## LESSON XII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE*

123

*Hic, this.*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>
GEN.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>
ACCU.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
ACCU.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>his</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare 121, 1.

**Ille, that.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

(a) Notice that in the plural these pronouns follow closely the regular first and second declensions; but in the singular they differ widely.

**124** Both **hic** and **ille** may be used alone as pronouns, or as pronominal adjectives in agreement with nouns.

(a) **Hic** points out something which is near the speaker in time, place, or thought, etc. It is therefore sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: **hic puer**, *this boy* (near me); **hī libri**, *these books* (by my side, or which I have just mentioned, etc.).

(b) **Ille** points out something which is remote in time, place, thought, etc., from the speaker. It is therefore sometimes known as the demonstrative of the third person: **ille vir**, *that man* (yonder, near him); **illi libri**, *those books* (over there, mentioned some time ago, etc.).

(c) When **ille** and **hic** are contrasted in the same sentence they frequently mean *the former*, *the latter*:

**ille bonus, hic malus est,** *The former is a good man, the latter bad.*

(d) **Ille** is sometimes used in the sense of *the well-known, the famous.* It then follows its noun.

## 125

## EXAMPLES

1. **Hic ager est meus, ille tuus.** *This field is mine, that yours.*
2. **Quintus et Marcus sunt Rōmānī; ille magister, hic est discipulus.** *Quintus and Marcus are Romans; the former is the teacher, the latter the pupil.*
3. **Horātius, poēta ille, Rōmānis fuit cārus.** *Horace, the well-known poet, was dear to the Romans.*

## 126

## VOCABULARY

<b>Belgae, -ārum,</b> m. plu. <i>the Belgians.</i>	<b>intrō, -āre,</b> <i>to enter, go in.</i>
<b>coniūrō, -āre,</b> <i>to swear together, plot.</i>	<b>Nerviī, -ōrum,</b> m. plu. <i>the Nervians (a Belgian people).</i>
<b>contrā,</b> prep. with accu., <i>against.</i>	<b>numerus, -ī,</b> m. <i>number.</i>
<b>Haedui, -ōrum,</b> m. plu. <i>the Haeduans (a Gallic people).</i>	<b>nunc,</b> adv. <i>now.</i>
<b>inter,</b> prep. with accu., <i>among, between.</i>	<b>nūntiō, -āre,</b> <i>to send news, report.</i>
<b>intereā,</b> adv. <i>meanwhile.</i>	<b>pācō, -āre,</b> <i>to pacify, subdue.</i>
	<b>parō, -āre,</b> <i>to get ready, prepare.</i>

127 1. Caesar<sup>1</sup> māgnīs cum cōpiis agrōs Nerviōrum intrāvit. 2. Hī cum cēterīs Belgīs contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant. 3. Multae causae belli erant illīs cum

<sup>1</sup> The declension of this noun will be given later.

Rōmānīs. 4. Belgae fāmā bellī et odiō Rōmānōrum incitātī erant. 5. Haec Nerviīs ab amīcīs Haeduōrum erant nūntiāta: 6. “Rōmānus ille multa oppida expūgnāvit, oppidānōs miserōs fugāvit, agrōs lātōs vastāvit. 7. Haeduī ab illō multīs proeliīs pācātī,<sup>1</sup> nunc in amīcītiā Rōmānōrum sunt.” 8. Nōn amīcī sed servī Rōmānōrum erant. 9. Intereā Rōmānō illī ab inimīcīs Nerviōrum haec erant nūntiāta: 10. “Māgnus numerus Nerviōrum cum cēterīs Belgīs in armīs est. 11. Cōpia frūmentī ab hīs parāta et auxilium ā fīnitimīs est<sup>2</sup> datum.”

**128** 1. The Haeduans and the Nervians used to live<sup>3</sup> in Gaul. 2. The former were in friendship with the Romans,<sup>4</sup> but the latter had not yet been subdued. 3. A great number of these on account of their hatred of the Romans conspired with the rest of the Belgians. 4. And because of the scarcity of grain, aid was given them by their neighbors. 5. These, for the sake of their friendship, brought them (i. e., the former) an abundance of grain and of weapons. 6. This was reported to the Romans by their enemies. 7. And Caesar attacked their nearest town. 8. The inhabitants fought long and bravely, but that famous Roman defeated them and laid waste their fields.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that this is the perf. pass. participle agreeing with **Haeduī**, not a part of the indicative mood.

<sup>2</sup> Compare **121**, 10, and notice how sentence 7 above differs from this.

<sup>3</sup> What tense?

<sup>4</sup> Genitive case.

## LESSON XIII

THE RELATIVE *QUI*

## PARADIGM

129

*Qui*, *who*, *which*, *what*.

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
GEN.	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
ACCU.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN.	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACCU.	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL.	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

130

## EXAMPLES

1. *Puer qui laudātur est bonus.* *The boy who is praised is good.*
2. *Horātius quem Rōmānī amābant clārus poēta erat.* *Horace, whom the Romans loved, was a famous poet.*
3. *Hōc est dōnum quod Quintō datum est.* *This is the gift which was given to Quintus.*
4. *Haec sunt dōna quae Marcus laudābat.* *These are the gifts which Marcus praised.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the relatives *qui*, *quem*, *quod*, *quae*, agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but that the cases are determined by the

construction of the relative sentences. Thus in sentences 1 and 3 **qui** and **quod** are the subjects of the relative sentences, and so happen to be in the same case as their antecedents; but in sentences 2 and 4 **quem** and **quae** are accusatives, objects of the verbs in the relative sentences. Their antecedents, however, are both nominative.

**131 Rule.**—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

W. 299; B. 250; AG. 198; H. 396.

**132**

VOCABULARY

<b>ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui,</b> <i>to be distant from</i> (with <b>ab</b> and the abl.)	<b>hic</b> , adv. <i>here, at this point or place</i> (compare the noun <b>hic</b> ).
<b>ad,</b> prep. with accu. <i>to, toward.</i>	<b>iam,<sup>1</sup></b> adv. <i>now, already, at last.</i>
<b>castra, -ōrum,</b> n. plu. <i>a fortified camp.</i>	<b>idōneus, -a, -um,</b> <i>fit, suitable.</i>
<b>cōnsilium, -ī,</b> n. <i>plan, design.</i>	<b>iuvo, -āre, iūvī, iūtus,</b> <i>to help.</i>
<b>convocō, -āre,</b> <i>call together, assemble.</i>	<b>locus,<sup>2</sup> -ī,</b> m. <i>place.</i>
<b>dēcertō, -āre,</b> <i>to contend, fight.</i>	<b>longē,</b> adv. <i>far, much (longus, -a, -um).</i>
<b>exspectō, -āre,</b> <i>to look out for, wait for, expect.</i>	<b>nātūra, -ae,</b> f. <i>nature.</i>
	<b>parātus, -a, -um,</b> <i>ready, prepared.</i>
	<b>praeda, -ae,</b> f. <i>booty.</i>
	<b>properō, -āre,</b> <i>to hurry, hasten.</i>

**133** 1. Numerus Nerviōrum quī in armīs parātī erant, ab Rēmīs nūntiātus est. 2. Hī, quōrum agrōs Caesar iam

<sup>1</sup> **Iam** means *now at last, already*, while **nunc**, 126, means *now at the present time*.

<sup>2</sup> The plural is neuter, **loca, -ōrum;** **locī, -ōrum** is used only to mean, *topics.*

intrāverat, proximī Galliae (dat.) erant. 3. Parātī erant Rōmānōs frūmentō et māgnīs cōpiīs iuvāre. 4. Cēterī Belgae, quī amicī Nerviōrum erant, Rōmānōs exspectābant. 5. Rōmānī illō locō,<sup>1</sup> quī nātūrā proeliō (dat.) erat idōneus, ā Belgīs expectātī erant. 6. Hōc locō, quī ab castrīs Rōmānōrum nōn longē aberat, contrā populum Rōmānum armīs dēcertābunt Nervii. 7. Ubi (when) Rōmānō illī cōnsilium Nerviōrum nūntiātum est, ad locum properāvit. 8. Intereā Nerviī cum animīs ad proelium parātīs illum ibi expectābant. 9. Hīc inter Rōmānōs et Belgōs diū et fortiter pūgnātum est.<sup>2</sup> 10. Illī victōriæ et praedae causā, hī prō<sup>3</sup> liberīs et patriā pūgnāvērunt.

**134** 1. Caesar called together those<sup>4</sup> Belgians who had not conspired together. 2. These who were ready to contend in battle were the Remi. 3. The Haeduans, whose towns had been captured by the Romans, aided them with grain. 4. The Romans hurried to a place which was naturally suited for a camp. 5. They prepared supplies and assembled their allies at (ad) this place. 6. The camp was not far away from the place where the Nervii had already been waiting for them a long time. 7. They fought for the sake of their country, which they loved. 8. But the Romans had entered Gaul for the sake of booty.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of place.

<sup>2</sup> This form of the verb has no personal subject, but supplies its subject (cf. **pūgna**, *battle, fighting*) in itself. Translate, *There was a battle*, or in a similar way. Such a verb is called an Impersonal Verb.

<sup>3</sup> A common preposition with the abl., *for the sake of*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the proper case of **ille**.

## LESSON XIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS  
THE INTERROGATIVE QVIS

## PARADIGMS

135

*Is, that.*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

(a) Notice the similarity in the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille*.

(b) *Is, that*, is in meaning like *ille*, but less definite; it often means simply *he, she, it*, and is very common as an antecedent of *qui*: *is qui oppidum expūgnāvit, he who stormed the town*; *ea quae portāvit that which he brought*.

136

*Quis, who?*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE AND FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>
Gen.	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>
Dat.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
Accu.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>
Abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>

## PLURAL

Like *qui* relative.

(a) **Quis** is the substantive form of the interrogative —i. e., the form used without a noun : *quis vocat?* *Who calls?*

(b) The adjective form is *qui*, *what?* *what kind of?* *Qui puer vocat?* *What boy calls?* *Quod dōnum portāvit?* *What gift did he bring?* This *qui* is declined exactly like *qui* relative.<sup>1</sup>

137

## EXAMPLES

1. **Magister** diligentiam ēius laudāvit. *The teacher praised his industry.*
2. **Is**, *qui* cum diligentia labōrāvit, laudātus est. *The one who worked industriously was praised.*
3. **Quis** discipulum laudāvit? *Who praised the pupil?*
4. **Qui** magister diligentiam discipuli laudāvit? *What teacher praised the pupil's industry?*
5. **Quod** dōnum dabit magister ei, *qui* cum diligentia labōrāvit? *What gift will the teacher give to the one who worked industriously?*

---

<sup>1</sup> It should be said that the distinction between substantive *quis*? and adjective *qui*? was not always observed by Roman writers. Thus we find *quis vir vocat?* as well as *qui vir vocat?* Yet it will be well in translating the English exercises of this book to observe the distinction made above.

138

## VOCABULARY

<b>comparō, -āre</b> , <i>to get ready, get together.</i>	<b>mora, -ae</b> , f. <i>delay.</i>
<b>concilium, -i</b> , n. <i>conference, a meeting of state or of war.</i>	<b>nam</b> , conj. <i>for.</i>
<b>in</b> , prep. with accu., <i>into.</i> (Compare <b>in</b> with abl., 56.)	<b>noster, -tra, -trum</b> , <i>our (compare meus).</i>
<b>lēgātus, -i</b> , m. <i>envoy, ambassador.</i>	<b>postulō, -āre</b> , <i>to demand, ask for.</i>
	<b>reliquus, -a, -um</b> , <i>remaining, the rest.</i> (Compare <b>cēterī</b> , 80.)
	<b>socius, -i</b> , m. <i>ally.</i>

**139** 1. Quī Gallī contrā amīcōs nostrōs coniūrāvērunt? 2. Illī erant Nerviī et cēterī Belgae. 3. Sociī populī Rōmānī erant Haeduī, fīnitimī Nerviōrum, quī ab Rōmānīs pācātī erant. 4. Iī nunc cōpiam frūmentī ab illīs postulābant. 5. Quā dē causā erant<sup>1</sup> Nerviī contrā Rōmānōs incitātī? 6. Odiō populī Rōmānī quī olim Hae-duōs pācāvērunt. 7. Iam ab eīs erat concilium Belgārum convocātūm. 8. Quod cōnsilium eō in conciliō ab Hae-duīs est datum? 9. Hōc cōnsilium datum est: reliquōs Belgās incitāre, sine morā cōpiam frūmentī comparāre, cōpiās in oppidum proximum convocāre. 10. Ibi Rōmānōs expectāre et cum eīs prō patriā dēcertāre erat cōnsilium. 11. Ā quibus erant haec Rōmānō illī nun-tiāta? Ab lēgātīs Rēmōrum, quī nostrī amīcī diū fue-rant. 12. Nam cum reliquīs Belgīs nōn coniūrāverant et auxilium Rōmānīs dare parātī erant.

**140** 1. For what reason did the Remi not conspire with the rest of the Belgae? 2. The rest of the Belgae were already in arms, but these were our allies. 3. They were prepared to give aid with supplies of grain. 4. What was the

---

<sup>1</sup> The forms of **sum** are frequently thus separated in position from the perfect participles to which they belong grammatically.

plan of the Nervii? 5. Their plan was to call together an assembly of the Belgians, and on account of lack of supplies to demand aid from their neighbors. 6. These brought the grain which had been asked for, but the Remi conspired with the Romans against the rest of the Gauls. 7. And so their fields were devastated by the Nervii and their allies. 8. In the meantime, Caesar had subdued the Haeduans and had taken by storm a great number of their towns. 9. Who were these and whose allies had they been?

---

## LESSON XV

## THE THIRD DECLENSION

**141** THE stem ends in a consonant or -i.

All consonant stems may be found by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular: *prīcip-is*, *rēg-is*.

Consonant stems are divided into two classes, Mute and Liquid Stems, according to the nature of the final consonant. Mute Stems end in b or p, c or g, d or t (6).

**142**

## MUTE STEMS

## PARADIGMS

**Princeps**, m. *chief*.  
**prīcip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>prīcipēs</i>
GEN.	<i>prīcipis</i>	<i>prīcipum</i>
DAT.	<i>prīcipi</i>	<i>prīcipibus</i>
ACCU.	<i>prīcipem</i>	<i>prīcipēs</i>
ABL.	<i>prīcipē</i>	<i>prīcipibus</i>

<b>Rēx</b> , m. <i>king.</i>	<b>Miles</b> , m. <i>soldier.</i>
<b>rēg-</b>	<b>milit-</b>
<b>SINGULAR</b>	
Nom., Voc.	<b>rēx</b>
Gen.	<b>rēgis</b>
Dat.	<b>rēgi</b>
Accu.	<b>rēgem</b>
Abl.	<b>rēge</b>
<b>PLURAL</b>	
Nom., Voc.	<b>rēgēs</b>
Gen.	<b>rēgum</b>
Dat.	<b>rēgibus</b>
Accu.	<b>rēgēs</b>
Abl.	<b>rēgibus</b>

(a) Notice that the nominatives singular of these nouns ends in **-s**. Stems in **b** or **p** retain their final consonants unchanged before this ending: **urbs**, **princeps**; when stems end in **c** or **g**, the final consonant combines with **-s** to form **x**: (**dūc-s**) **dūx**, (**rēg-s**) **rēx**; but stems ending in **d** or **t** drop their final consonants before **-s** of the nominative: (**custōd-s**) **custōs**, (**milit-s**) **miles**.

(b) Notice also that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative: **milit-**, **miles**, etc.

These few changes can easily be learned by observation.

**143** Make a list of the terminations and commit it to memory.

Decline together: *hic princeps*; *rēx ille*; *is miles.*

144

## VOCABULARY

**administrō, -āre**, *to manage*.   **comes, comitis**, m. and f.  
**ante**, prep. with accu. *before*.      *companion, attendant*.

<b>coniūnx, coniugis</b> , f. <i>consort, wife.</i>	<b>lūx, lūcis</b> , f. <i>light.</i>
<b>custōs, custōdis</b> , m. <i>guard, keeper.</i>	<b>mīles, mīlitis</b> , m. <i>soldier.</i>
<b>dux, ducis</b> , m. <i>leader.</i>	<b>pāx, pācis</b> , f. <i>peace.</i>
<b>grex, gregis</b> , m. <i>flock, herd.</i>	<b>prīnceps, prīcipis</b> , m. <i>leader, chief.</i>
<b>iūdex, iūdicis</b> , m. <i>Judge.</i>	<b>rēx, rēgis</b> , m. <i>king.</i>
	<b>vulnērō, -āre</b> , <i>to wound.</i>

**145** (a) 1. Hī quī coniūrābant et bellum administrābant erant prīcipēs Galliae. 2. Concilium eōrum, quī agrōs populī Rōmānī intrābant, ā rēge convocātum est. 3. Ab eō locō, quī nātūrā castrīs idōneus erat, mīlitēs Rōmānī nōn longē aberant. 4. Nam oppidum quod erat in viā iam expūgnāverant et ad sociōs properābant. 5. Hīc, inter castra Gallōrum et oppidum nostrum, errābant multī gregēs. 6. Quōrum custōdēs, miserī servī rēgis, ā mīlitibus fugātī erant. 7. Ante lūcem incolae oppidi coniugēs et liberōs in silvās portāverant, arma comparāverant, ducem expectābant.

(b) 8. Eō locō inter mīlitēs rēgis et Caesaris diū et fortiter pūgnātum est<sup>1</sup> et multī vulnerātī sunt. 9. Gallī, quī oīlim cum Rōmānīs pūgnāverant, iam pācis causā eōs iuvāre parātī erant. 10. Sed Rōmānī inopiā frūmentī agrōs eōrum vastāre et sociōs nostrōs iuvāre parābant. 11. In cēterīs oppidīs māgna cōpia frūmentī erat; hōc Caesarī (dat.) ab lēgātīs Rēmōrum et comitibus rēgis nūntiātum est. 12. Inter custōdēs gregum et comitēs meōs erit iūdex Caesar.

**146** 1. Owing to lack of supplies Caesar prepared to lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 2. The Gauls, whose wives and children were in the forests, fought for (prō) their lives<sup>2</sup> with swords and spears. 3. In the fields there were many flocks, of which the king's children were the guards.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 133, 9.

<sup>2</sup> Use the singular.

4. The leader's plan was to help the allies of the Roman people and to pacify the other Gauls. 5. Before daylight he called the principal men of Gaul, together with<sup>1</sup> the king, into the camp. 6. Here Caesar announced his plan in regard to peace. 7. "I will be judge between the Remi and the other peoples of Gaul, and for the sake of peace I will give you many gifts." 8. The Gauls were ready to assist the Romans with grain, which had been in their towns for a long time.

## 147

## READING EXERCISE

Dē antīquīs rēgibus Rōmānī haec narrant: pīmus quī in Ītaliā rēgnāvit<sup>2</sup> erat Sāturnus. Hīc nōn longē ab Iāniculō<sup>3</sup> arcem (*citadel*) condidit (*founded*) quam Sāturniam appellāvit. Agricultūram<sup>4</sup> quoque Ītalōs pīmus docuit (*taught*). Posteā (*afterwards*) Latīnus in illīs locīs rēgnāvit. Sub (*under*) hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ab Graecīs expūgnāta est. Itaque Aenēas, clārus Trōiānus, Anchīsae<sup>5</sup> et deae fīlius, cum multīs sociīs ex patriā aufūgit<sup>6</sup> (*fled*) et in Ītaliām pervēnit (*came*). Ibi rēx Latīnus eī filiam Lāvīniā dedit. Aenēas oppidum condidit, quod Lāvīniūm appellavit. Tertius rēx erat Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, qui rēgnūm<sup>7</sup> (*throne*) in alium (*another*) locum trānstulit (*transferred*), et in monte (*mountain*) Albānō novum oppidum condidit, quod Albam Longam appellāvit. Hōc locō multi rēgnāvērunt, dum (*until*) Rōmulus, quī Rheac Silviae et dei fīlius erat, in monte Palātiō Rōmam condidit.

<sup>1</sup> Together with, translate by one word.

<sup>2</sup> **rēgnō**, -āre, is a verb formed from the same base as **rēx** (*rēg*). What must the verb mean?

<sup>3</sup> The high ridge across the Tiber from Rome.

<sup>4</sup> Guess the meaning.

<sup>5</sup> Gen. sing. of the Greek name **Anchīsēs**.

<sup>6</sup> Perf. indic. of **aufūgiō**: compare **fugō**, -āre.

<sup>7</sup> What other words have the same stem?

## LESSON XVI

## THE THIRD DECLENSION

MUTE STEMS (*Continued*)

148

## PARADIGMS

**Vōx**, f. *voice*.   **Obses**, m. and f. *hostage*.   **Virtūs**, f. *manliness*,  
**vōc-**                    **obsid-**                    **virtūt-**    [*courage*].

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	<b>vōx</b>	<b>obses</b>	<b>virtūs</b>
GEN.	<b>vōcis</b>	<b>obsidis</b>	<b>virtūtis</b>
DAT.	<b>vōcī</b>	<b>obsidī</b>	<b>virtūtī</b>
ACCU.	<b>vōcem</b>	<b>obsidem</b>	<b>virtūtem</b>
ABL.	<b>vōce</b>	<b>obside</b>	<b>virtūte</b>

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>vōcēs</b>	<b>obsidēs</b>	<b>virtūtēs</b>
GEN.	<b>vōcum</b>	<b>obsidum</b>	<b>virtūtum</b>
DAT.	<b>vōcibus</b>	<b>obsidibus</b>	<b>virtūtibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>vōcēs</b>	<b>obsidēs</b>	<b>virtūtēs</b>
ABL.	<b>vōcibus</b>	<b>obsidibus</b>	<b>virtūtibus</b>

**Caput**, n. *head*.**capit-**

## SINGULAR                  PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>caput</b>	<b>capita</b>
GEN.	<b>capitis</b>	<b>capitum</b>
DAT.	<b>capiti</b>	<b>capitibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>caput</b>	<b>capita</b>
ABL.	<b>capite</b>	<b>capitibus</b>

(a) Notice the manner in which the nominatives of **vōx**, **obses**, and **virtūs** are formed, and compare them with the similar nouns in the preceding lesson.

(b) Notice that the nominative of **caput** is the simple stem with the second vowel changed from ī to ū. Compare the declension of this noun with that of neutrals of the Second Declension (60).

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER

149

## EXAMPLES

1. **Rēx** cum audāciā pūgnā- *The king fought with boldness.*
2. **Rēx** māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvit. *The king fought with great boldness.*
3. **Rēx** māgnā audāciā pūg- nāvit. *The king fought with great boldness.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives answer the question, *How?* That is, they tell the manner in which the king fought. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Manner*.<sup>1</sup>

150     **Rule.**—The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative, usually with *cum*; but if the Ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* need not be used.

W. 390; B. 220; AG. 248; H. 473, 3.

151

## VOCABULARY

<b>audācia</b> , -ae, f.	<i>boldness</i> ,	<b>Germāni</b> , -ōrum, m.	<i>Germans</i> .
<b>caput</b> , <b>capitis</b> , n.	<i>head</i> .	<b>laus</b> , <b>laudis</b> , f.	<i>praise, glory</i> .
<b>celeriter</b> , adv.	<i>quickly</i> .	<b>māgnoperē</b> , adv.	<i>greatly</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The same idea is frequently expressed in Latin as in English by an adverb: **rēx audācter** (*boldly*) **pūgnāvit** = **rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit**.

<b>obses, obsidis,</b> m. and f. <i>hos-</i>	<b>sacerdōs, sacerdōtis,</b> m. <i>priest.</i>
<i>tage.</i>	<b>vester, -tra, -trum,</b> <i>your.</i>
<b>occupō, -āre,</b> <i>to seize.</i>	(Compare <i>noster</i> , 138.)
<b>per,</b> prep. with accu. <i>through,</i>	<b>virtūs, virtūtis,</b> f. <i>manliness,</i>
<i>by means of.</i>	<i>courage.</i>
<b>prō,</b> prep. with abl. <i>for, for</i>	<b>vōx, vōcis,</b> f. <i>voice, word.</i>
<i>the sake of.</i>	

**152** 1. Dē audāciā eōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant iam erat nūntiātum.<sup>1</sup> 2. Sed Caesar obsidēs, quōrum māgnus numerus erat, celeriter convocāvit et per sacerdōtem haec nūntiāvit. 3. “Māgnā virtūte, obsidēs, pūgnāvērunt Gallī et vestrī sociī, et māgna per Galliam est laus eōrum. 4. Itaque eōs māgnoperē laudō; semper amīci et sociī populī Rōmānī appellābuntur. 5. Nam eī fortiter prō patriā et līberīs dēcertāvērunt. 6. Sed nunc arma et auxilia ā comitibus rēgis contrā Rōmānōs parantur; castra nostra cum audāciā oppūgnābunt. 7. Sed parātus sum eōs in amīcitiā habēre,<sup>2</sup> dōna dare, bellum cum Germānīs administrāre.” 8. Haec sacerdōs māgnā vōce nūntiāvit et obsidēs, quī pīncipēs Galliae erant, ā Caesare cum cūrā servābantur. 9. Intereā Belgae, quī ōlim pācātī erant, frūmentī cōpiam per lēgātōs dare properāvērunt. 10. Haec Caesarī erant grāta; itaque multa oppida Germānōrum celeriter occupāvit et cōpias eōrum fugāvit.

**153** 1. In the camp were many hostages, who had been protected (*servō*) by the Romans with great care. 2. They were the chief men of Gaul who once had fought with great bravery against Caesar and the Romans. 3. Before daybreak Caesar called a priest, who made the following announcement<sup>3</sup> to the hostages in a loud voice. 4. “You (vōs), together with the Britons, once (ōlim)

<sup>1</sup> Compare 133, 9.

<sup>2</sup> Present infin. of **habeō**, *to have, to hold.*

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *announced these things.*

conspired against the friends of the Roman people and prepared to lay waste their territory and to seize their towns. 5. Your glory among the Gauls was great, but you have been defeated by Caesar and your towns seized. 6. Now you have helped the Roman soldiers with a supply of grain; therefore he praises you (*vōs*) and will give your kings many rewards. 7. He is ready to help your allies, the Britons, a great number of whom were formerly in the friendship of the Roman people, and to be at peace with them." 8. Without delay Caesar's ambassadors carried this news<sup>1</sup> throughout Gaul and Britain; a great number of the Gauls and Britons were thus quickly pacified.

---

## LESSON XVII

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## 154      Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

THE stems end in -l or -r, -n, and -s.

## 155      PARADIGMS

<b>Cōnsul</b> , m. <i>consul</i> .	<b>Vīctor</b> , m. <i>victor</i> .	<b>Homō</b> , m. and f. <i>man</i> .
cōnsul-	vīctōr-	homin-

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	cōnsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōnsulis	vīctōris	hominis
DAT.	cōnsuli	vīctōrī	hominī
ACCU.	cōnsulem	vīctōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōnsule	vīctōre	homine

<sup>1</sup> Haec.

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	vīctōrum	hominūm
DAT.	cōsulib⁹s	vīctōrib⁹s	hominib⁹s
ACCU.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōsulib⁹s	vīctōrib⁹s	hominib⁹s

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<b>nōmina</b>	<b>honōrēs</b>	<b>corpora</b>
GEN.	<b>nōminum</b>	<b>honōrum</b>	<b>corporum</b>
DAT.	<b>nōminibus</b>	<b>honōribus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>nōmina</b>	<b>honōrēs</b>	<b>corpora</b>
ABL.	<b>nōminibus</b>	<b>honōribus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>

(a) Notice that liquid stems like *cōsul-* and *vīcōr-* form the nominative singular without the case-ending.

(b) Notice also that nasal stems like **homin-** not only have no case-ending in the nominative singular, but drop the final **-n**; the nominative generally ends in **-ō**. This is true of almost all masculine and feminine nouns of this class. Neuter stems like **nōmin-** have the nominative like the stem, changing the final vowel from **i** to **e**.

(c) In the case of spirant stems like **honōs-** and **corpos-**, the **s** is always changed to **r** between two vowels, so that the stem seems to end in the liquid **r**. The nominative has no case-ending, but the nominatives of a few

common nouns of this class<sup>1</sup> have the **r** of the apparent stem; in neuters the last vowel, **e** or **o**, of the stem is regularly modified to **u** before **s**.

## OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

156

## EXAMPLES

1. **Amor patriae est māgnus.** *Love of country is great.*
2. **Timōre militum in oppidum properant.** *Because of their fear of the soldiers they are hurrying into the town.*
3. **Avidī laudis erant Galli.** *The Gauls were eager for praise.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the genitives **patriae**, **militum**, **laudis**, are the objects of the feelings expressed in the nouns **amor**, **timōre**, and the adjective **avidī**. Such a genitive is called an *Objective Genitive*. Compare the genitive of Possessor (35).

157     *Rule.*—The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives to denote the Object of the action or feeling implied in the word it modifies.

W. 351; B. 200. 204; AG. 217. 218; H. 440, 2. 450.

158

## VOCABULARY

<b>adpropinquō</b> , -āre, to ap-	<b>cōnsul</b> , <b>cōnsulis</b> , m. <i>consul</i> .
<i>proach.</i>	<b>corpus</b> , <b>corporis</b> , n. <i>body</i> .
<b>amor</b> , <b>amōris</b> , m. <i>love</i> .	<b>homō</b> , <b>hominis</b> , m. and f. <i>hu-</i>
<b>apud</b> , prep. with the accu-	<i>man being, man</i> .
<i>with, among.</i>	<b>honor</b> , <b>honōris</b> , m. <i>honor</i> .
<b>arbor</b> , <b>arboris</b> , f. <i>tree</i> .	<b>iter</b> , <b>itineris</b> , n. <i>journey,</i>
<b>avidus</b> , -a, -um, <i>eager</i> .	<i>march, route</i> .
<b>clāmor</b> , <b>clāmōris</b> , m. <i>shout,</i>	<b>labor</b> , <b>labōris</b> , m. <i>work, labor</i> .
<i>noise (of shouting).</i>	<b>neque . . . neque</b> , <i>neither, nor</i> .

<sup>1</sup> E. g., **arbor**, f. *tree*; **clāmor**, m. *shout*; **color**, m. *color*; **dolor**, m. *pain*.

nōmen, nōminis, n. <i>name</i> .	Vertiscus, -ī, m. <i>Vertiscus</i> (a chieftain of the Remi).
occultō, -āre, <i>to hide</i> .	
pecus, pecoris, n. <i>flock</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>herd</i>	victor, victōris, m. <i>victor</i>
(grex, 144).	(victōria, 111).
timor, timōris, m. <i>fear</i> .	

159 1. Māgnus erat Rōmānīs militibus amor laudis.  
2. Itaque ante lūcem sine morā māgnō militum clāmōre  
et labōre ad mūrum Caesar cōnsul properāvit. 3. Iter  
erat per agrōs sociōrum, ubi arborēs erant multae et  
māgnae. 4. Intereā Belgae, qui timōre Rōmānorūm  
gregēs et pecora in silvīs occultāverant, dēcertāre parā-  
bant. 5. Belgae māgna corpora et longōs gladiōs habē-  
bant; semper avidī laudis fuerant. 6. Sed apud Rēmōs  
erat vir filiae rēgis, Vertiscus nōmine.<sup>2</sup> 7. Itaque ille vir,  
prīnceps et dūx, amīcus erat multōrum Belgārum et  
māgnō in honōre erat apud cōsulem Rōmānum. 8. Eā  
dē causā Caesar eum et comitēs ēius celeriter vocāvit et  
haec eīs dē pāce per sacerdōtem nuntiāvit. 9. “Belgae  
sunt caput hūius bellī, sed neque odiō illōrum neque  
praedae causā ad oppidum properāmus. 10. Belgae Ger-  
mānos frūmentō et militibus contrā Rōmānōs iuvant; ab  
eīs agrī sociōrum nostrōrum vastantur. 11. Nunc p̄ae-  
mium hūius bellī est Rōmānīs laus māgna, illīs vīta;  
vīctōres erimus.”

**160** 1. The road to the town lay<sup>3</sup> through the country of the Haeduans. 2. In the fields were many men and many herds with keepers. 3. The inhabitants were already approaching the town with their wives and children because of their fear of the Roman consul. 4. In the meantime Caesar hastened by forced<sup>4</sup> marches from the

<sup>1</sup> **Pecus** and **grex** are frequently used without distinction, but **pecus** is used particularly of small cattle, a flock of sheep, etc.

<sup>2</sup> By name.

3 Was

<sup>4</sup> Use the right case of *māgnus*.

camp to the town, which he attacked before dawn. 5. In the German's camp was a famous man, Ariovistus by name,<sup>1</sup> who had many friends among the allies of the Romans. 6. The Belgians had been victors, for they were helped by these men with grain and horses. 7. The Germans had brought a large number of trees, and with great labor had got ready a wall before the town. 8. They fought with great courage and from love of country.

---

## LESSON XVIII

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## Stems in -i

161

MASCULINE AND FEMININE STEMS

## PARADIGMS

<b>Cīvis</b> , m. <i>citizen.</i>	<b>Hostis</b> , m. and f.	<b>Nūbēs</b> , f. <i>cloud.</i>
cīvi-	enemy.	nūbi-
	hosti-	

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	cīvis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACCU.	cīvem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hoste	nūbe

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

<sup>1</sup> Compare 159, 6.

(a) Notice that the singular of **hostis** and **nūbēs** differs from that of mute stems only in the nominative; but that the plural differs in the genitive and accusative.

(b) Not many nouns of frequent occurrence belong to this class; the most common of those declined like **civis** are **finis**, m. *end*, and **ignis**, m. *fire*; in the latter the ablative **ignī** is rare; **igne** is the common form.

(c) A few nouns have the accu. sing. ending in **-im**, abl. sing in **-ī**; these will be noted in the vocabularies.

## 162

## NEUTER STEMS

<b>Mare</b> , n. <i>sea</i> .	<b>Animal</b> , n. <i>creature</i> .
<b>mari-</b>	<b>animāli-</b>

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	<b>mare</b>	animal
Gen.	<b>maris</b>	<b>animālis</b>
Dat.	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>
Accu.	<b>mare</b>	animal
Abl.	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<b>maria</b>	animālia
Gen.	_____ <sup>1</sup>	<b>animālium</b>
Dat.	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>
Accu.	<b>maria</b>	animālia
Abl.	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>

(a) Notice that neuter nouns of this class have only **-ī** in the ablative singular, and always **-ia** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural.

---

<sup>1</sup> The genitive plural of **mare** is found but once, and then has the form **marum**.

163 To the class of *ī* stems belong:

(1) Nouns of the third declension ending in *is* or *-ēs*, mostly feminine, or in *-e*, neuter, not increasing in the genitive.<sup>1</sup>

(2) Neuters ending in *-al* and *-ar*.

## 164

## VOCABULARY

**animal**, *animālis*, n. *living creature.*

**caedēs**, *caedis*, f. *slaughter.*

**cīvis**, *cīvis*, m. and f. *citizen.*

**clādēs**, *clādis*, f. *loss, disaster.*

**collis**, *collis*, m. *hill.*

**conlocō**, *-āre*, *to place, to station.*

**ē**, *ex*,<sup>2</sup> prep. with the abl. *out of, from.*

**et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

**finis**, *fīnis*, m. *end; plu. boundaries, territory.*

**frāter**, *frātris*, m. *brother.*

**hostis**, *hostis*, m. and f. *enemy.*

**ignis**, *ignis*, m. *fire.*

**impetrō**, *-āre*, *to obtain (one's request).*

**mare**, *maris*, n. *sea.*

**moenia**, *moenium*, n. plu.

*walls, ramparts (of a town).*

**nūbēs**, *nūbis*, f. *cloud.*

**post**, prep. with the accu. *after, behind.*

*-que, and.*<sup>3</sup>

**rogō**, *-āre*, *to ask for.*<sup>4</sup>

**turris**, *turris*,<sup>5</sup> f. *tower.*

165 1. **Prīcipēs** *ēius cōnsilī* et *dūcēs* *hostium* erant *Ger-mānī*. 2. Inter *Nerviōs* is *quī* *sacerdōs* *iūdexque* appellā-

<sup>1</sup> That is, having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular.

<sup>2</sup> Ē is used before consonants only; ex before both vowels and consonants. Compare ā, ab.

<sup>3</sup> Always attached to the second of a pair of words: **terrā marīque**, *on land and sea.* Compare -ne.

<sup>4</sup> The thing asked for and the person from whom it is asked are both in the accusative: **cōnsulem auxilium rogant**, *they ask the consul for aid.*

<sup>5</sup> Accu. sing. ends occasionally in im; 161, c.

bātūr, māgnā vōce haec nūntiāvit. 3. "Hostēs iam et pecora et gregēs timōre mīlitum nostrōrum in silvīs occultant." 4. Cōnsilium est rēgīs, cūius frāter in amīcitiā nostrā ōlim erat, cīvīs contrā nostrōs<sup>1</sup> incitāre et oppidum oppūgnāre. 5. Māgnus est eīs numerus equōrum, quibus celeriter et cum audāciā in nostrōs fīnīs properāvērunt; iam moenibus adpropinquant. 6. Sed in nostrīs collibus parātī sunt īgnēs, ante moenia sunt custōdēs; oppidum expūgnāre nōn poterunt,<sup>2</sup> sed māgna erit clādēs eōrum. 7. In vestrīs collibus, Germānī, sunt nova animālia, quōrum fāma apud Rōmānōs māgna est. 8. Turrēs, quae in colle post oppidum erant, iam nūbi-bus occultābantur. Itaque cōnsul moenibus oppidī sine clāde adpropinquābat. 9. Ante lūcem pūgnātūm est māgnā virtūtē ā Rōmānīs sociīsque inter mare et castra. Hī ex oppidō in silvās māgnā caede fugātī sunt. 10. Itaque cōnsulem Rōmānum auxiliū et rogābunt et im-petrābunt sociī nostrī.

**166** 1. The cause of the war was hatred for both the king and his companions. 2. The king's brother was a leader and a chief among the Belgians, and had been greatly praised for his bravery and patriotism;<sup>3</sup> he asked the Romans for help.<sup>4</sup> 3. The enemy had prepared fires on the hills, and in company with the Germans were already hastening by forced marches into their territory. 4. The Nervii fought from the walls, but the enemy built towers on the hill which was behind the town. 5. The slaughter was not great, for the enemy fought with small spears, and the Nervii had swords.

<sup>1</sup> Used substantively, *our men, our soldiers*.

<sup>2</sup> The future indicative of **possum**, *can, be able*. What person and number is it?

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *love of country*.

<sup>4</sup> Compare **165, 10**.

6. Quickly and fearlessly<sup>1</sup> the rest of the enemy approached over<sup>2</sup> the hills, which were already hidden by the clouds. 7. The Nervii were neighbors of those who had conspired together, and after the battle they entered their lands for plunder.

---

## LESSON XIX

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

167

## MIXED STEMS

## PARADIGMS

<b>Arx</b> , f. <i>citadel.</i>	<b>Urbs</b> , f. <i>city.</i>	<b>Cliēns</b> , m. <i>client.</i>
arc(i)-	urb(i)-	client(i)-

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	<b>arx</b>	<b>urbs</b>	<b>cliēns</b>
GEN.	<b>arcis</b>	<b>urbis</b>	<b>clientis</b>
DAT.	<b>arcī</b>	<b>urbī</b>	<b>clientī</b>
ACCU.	<b>arcem</b>	<b>urbem</b>	<b>clientem</b>
ABL.	<b>arce</b>	<b>urbe</b>	<b>cliente</b>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<b>arcēs</b>	<b>urbēs</b>	<b>clientēs</b>
GEN.	<b>arcium</b>	<b>urbium</b>	<b>clientium</b>
DAT.	<b>arcibus</b>	<b>urbibus</b>	<b>clientibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>arcēs, -īs</b>	<b>urbēs, -īs</b>	<b>clientēs, -īs</b>
ABL.	<b>arcibus</b>	<b>urbibus</b>	<b>clientibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *without fear.*<sup>2</sup> Use *per.*

(a) Notice that these nouns are declined like consonant stems in the singular, but show the peculiarities of i stems in the plural. No sharp distinction can be made between nouns of this class and nouns like **hostis** and **nubēs** which are classed under i stems.

**168** To the class of Mixed Stems belong:

- (1) Most monosyllables in -s and -x preceded by a consonant, as **arx**, **urbs**, etc.
- (2) Most nouns in -ns and -rs, as **cliēns**, **cohors**, etc.

**169** VOCABULARY

<b>arx</b> , <b>arcis</b> , f. <i>citadel</i> .	<b>legiō</b> , <b>legiōnis</b> , f. <i>legion</i> (a military body made up of ten <b>cohortēs</b> ).
<b>cīvitās</b> , <b>cīvitātis</b> , <sup>1</sup> f. <i>state</i> , <i>citizenship</i> ( <b>cīvis</b> , 164).	<b>mōns</b> , <b>montis</b> , m. <i>mountain</i> .
<b>cliēns</b> , <b>clientis</b> , m. <i>client</i> .	<b>mors</b> , <b>mortis</b> , f. <i>death</i> .
<b>cohors</b> , <b>cohortis</b> , f. <i>cohort</i> (a military body of 300–360 men).	<b>nāvis</b> , <sup>2</sup> <b>nāvis</b> , f. <i>ship</i> ( <b>nāvigō</b> , 56; <i>nauta</i> , 47).
<b>eques</b> , <b>equitis</b> , m. <i>horseman</i> ( <b>equus</b> , 80).	<b>pōns</b> , <b>pontis</b> , m. <i>bridge</i> .
<b>etiam</b> , adv. <i>even</i> .	<b>quiēs</b> , <b>quiētis</b> , f. <i>quiet, peace</i> .
<b>flūmen</b> , <b>flūminis</b> , n. <i>river</i> .	<b>ripa</b> , <b>ripare</b> , f. <i>bank</i> (of a stream).
<b>fuga</b> , <b>fugae</b> , f. <i>flight</i> ( <b>fugō</b> ).	<b>urbs</b> , <b>urbis</b> , f. <i>city</i> .
<b>gēns</b> , <b>gentis</b> , f. <i>clan, family, tribe</i> .	

**170** 1. Inter **hostis** erant multī quī clientēs populī Rōmānī oīlī fuerant. 2. Hī ex fugā in castra nostra errāverant, ubi eōs vīctor cōsul, Quintus nōmine,<sup>3</sup> cum cūrā servābat

<sup>1</sup> Feminine nouns in -ās, -ātis, sometimes have the genitive plural in -iūm, accusative plural in -ēs, -īs, like mixed stems; but for the present they are treated as consonant stems.

<sup>2</sup> Usually declined like **cīvis**, rarely like **turris**.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 159, 6.

et obsidum locō<sup>1</sup> habēbat. 3. Eques rēgī eōrum, quī nōn longē ab eā urbe in colle aberat, cōnsilium hostium nūntiāvit. 4. Intereā cōnsul clientēs Rōmānōrum in nāvibus celeriter ad rīpam flūminis portāvit; ibi erat locus castrīs idōneus. 5. Māgnūm numerum armōrum hūius bellī causā gentēs Germānōrum comparāverant et iam in fīnīs Gallōrum properābant. 6. Post arcem, quae in colle erat, hostēs māgnō labōre pontem parāverant; et ibi et in arce proelium exspectābant. 7. Māgna erit etiam in morte laus eōrum quī prō patriā cum audāciā dēcertāvērunt. 8. Inter mare et montem in quō ignēs hostium erant, māgnā cum caede Gallōrum pūgnātūm est. 9. Post rēgis mortem reliquī hostēs fugantur; haec cōnsuli nūntiantur. Māgnō amōre praedae legiōnes Rōmānae ad rīpam properant. 10. Iam neque quiēs neque pāx in Galliā erat, sed ab ōceanō marīque ad flūmen Germānōrum bellum et arma.

**171** 1. The states of Gaul were aroused to war by their hatred of the Roman citizens. These with their<sup>2</sup> clients were in the Gauls' cities and towns. 2. Therefore the consul, whose name was Quintus,<sup>3</sup> together with his<sup>2</sup> brother, hastened by forced marches into Gaul. 3. He did not have many horsemen, but he got ready towers in a suitable place on a hill. 4. Many ships had been built by the allies of the Roman people, and these were not far away. 5. The enemy had many fires on the hills and mountains, and they awaited the battle and death with great courage. 6. The slaughter was great, both of the

<sup>1</sup> locō, abl. *in place of = as.*

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> This may be translated as in **170**, 2; we may also say **eui** (dat. of possessor) **nōmen erat Quīntō** or **eui nōmen erat Quīntus**. The predicate dative **Quīntō**, agreeing with **eui**, is more common than the predicate nominative **Quīntus**, agreeing with **nōmen**.

Romans and of those who were fighting bravely for their<sup>1</sup> country. 7. The Gauls were conquered, but the Romans, though victorious,<sup>2</sup> did not lay waste their lands.

---

## LESSON XX

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## RULES FOR GENDER

**172** THE following rules will help to fix the gender of a majority of the nouns of the Third Declension, but it is important and easy to learn the gender of each noun when it is first met.

(1) Masculine are nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis, -idis) : *ōrdō*, *order*, *rank*, *victor*, *mōs*, *custom*, *agger*, *mound*, *eques*, etc.

(2) Feminine are nouns in -ās, -ēs (gen. -is), -is; -x and -s (after a consonant); -dō, and collective and abstract nouns in -iō : *civitās*, *nūbēs*, *nāvis*, *arx*, *urbs*, *multitudō*, *legiō*.

(3) Neuter are nouns in -e, -l, -n, -t; -us: *mare*, *animal*, *nōmen*, *caput*, *corpus*.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME

**173**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Tōtam aestātem labōrat.** *He works the entire summer.*
2. **Septem noctēs continuās oppūgnābat.** *He attacked the town for seven nights in succession.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> *Though victorious*, simply *vīctorēs*.

(a) Notice that in these sentences the accusatives *tōtam aestātem, septem noctēs continuās* answer the question *How long?* That is, they express the time during which the action of the verb continues. Such an accusative is called an *Accusative of Duration of Time*.

**174 Rule.**—Duration of Time is expressed by the Accusative.

W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256; H. 417.

ABLATIVE OF TIME

**175**

EXAMPLES

1. **Hieme** noctēs sunt longae. *In winter the nights are long.*
2. **Prīmā lūce** hostēs oppidum oppūgnābunt. *At daybreak the enemy will attack the town.*
3. **Septem proximīs annīs** **Gallōs** pācāvit. *Within the last seven years he has subdued the Gauls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *hieme, prīmā lūce, septem proximīs annīs*, answer the questions *When? Within what time?* Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Time At Which or Within Which*.

**176 Rule.**—The Time At Which or Within Which an action takes place is expressed by the Ablative.

W. 406. 407; B. 230. 231; AG. 256; H. 486. 487.

**177**

VOCABULARY

aestās, -ātis, <sup>1</sup> f. <i>summer.</i>	hiems, -mis, f. <i>winter.</i>
annus, -i, m. <i>year.</i>	hōra, -ae, f. <i>hour.</i>
cōfirmō, -āre, <i>to make firm, establish.</i>	nox, noctis, f. <i>night.</i>
continuus, -a, -um, <i>consecutive, in succession.</i>	primus, -a, -um, <i>first.</i>
hiemō, -āre, <i>to spend the winter.</i>	proximus, -a, -um, <i>nearest, last.</i>
	septem, indeclinable, <sup>2</sup> <i>seven.</i>
	septimus, -a, -um, <i>seventh.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Hereafter the entire form of the genitive will not be given, but only so much as is necessary to show the declension.

<sup>2</sup> That is, having the same form for all genders and cases.

<b>tertius</b> , -a, -um, <i>third.</i>	<b>trāns</b> , prep. <i>with accu.</i>
<b>tōtus</b> , <sup>1</sup> -a, -um, <i>whole, en-</i>	<i>across.</i>

178 1. Tertiā vigiliā cōnsulis frāter, cui nōmen erat Marcō,<sup>2</sup>  
equitēs et legiōnēs in colle proximō conlocāvit ubi hostis  
exspectābat. 2. Hī nocte per fīnis Nerviōrum celeriter  
properāvērunt et prīmā lūce nōn longē ab castrīs Rō-  
mānōrum aberant. 3. Coniugēs et liberī Gallōrum hīs  
proximīs noctibus in oppidīs et urbībus conlocātī<sup>3</sup> erant.  
4. Septem hōrās continuās ab Rōmānīs et ab Gallīs māgnā  
cum caede pūgnābātur. 5. Hostēs superātī sunt et obsi-  
dēs dabant; sed ab reliquīs Gallīs semper māgnoperē  
laudābantur. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est septimā aestāte inter  
eōs Gallōs quī in armīs erant et Rōmānōs; iam multōs  
annōs per Galliam quiēs fuerat. 7. Haec vīctōria Rō-  
mānōrum cēterīs Gallīs et Germānīs ab eīs gentibus, quae  
fīnitimae erant, māgnō clāmōre nūntiāta erat. 8. Post  
multōs annōs gentēs Germāniae bellum contrā vīctōrēs  
Rōmānōs parābant; septem noctēs continuās īgnēs in  
montibus collibusque vidēbantur.<sup>4</sup> 9. Sed tōtam proximā  
hiemem cōnsul Rōmānus cum septem cohortibus  
apud Gallōs hiemāverat. 10. Iam frāter cōnsulis cum  
legiōnibus tertīā et septimā<sup>5</sup> māgnīs itineribus ex Ītaliā  
ad cōnsulem in Galliam properābat.

**179** 1. The third summer Caesar hastened into the territory of the Belgians and stationed his cohorts on the

<sup>1</sup> The genitive singular of all genders is **tōtīus**, dative singular **tōtī**; otherwise **tōtūs** is declined like **bonus**. Compare the declension of **hic**, **ille**, etc. <sup>2</sup> Compare 171, 2, foot-note.

<sup>3</sup> When a predicate adjective or participle agrees with two or more nouns of different genders, it is Masculine when the nouns denote persons, and Neuter when the nouns denote things.

<sup>4</sup> *Were seen.* From **videō**, *to see*; the principal parts and the conjugation will be given later.

<sup>5</sup> Agreeing with *legiōnibus*. Why is the noun plural when the adjectives are singular?

mountains and hills. 2. He strengthened the courage<sup>1</sup> of the soldiers by his<sup>2</sup> words.<sup>3</sup> 3. Many men, clients of the Romans, hurried to him from the neighboring tribes and states and brought arms and hostages. 4. The leading men of the enemy were called together on that night; they were without a plan for the war. 5. Among them were many who once had been greatly praised by the Romans for their courage. 6. During the night the king of the Belgians with his attendants brought a large quantity of arms into camp. 7. The Romans and the Belgians fought in the plain between the hills for seven hours; the Belgians<sup>4</sup> were driven<sup>5</sup> into their camp.

## 180

## READING EXERCISE

*The Beginning of the Republic*

Post rēgēs cōnsulēs duo<sup>6</sup> prō rēge ūnō<sup>7</sup> creātī sunt,<sup>8</sup> quibus annum<sup>9</sup> imperium<sup>10</sup> cīvitātis datum est. Prīmō annō cōnsulēs fuērunt Lūcius Iunius Brūtus, qui rēgem Tarquinium expulerat,<sup>11</sup> et Tarquinius Collātīnus. Sed nōmen Tarquiniōrum populō Rōmānō nōn erat grātūm; itaque cum coniuge, līberīs, servīsque omnia<sup>12</sup> bona<sup>13</sup> ex urbe ad fīnitimōs portāvit, et in ēius locum Valerius Publīcola cōnsul est creātūs. Sed iam ille Tarquinius, qui rēx fuerat, bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābat. In prīmō proeliō Brūtus cōnsul occidit,<sup>14</sup> quem Rōmānae mātrōnae<sup>15</sup> per totum annum luxērunt.<sup>16</sup> Posterō<sup>17</sup> annō Tarquinius

<sup>1</sup> **animus.**<sup>9</sup> An adjective; compare **annus**.<sup>2</sup> Omit.<sup>10</sup> *Rule.*<sup>3</sup> **verbum, -ī.**<sup>11</sup> *Had driven out.*<sup>4</sup> Translate by a pronoun.<sup>12</sup> *All.*<sup>5</sup> *Put to flight.*<sup>13</sup> Neut. plur. used substantively, *goods*.<sup>6</sup> *Two.*<sup>14</sup> *Fell.*<sup>7</sup> *One.*<sup>15</sup> What English word is derived from this?<sup>8</sup> **creō, -āre, to elect.**<sup>16</sup> *Mourned.*<sup>17</sup> *The next.*

cum Rōmānīs iterum<sup>1</sup> armīs dēcertāvit et Porsenna, rēx Etruscōrum, eī auxiliū dedit. In hōc bellō Horātius sōlus<sup>2</sup> pontem servāvit, dum<sup>3</sup> is ab Rōmānīs ruptus esset.<sup>4</sup> Dēnique Porsenna pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit<sup>5</sup>; Tarquinius post nōn multōs annōs in villā mortuus est.<sup>6</sup>

## LESSON XXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD  
DECLENSION

181

## PARADIGMS

**Audāx**, *bold.*  
**audāci-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audācī		audācibus	
ACCU.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audācī		audācibus	

**Fortis**, *brave.*  
**forti-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	fortī		fortibus	
ACCU.	fortem	forte	fortīs, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	fortī		fortibus	

<sup>1</sup> Again.<sup>4</sup> Plup. subj. pass., *had been broken down.*<sup>2</sup> Alone.<sup>5</sup> Made.<sup>3</sup> Until,<sup>6</sup> Died,

**Ācer**, *sharp, eager, spirited.*  
ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accu.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(a) Notice that these adjectives are all declined like **i** stems.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Adjectives declined like **audāx**, which has but one form for all genders in the nominative singular, are called *Adjectives of One Termination*; those declined like **fortis**, **forte**, *Adjectives of Two Terminations*; and those declined like **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *Adjectives of Three Terminations*.

## VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp, eager, spirited.</i>	equester, equestris, equestre, <i>belonging to the cavalry,</i>
armō, -āre, <i>to arm</i> (arma, 111).	equestrian (equus, 80, eques, 169).
audāx, -ācis, <i>bold</i> (audācia, 151).	fortis, forte, <i>strong, brave.</i>
brevis, <i>breve, short.</i>	ita, adv. <i>so, thus, in this manner.</i>
dīmicō, -āre, <i>to fight, contend</i> (compare pūgnō, 101).	iuentūs, -tūtis, f. <i>the period of youth, youth, young men.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Adjectives of one termination sometimes have the abl. sing. ending in -e instead of -ī, but this is not common in prose of the classical period.

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of the nouns in 161 and 162.

<i>omnis, omne, all, whole.</i>	<i>tempus, -oris, n. time.</i>
<i>pars, -tis, f. part.</i>	<i>velox, -ocis, swift.</i>
<i>quartus, -a, -um, fourth.</i>	<i>vulnus, -eris, n. wound (vulnerō, 144).</i>
<i>studium, -i, n. zeal, desire.</i>	

**183** 1. Omnes Belgae, qui in tertia parte Galliae habitabant, cum finitimis gentibus et civitatibus brevi tempore coniurabant. 2. Eo tempore hiemabat Caesar cum quartâ legione in ea parte Galliae quae Italiae proxima est; de Belgarum consilio ei per epistulas nuntiatum est. 3. Caesar, ubi (*when*) brevi tempore copiam frumenti comparavit, finibus Belgarum adpropinquavit. 4. Cum omnibus equitibus et novis cohortibus iuventutis, quas ex urbibus Italiae vocaverat, contrâ hostis properabat; in itinere copias Gallorum equestris proelio fugavit. 5. Remi, qui ex Belgis proximi Galli sunt, non longe aberant cum primis civitatis clientibusque eorum; auxilium contrâ inimicos rogaverunt. 6. Apud Belgas erat magna inopia omnium; neque arma neque equos neque copiam frumenti habebant. 7. Sed Germanni, qui audaces fortesque erant, iam multos continuos annos cum Romani dimiticaverant. 8. Ante proelium quod exspectabat Caesar, animos militum ita confirmavit: "Vesta erit laus victoriae; sed hostibus vulnera et mors." 9. Veloci acresque erant Belgae qui longis hastis armati erant; magnō cum studiō bellī totam noctem dimiticabant.

**184** 1. At that time Caesar's lieutenant was in Gaul, and hostages were given him by all the tribes. 2. In the next winter the bold Gauls for many reasons prepared for<sup>1</sup> a new war against the Romans. 3. When<sup>2</sup> all the

<sup>1</sup> Prepare for, parō, -are.

<sup>2</sup> Use **ubi** and the perfect indicative; compare sentence 3 above. **Ubi** means both *where* and *when*; it will be used in both senses in the following lessons.

arms had been brought from the town, Caesar hurried with the eager cavalry and the brave cohorts into the lands of the neighboring tribe. 4. These men were brave and bold, but owing to their fear of the Roman soldiers they were ready to fight neither at that time nor in that place. 5. Their cavalry forces were not great, but they had placed all their young men on a hill which was not far distant. 6. The Romans' horses, of which there was a great number in camp, were swift and spirited.

---

## LESSON XXII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**185** ADJECTIVES are compared in three Degrees, as in English—the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding *-ior* m. and f., *-ius* n., and the Superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altus</i> ( <i>alto-</i> )	<i>alt-iор</i>	<i>alt-issimus</i>
<i>fortis</i> ( <i>forti-</i> )	<i>fort-iор</i>	<i>fort-issimus</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>audāx</i> ( <i>audāc-</i> )	<i>audāc-iор</i>	<i>audāc-issimus</i>

### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

**186** Comparatives are declined as follows:

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the final vowel of the stem of the Positive, if it have any, as in *alto-*, *forti-*, is dropped before the endings *-ior*, *-issimus*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
DAT.	fortiōrī		fortiōribus	
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs <sup>1</sup>	fortiōra
ABL.	fortiōre <sup>1</sup>		fortiōribus	

(a) Compare this declension of the Comparative with that of the Positive of adjectives of the Third Declension, 181, and notice the points of difference carefully.

187 Superlatives are all declined like bonus, 62.

188 Compare: cārus, clārus, brevis, tristis, velōx.

#### ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

189

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Marcus est clārior quam frāter.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
2. **Marcus est frātre clārior.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
3. **Quid est bonō cīvī cārius quam patria?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*
4. **Quid est bonō cīvī patriā cārius?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the person or thing with which the subject of each sentence is compared is either in the same case as the subject and connected by the conjunction *quam, than*, or is expressed by the simple Ablative. Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The endings -ī in the Ablative Singular and -īs in the Accusative Plural occur, but are rare.

(b) This Ablative can be used only when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative; when the first of the two things compared is in any other case **quam** must be used: e. g., **cārior Horātiō quam servō est ille locus.** *That place is dearer to Horace than to his slave.*

190     *Rule.*—The Ablative of Comparison is used after the nominative or accusative of Comparatives.

W. 380, 381; B. 217; AG. 247; H. 471.

191

## VOCABULARY

<b>altus</b> , -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>	<b>māter</b> , -tris, f. <i>mother.</i>
<b>atrōx</b> , -cis, <i>savage, frightful.</i>	<b>mulier</b> , -eris, f. <i>woman.</i>
<b>certus</b> , -a, -um, <i>certain, sure.</i>	<b>pater</b> , -tris, m. <i>father.</i>
<b>dūrus</b> , -a, -um, <i>hard, difficult.</i>	<b>pēs</b> , pedis, m. <i>foot.</i>
<b>egēns</b> , -ntis, <i>lacking, needy.</i>	<b>quam</b> , conj. <i>than.</i>
<b>gravis</b> , -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	<b>timidus</b> , -a, -um, <i>timid</i> ( <i>timor</i> , 158).
<b>imperō</b> , -āre, <i>to order.<sup>1</sup></i>	<b>tristis</b> , -e, <i>sad.</i>
	<b>tūtus</b> , -a, -um, <i>safe.</i>

192     1. Belgae sunt fortiorēs et audaciōrēs quam eī Gallī quī Rōmānīs finitimi sunt. 2. Nam cum Germānīs, quī nōn longē absunt, saepe dūrissimō tempore anni dīmicant. 3. Multis dē causis eā aestāte gravius et atrōcius bellum in hāc parte Galliae exspectābatur. 4. Mōns ubi Caesar iuventūtem et equestrīs cōpiās conlocāvit, altior erat eō colle quem hostēs occupāverant. 5. Puerōs omnīs et mulierēs timidiōrēs in altīs silvīs occultāverant hostēs, ubi tūtiōrēs erant quam in arce. 6. Belgīs erat in animō<sup>2</sup> timidōs cōfirmāre, egentīs iuvāre, omnīs contrā

<sup>1</sup> With the dat. of person and the accu. of thing, *to order to furnish*: *eīs obsidēs imperāvit.* *He ordered them to furnish hostages.*

<sup>2</sup> esse in animō with the dative of possessor, *to have in mind, plan, intend.*

Rōmānōs incitāre, patriam līberāre. 7. Multī obsidēs in castrīs Caesaris et in ītaliā erant, inter quōs erant frātrēs, filii, filiaeque pīncipūm cīvitātīs. 8. Sed tertīā vigiliā noctis hostēs celeriter et māgnō cum studiō proelī moeni-bus adpropinquāvērunt; ibi diū pūgnātūm est, sed vīc-tōria erat Rōmānīs certa. 9. Post id bellum ante pedēs Caesaris Belgae trīstissimī amīcitiam ēius et populī Rōmānī postulābant. 10. Iam hiems adpropinquābat; itaque Caesar eīs obsidēs, patrēs et mātrēs, imperāvit.

**193** 1. Of all the states of Gaul, this was the bravest and most eager for war. 2. The enemy had many horses which were swifter and more spirited than those belonging to<sup>1</sup> the Romans. 3. In the first watch of the night the Romans approached the town, the wall of which was very high. 4. But at daybreak the enemy were defeated in a hard battle with the cavalry<sup>2</sup> in a broad plain before the town. 5. The consul ordered the Gauls to furnish<sup>3</sup> many hostages, among whom were the fathers and the sons of the leading men of the state. 6. Caesar intended<sup>4</sup> to get ready a large number of ships in the winter and to carry his soldiers to Britain the following summer. 7. All the neighboring tribes of Britain hastened to the sea by the shortest road and prepared to fight with the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> Belonging to : translate by the possessive genitive.

<sup>2</sup> With the cavalry : translate by an adjective.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 192, 10.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 192, 6.

## LESSON XXIII

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

194 ADJECTIVES ending in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher	pulchr-iор	pulcher-rimus
ācer	ācer-iор	ācer-rimus

In the same way compare *miser*, *liber*.

195 Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem of the Positive less its final vowel:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facil-iор	facil-limus
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	difficil-iор	difficil-limus
similis, <i>like</i>	simil-iор	simil-limus
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>	dissimil-iор	dissimil-limus
humilis, <i>low</i>	humil-iор	humil-limus
gracilis, <i>slender</i>	gracil-iор	gracil-limus

## ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

196 EXAMPLES

1. Paulō post adpropinquāvit cōsul. *A little later the consul approached.*
2. Haec via est multō diffcilior. *This way is much more difficult.*
3. Illa turris decem pedibus est altior quam mūrus. *That tower is ten feet higher than the wall.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **paulō**, **multō**, **decem** **pedibus** answer the questions “*How much later, more difficult, higher?*” Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

**197 Rule.**—The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Comparatives and words suggesting comparison.<sup>1</sup>

W. 393; B. 223; AG. 250; H. 479.

**198**

### VOCABULARY

<b>beātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>happy</i> .	<b>multō</b> , <i>much</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<b>celer</b> , -eris, -ere, <i>swift</i> .	<b>nēmō</b> , <b>nēminis</b> , m. <i>no one</i> .
<b>decem</b> (indeclinable), <i>ten</i> .	<b>nihil</b> , n. (indeclin.), <i>nothing</i> .
<b>difficilis</b> , -e, <i>difficult</i> .	<b>ōrdō</b> , -inis, m. <i>order, rank</i> .
<b>dissimilis</b> , -e, <i>unlike</i> .	<b>paulō</b> , <i>little</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<b>facilis</b> , -e, <i>easy</i> .	<b>similis</b> , -e, <i>like</i> .
<b>humilis</b> , -e, <i>low</i> .	<b>vīgintī</b> (indeclin.), <i>twenty</i> .
<b>īsignis</b> , -e, <i>remarkable, prominent</i> .	

**199** 1. Eī Belgae, quī Germānīs<sup>3</sup> sunt nōn dissimilēs, multō fortiorēs sunt quam reliquī hūius nōminis. 2. Illī decem ante<sup>4</sup> annīs superāverant cōnsulem Rōmānum, quī per eōrum agrōs cum cōpiīs properābat. 3. Quā dē causā Caesar primā aestātē cum equitibus celerrimīs in eam partem Galliae properāverat. 4. Eō tempore nāvēs Rōmānōrum paulō altiōrēs erant quam eae quās Belgae habēbant, sed humiliōrēs quam eae quae nunc in nostrō marī sunt. 5. Multō facilius erat Belgīs, quōrum in fīnibus erant

<sup>1</sup> The most common words suggesting comparison are the adverbs **ante**, *before*, **post**, *afterward*, and the verb **mālō**, *to prefer* (487).

<sup>2</sup> **Multō** and **paulō** are originally the ablatives singular neuter of the adjectives **multus** and **paulus**; they are, however, generally called adverbs.

<sup>3</sup> Dative.

<sup>4</sup> **Ante** is here an adverb and has no influence on the ablative.

multae arborēs, nāvīs aedificāre. 6. Īnsignī studiō omnium ūrdinum per vīgintī diēs<sup>1</sup> continuōs Belgae labōrābant; multās navīs celeriōrēs altiōrēsque aedificāvērunt. 7. Similī studiō cum mīlitibus nostrīs diū pūgnāvērunt, sed septimā hōrā ad rīpās sunt fugātī. 8. Nihil hominī fortī bōnōque pulchrius est quam prō patriā morī;<sup>2</sup> nēmō beātior est quam is quī coniugis et liberōrum causā for- titer dīmicat. 9. Pōns, quem trāns flūmen aedificāvit Caesar, lātior septem pedibus erat quam via. 10. Quiēs longa fuerat eā nocte in oppidō Belgārum, sed paulō ante lūcem magnō cum clāmōre ad castra Rōmānōrum prope- rāvērunt hostēs.

**200** 1. For many reasons Caesar prepared to hurry into Gaul by a more difficult way. 2. The tribe, whose territory he was approaching, was much braver than the rest of the Gauls. 3. Their horses were much swifter and more spirited than those of the Romans. 4. These tribes were most like the Germans,<sup>3</sup> who lived across the very wide river. 5. Caesar took possession of all their towns and stationed the bravest troops on the neighboring hills. 6. A little while after, the enemy approached with all their forces, but were defeated and put to flight in a severe cavalry battle. 7. The Gauls' ships were very un- like<sup>4</sup> the Romans'; the former were shorter and broader, the latter longer and higher.

<sup>1</sup> Accu. plur. of **diēs**, *day*.

<sup>2</sup> Infinitive, *to die*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 199, 1.

<sup>4</sup> *Very unlike*, superlative.

## LESSON XXIV

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

**201** THE following adjectives are irregular in Comparison, the Comparative and Superlative being formed from different stems than the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bonus</b>	<b>melior</b>	<b>optimus</b>
<b>malus</b>	<b>pēior</b>	<b>pessimus</b>
<b>māgnus</b>	<b>māior</b>	<b>māximus</b>
<b>parvus</b>	<b>minor</b>	<b>minimus</b>
<b>multus</b>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimus</b>

**202** **Plūs** is defective in declension:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	—	plūs	plūrēs plūra
Gen.	—	plūris	plūrium
Dat.	—	—	plūribus
Accu.	—	plūs	plūrēs plūra
Abl.	—	plūre	plūribus

**203** The following have no Positive:

POSITIVE (wanting) (Compare <b>prae</b> , before)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
" <b>citrā</b> , this side of)	<b>prior</b> , former	<b>prīmus</b> , first
" <b>ultrā</b> , be- yond)	<b>citerior</b> , hither interior, inner	<b>citimus</b> , hither- most
" <b>in, intrā</b> , in, within)	<b>ulterior</b> , farther	<b>ultimus</b> , farthest, last
" <b>prope</b> , near)	<b>propior</b> , nearer	<b>proximus</b> , near- est, next

## 204 The Positive of the following is rare:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
( <i>posteri</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	<i>posterior, later</i>	{ <i>postrēmus, latest, last</i> { <i>postumus, late-born</i>
( <i>exteri</i> )	<i>exterior, outer</i>	{ <i>extrēmus</i> } <i>outermost</i> { <i>extimus,</i>
( <i>inferi</i> )	<i>inferior, lower</i>	{ <i>īfīmus</i> } <i>lowest</i> { <i>īmus,</i>
( <i>superi</i> )	<i>superior, higher</i>	{ <i>suprēmus, last</i> { <i>summus, highest</i>

## ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

## 205

## EXAMPLES

1. *Amicōs cūrā liberāvit.* *He freed his friends from care.*
2. *Oppidānōs armis privā-bunt.* *They will deprive the townsmen of their arms.*
3. *Locus militibus vacuuus erat.* *The place was free of soldiers.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablatives **cūrā**, **armis**, **militibus** express that from which one is separated or that which he is without. Such an Ablative is called an *Ablative of Separation*.

206 *Rule.*—The Ablative of Separation is used with verbs and adjectives meaning to relieve, deprive, need, lack, etc.  
W. 374–377; B. 214; AG. 243; H. 461–465.

(a) Verbs of freeing, depriving, lacking, and removing are ordinarily used with the simple ablative, unless

---

<sup>1</sup> The positive of these adjectives is rare save **posterus** in such phrases as **posterō diē**, *on the next day*; **posterō annō**, *in the next year*. The plurals **posteri**, *descendants*, **īferi**, *the inhabitants of the lower world*, **the dead**, **superi**, *the gods above*, are also fairly common.

a person is meant; then the ablative with a preposition is used: e. g., *civitatem a rege liberat*.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prefixes *ab-*, *dis-*, *sē-* usually have the ablative with a preposition: e. g., *Rōma longē abest ab hōc locō*, *Rome is far distant from this place*; *Britannī differunt a Gallis*, *The Britons differ from the Gauls*.

207

VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

<i>altitūdō, -inis</i> , f. <i>height</i> .	<i>spoliō, -āre</i> , <i>to despoil of</i> .
<i>levis, -e</i> , <i>light, slight</i> .	<i>vacuus, -a, -um</i> , <i>empty of</i> ,
<i>privō, -āre</i> , <i>to deprive of</i> .	<i>free from</i> .
<i>secundus, -a, -um</i> , <i>favorable</i> ,	<i>vēr, vēris</i> , n. <i>spring</i> .

*following.*

208 1. Tōtam eam hiemem Caesar in citeriōre Galliā omnibus cum cōpiis hiemābat. 2. Paulō ante prīmū vēr cum decem cohortibus et multīs equestrībus cōpiis in ulteriōrem Galliam properāvit et in eās cīvitātēs quae marī propiōrēs erant. 3. Itinera difficillima erant dūrissimō tempore anni et altitūdine montium quae inter Galliam et Ītiālā sunt. 4. Caesar cum septem cohortibus omnia superiōra loca occupāvit, sed equitēs nōn longē ab infimō monte<sup>2</sup> conlocāvit. 5. Clientēs cīvium Rōmānōrum et omnīs qui nātūrā timidiōrēs erant armīs privābant hostēs. 6. Posterō diē<sup>3</sup> levī et secundō proeliō equestrī in campō dīmicātum est. 7. Hōc proeliō et eō quod posterō diē pūgnātum est, Caesar cīvīs Rōmānōs et sociōs māximō periculō et timōre līberāvit. 8. Hī Gallī multō ācriōrēs erant quam eī quōs Caesar priōre aestāte similī caede

<sup>1</sup> From this point the new words used in paradigms are ordinarily not repeated in the vocabularies, as has been done hitherto. Pupils should therefore carefully learn the meaning of each new paradigm.

<sup>2</sup> *infimus mōns*, *the foot of the mountain*; *summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain*.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative sing. of *diēs*, *day*.

superāverat. 9. Nam in extrēmīs fīnibus Gallōrum habitābant et longē aberant ā Germānis, quī timōre vacuī erant. 10. Eī quī superātī erant armīs spoliābantur et in agrīs victōrum labōrābant.

**209** 1. At the beginning of spring<sup>1</sup> Caesar prepared to carry his troops from farther Gaul into Britain by means of ships. 2. In the previous summer he had put to flight a tribe of the Britons and had deprived them of their arms. 3. He stationed ten cohorts in those parts which were nearer the sea,<sup>2</sup> and a little after the third watch hastened toward the enemy. 4. The enemy's spears were a foot longer than those of the Romans', but their shields were a little smaller than the Romans'. 5. The enemy were overcome in a slight cavalry battle and were driven in flight<sup>3</sup> into a neighboring wood. 6. The inner part of Britain was inhabited by very savage tribes, who were free from all fear. 7. But the hither part was inhabited by those who had taken possession of the country for the sake of war and plunder.

## LESSON XXV

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**210** Most adverbs are derived from adjective stems:

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
<b>longus</b> ( <b>longo-</b> )	<b>longē</b> , <i>far</i> (132)
<b>miser</b> ( <b>misero-</b> )	<b>miserē</b> , <i>wretchedly</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare sentence 2 above.

<sup>2</sup> Use dative.

<sup>3</sup> **fugō.**

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem -o to -ē.

211	ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
	ācer (ācri-)	ācriter, <i>sharply</i>
	audāx (audāc-)	audacter, <i>boldly</i>
	fortis (forti-)	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
	sapiēns (sapient-)	sapienter, <i>wisely</i>

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the Third Declension by the addition of -ter; if the adjective stem end in -nt, the -t is dropped.

212 Accusative or Ablative neuters singular of Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: e. g., multum, *much*; facile, *easily*; tūtō, *safely*; subitō, *suddenly*; multō, (*by*) *much*; paulō, (*by*) *little*.

213 Adverbs follow the Comparison of the Adjectives from which they are derived :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longē	long-ius	long-issimē
miserē	miser-ius	miser-rimē
ācriter	ācr-ius	ācer-rimē
audacter	audāc-ius	audāc-issimē
fortiter	fort-ius	fort-issimē
sapienter	sapient-ius	sapient-issimē
facile	facil-ius	facil-limē
tūtō	tūt-ius	tūt-issimē

(a) Notice that the Comparative of the Adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the Adjective, and that the Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective in the same way as the Positive of the Adverb from the Positive of the Adjective.

**214** The following common Adverbs are irregular in Comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, well	melius	optimē
male, ill	pēius	pessimē
multum, much	plūs	plūrimum
parum, (too) little	minus	minimē
diū, long	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, often	saepius	saepissimē
	magis, <sup>1</sup> more	māximē

**215** Form and compare adverbs from *laetus, glad;* *levis, light;* *atrōx, savage, cruel.*

**216**

## VOCABULARY

**prōvincia, -ae, f. province.** **posteā, adv. afterward.**  
**impedimentum, -ī, n. hindrance;** **fēliciter, happily, with good drance;** plur. **baggage.** **fortune.**  
**adsum, -esse, -fui, to be present (75).**

**217** 1. Subitō prīmō vēre aderat ex ultimā parte prōvinciae ille lēgātus, quī dē ātrōciōre bellō nūntiāvit. 2. Bene et fēliciter ā militibus nostrīs priōre aestāte decem continuās hōrās dīmicātum erat contrā rēgem Belgārum. 3. Ācerrimē coniugum liberōrumque causā eō tempore Gallī pugnāverant et nēmō audācius quam rēx ille. 4. Hōc vēre Caesar cum multis legiōnibus nōn longē aberat. Itaque et facilius et celerius quam priōre aestāte mīlitēs ad impedimenta properābant. 5. Ibi cōnsul egentīs cūrābat, eōs quī armīs spoliātī erant laetē armāvit, et posteā pontem fēcit<sup>2</sup> paulō altiōrem et septem pedibus longiōrem quam priōrem. 6. Summōs<sup>3</sup> collīs et loca magis idōnea

<sup>1</sup> Some adjectives and adverbs are compared with **magis, māximē:** e. g., **idōneus, magis idōneus, māximē idōneus.**

<sup>2</sup> Perf. indic. of **faciō, to make.**

<sup>3</sup> Compare **208, 4.**

sapienter occupāvit et posterā nocte cum prīmīs hostium ordinibus audācter pūgnāre parāvit. 7. Equī eōrum multō velōciōrēs ācriōrēsque erant quam nostrī et laetē hosti- bus adpropinquābant. 8. Inter omnīs eās gentēs māxima laus est hostīs armīs spoliāre; quae posteā deīs deābusque laetissimē dant. 9. Proximīs annīs Caesar fēlīciter māxi- mam partem Galliae pācāverat; quīntō annō mīlitēs in Britanniam nāvibus tūtō portāvit. 10. Britannī quī ad mare subitō properāverant, āriter ab mīlitibus Rōmānīs fugātī sunt.

**218** 1. In former years the Gauls had fought more bravely than the Germans. 2. But at this time the Germans were much more savage than the Gauls and fought more boldly. 3. When Caesar came near, the Germans quickly concealed their women and children in the neighboring forest. 4. This forest was very large, and it was not easy to march<sup>1</sup> through it very quickly. 5. Caesar stationed his forces not far from the forest and waited for the enemy seven nights. 6. At the farther end of the bridge there were towers many feet higher than the enemy's towers. 7. But the highest towers were on the top of the hill; here Caesar wisely stationed seven cohorts of his best troops. 8. The horsemen of the Germans ap- proached very quickly, but because of the height of the walls, they did not capture the town.

**219**

## READING EXERCISE

*Wars with the Gauls*

Ubi Gallī, gēns nātūrā atrōx, quī moenibus urbīs adpropinquābant, Rōmānōs ad Alliam flūmen māgnā caede superāvērunt—quae clādēs semper erat Rōmānīs trīstissima—, Rōmam etiām occupāvērunt. Nūlla<sup>2</sup> erant

---

<sup>1</sup> To march, iter facere.

<sup>2</sup> nūllus, -a, -um, none, no. Declined like tōtus, 177.

praesidia; nihil potuerunt<sup>1</sup> cives. Cum iuventute, cuius numerus non erat magnus, dux Manlius arcem defendit.<sup>2</sup> Ubi praesidium in summa fame<sup>3</sup> fuit et Manlius pacem a Gallis maximis praemiis emere<sup>4</sup> voluit,<sup>5</sup> subito Camillus hostis atrociter proeliō superavit.

Post multos annos Galli iterum ad urbem accesserant<sup>6</sup> et quartū milliariū<sup>7</sup> trans Anienem<sup>8</sup> flumen castra posuerunt.<sup>9</sup> Contraria eos properabat Titus Quinctius. Ibi Gallus magnō corpore fortissimum Romanorum ad certamen<sup>10</sup> singulare<sup>11</sup> provocavit.<sup>12</sup> Manlius cum barbaro statim decertavit, eum facile occidit<sup>13</sup> spoliavitque torque<sup>14</sup> aureo.<sup>15</sup> Quā dē causā et Manlius et omnēs posterī Torquati appellati sunt. Iterum in Pomptinō agrō<sup>16</sup> Valerius in similī pugnā sacrā alite<sup>17</sup> corvo<sup>18</sup> adiutus<sup>19</sup> spolia<sup>20</sup> cēpit;<sup>21</sup> itaque hic quoque est Corvinus appellatus. Post aliquot<sup>22</sup> annos in Etruriā reliquos Gallos imperator Romanus dēlēvit;<sup>23</sup> ex ea gente quae Rōmam incenderat,<sup>24</sup> nēmō effugiat.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Could (do).

<sup>14</sup> torquis. -is, m. necklace.

<sup>2</sup> Defended.

<sup>15</sup> Golden.

<sup>3</sup> famēs, -is, f. hunger, famine.

<sup>16</sup> Pomptinus ager, a district in Latium.

<sup>4</sup> To buy.

<sup>17</sup> āles, -itis, f. bird.

<sup>5</sup> Wished.

<sup>18</sup> corvus, -ī, m. raven.

<sup>6</sup> Had approached.

<sup>19</sup> Perf. pass. partic. (adiuvō), aided.

<sup>7</sup> Mile-stone.

<sup>20</sup> Spoils, compare spoliō.

<sup>8</sup> Anīo, -ēnis, m. a stream emptying into the Tiber a few miles north of Rome.

<sup>21</sup> Gained.

<sup>9</sup> Pitched.

<sup>22</sup> Some.

<sup>10</sup> Combat.

<sup>23</sup> Destroyed.

<sup>11</sup> singulāris, -e, singular.

<sup>24</sup> Had burned.

<sup>12</sup> Challenged.

<sup>25</sup> Escaped.

<sup>13</sup> Killed.

LESSON XXVI  
FOURTH OR -ū DECLENSION

Stem in u

PARADIGMS

**220**

<b>Manus</b> , f. <i>hand.</i>	<b>Cornū</b> , n. <i>horn.</i>
manu-	cornu-

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	manus	cornū
GEN.	manūs	cornūs
DAT.	manūi, -ū	cornū
ACCU.	manum	cornū
ABL.	manū	cornū

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	manūs	cornua
GEN.	manuum	cornuum
DAT.	manibus	cornibus
ACCU.	manūs	cornua
ABL.	manibus	cornibus

(a) A few nouns, of which **portus**, *harbor*, is the most common, have -**ibus** or -**ibis** in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

**221** The Gender of most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in -us is Masculine. A few, of which **domus**,<sup>1</sup> *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the most common, are Feminine. All ending in -ū are neuter.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Domus** has besides the regular forms of the Fourth Declension the following forms of the Second: Dat. and Abl. Sing. **domō**; Gen. Plur. **domōrum**; Accu. Plur. **domōs**.

## FIFTH OR -ē DECLENSION

### Stem in ē

222

PARADIGMS

**Dīēs**, m. *day.*      **Rēs**, f. *thing.*  
diē-                          rē-

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diēi</b>	<b>rei</b>
DAT.	<b>diēi</b>	<b>reī</b>
ACCU.	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>
ABL.	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>

## PLURAL.

NOM., VOC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>
DAT.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>
ACCU.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>

(a) Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout. Other nouns, if used at all in the plural, are found only in the nominative and accusative.

(b) Notice that the genitive and dative singular have the ending **-ēi** when the stem vowel is preceded by a consonant, but when a vowel precedes, the ending is **-ēi.**

**223** The Gender of nouns of the Fifth Declension is Feminine with the exception of *dies*, *day*, which is usually masculine.

224

## VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēi, f. *line* (of battle). cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing*  
agmen, -inis, n. *line* (of (of an army).  
march). dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*

equitātus, -ūs, m.	<i>cavalry.</i>	rēs, reī, f.	<i>thing, fact.</i>
exercitus, -ūs, m.	<i>army.</i>	senex, senis, <sup>1</sup>	m. <i>old man.</i>
manus, -ūs, f.	<i>hand, band (of soldiers).</i>	sinister, -tra,	-trum, <i>left.</i>
necō, -āre, to kill.		tribūnus, -ī,	m. <i>tribune</i> (a military officer).

225 1. Posterō diē Caesar omnia superiōra loca subitō occupāvit et manūs hostium fugāvit. 2. Secundā hōrā diēi āriter inter equitātum Caesaris et hostium in flūmine pūgnātum est. 3. Iam vulnera Gallōrum et multa et gravia erant; sed prīnceps eōrum senex tribūnum nostrum necāvit et corpus armīs spoliāvit. 4. Hōc diē in dexterā rīpā flūminis erant multa corpora hominum quae armīs spoliāta erant. 5. Dum (*while*) impediēta in proximum collem portantur,<sup>2</sup> subitō exercitus Gallōrum aderat et agmen Rōmānum oppūgnāvit. 6. In sinistrō cornū hostium erat pater rēgis, īsīgnis senex, qui equum in nostrōs āriter incitāvit. 7. Prīmā lūce aciēs hostium in campō ante castra aderat; ad multam noctem āriter dīmicāvērunt hostēs, nam Gallī nōn minus fortēs quam nostri erant. 8. Atrōx erat illa caedēs Gallōrum, qui contrā sinistrum cornū fortiter pūgnāverant, sed septimā hōrā in flūmen ā nostrīs fugātī sunt. 9. Multō dūriōrēs sunt hiemēs in eīs partibus quam in Ītaliā, diēs breviōrēs, noctēs longiōrēs; quā dē causā itinera nostra erant multō difficiiliōra.

226 1. The enemy's army is much larger than Caesar's. 2. Across this river, not far from the mountain, is a large band of Gauls. 3. On the next day the enemy suddenly and boldly attacked the Roman army on the march with all their forces. 4. On the left wing of the enemy's line

<sup>1</sup> Declined in full: **senex, senis, senī, senem, sene;** **senēs, senum, senibus,** etc.

<sup>2</sup> Translate as if imperfect.

of battle were the Gallic cavalry. 5. The leader of the Gauls had in his right hand a sword, in his left a shield. 6. The Gauls fought long and fiercely at the foot of the mountain for seven consecutive hours and a large part of the chief men were killed. 7. This fact was announced to the tribes of farther Gaul by fires and by shouting. 8. Within seven days the tribune got together<sup>1</sup> a large band of new soldiers.

---

## LESSON XXVII

## SECOND or ē CONJUGATION

**227** LEARN the Indicative and the present Infinitive of **habeō**, active and passive (480).

(a) Compare the conjugation of **habeō** carefully with that of **amō** (479). Observe that the only difference is in the stem vowels.

(b) Conjugate **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus**, *to hold*.

**228** 1. **Habēs**, **habēbimus**, **habitus est**. 2. **Tenuímus**, **tenuerit**, **tenēbātis**. 3. **Teneor**, **habuit**, **habēberis**. 4. **Habuerat**, **habita erant**, **tenēbar**. 5. **Tenēbis**, **habuērunt**, **habēre**. 6. **Tenērī**, **habētis**, **tenuistī**.

1. You have, we shall hold, we had had. 2. I have held, you will have, you will have had. 3. It is held, we were held, they had. 4. To be held, to have, to hold. 5. We have had, you were having, you had held.

---

<sup>1</sup> **parō**, -āre;

229

## VOCABULARY

aedificium, -i, n. *building, house* (aedificō, 101).

aqua, -ae, f. *water.*

caelum, -i, n. *heaven, sky.*

captivus, -i, m. *captive.*

contineō (cum + teneō), -ēre, -ui, -tentus, *to hold back, to keep in check.*

hiberna, -ōrum, n. *winter quarters.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. *commander* (imperō, 192).

imperium, -i, n. *command, rule.*

impetus, -ūs, m. *onset, attack.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus,<sup>1</sup> *to remain.*

natiō, -ōnis, f. *nation.*

nūntius, -i, m. *messenger* (nūntiō, 126).

regiō, -ōnis, f. *region, direction.*

Rhēnus, -i, m. *the Rhine.*

sustineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus (sub + teneō), *to sustain, withstand.*

ventus, ī, m. *wind.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see* (in the passive, *to be seen or to seem*).

230 1. Iī qui superiōribus temporibus illās regiōnēs tenēbant, corpora māiōra habēbant. 2. Ubi prīmō vēre Rōmānae legiōnes ex prōvinciā flūminī Rhēnō adpropinquāvērunt, multa animālia vidēbantur cum māgnīs capitibus et cornibus. 3. Mulierēs et senēs eārum exterārum natiōnum labōrem māximum facile semper sustinēre vidēbantur; nunc audācter in proximā rīpā flūminis ad impedimenta manēbant. 4. Inter captivōs in hibernīs imperātōris fuerant obsidēs, māter et pater illiū rēgis, qui prō amīcō populi Rōmāni erat habitus. 5. Ā rēge vēlōx nūntius subitō aderat, qui haec dē cōnsiliō ēius nūntiavit: "Hōc locō impetum cōnsulis sustinēbit et prō summō imperiō dēcertābit." 6. Tertiō diē imperātor cum māgnō exercitū oppidum bene et fēliciter expūgnāvit; haec rēs hostibus celeriter nūntiāta est. 7. Validus erat ventus qui noctem

<sup>1</sup> As the perfect passive participle of maneō is not in use, the future active participle is given. This will be done with all intransitive verbs.

et diem hīs regiōnibus flābat<sup>1</sup> et aqua dē caelō erat multa; itaque imperātor mīlites in castrīs et oppidō continēbat. 8. In oppidīs erat neque frūmentum neque argentum, et incolae, egentēs et tristēs, miserē in parvīs aedificiīs habitābant. 9. Extrēmā aestātē faciliōre et breviōre itinere in ulteriōrem prōvinciae partem imperātor properāvit.

**231** 1. In the most ancient times the Roman armies were much smaller. 2. For many years the power was held by kings who kept the neighboring peoples in check by their foot-soldiers and cavalry. 3. The Romans often fought boldly and successfully with their neighbors and sustained many attacks. 4. The districts which they seized were regarded as<sup>2</sup> Roman land,<sup>3</sup> and the nations whom they subdued as slaves. 5. But the Romans did not always deprive of their<sup>4</sup> lands those whom they had overcome with their arms. 6. In those districts where the winter-quarters of the cavalry were, there was much rain,<sup>5</sup> but at the opening of spring<sup>6</sup> the general hurried with all the army into hither Gaul. 7. At daybreak the enemy prepared to withstand our attack. 8. Their line of battle was very long: on the right wing was their bravest cavalry; on their left also many horsemen were seen.

<sup>1</sup> **flō**, -āre, *to blow*.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 230, 4.

<sup>5</sup> Compare 230, 7.

<sup>3</sup> **ager**.

<sup>6</sup> Compare 230, 2.

## LESSON XXVIII

THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE  
OF QUALITY

232

## EXAMPLES

1. Imperātor bonō animō erat. *The general was of good courage.*
2. Erat flūmen altis rīpis inter Rōmānōs et hostēs. *There was a river with high banks between the Romans and the enemy.*
3. Hic vir erat fortis et māgnae auctōritatis. *This man was brave and very influential.*

(a) Notice that the phrases **bonō animō**, **altis rīpis**, **māgnae auctōritatis**, all express some Quality or Characteristic of the noun with which they are connected. They are therefore adjective expressions, so that in the third sentence the genitive is parallel to the adjective **fortis**.

(b) Notice also that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is modified by an adjective.

233 *Rule.*—Quality may be expressed by the Genitive, but only when the Genitive is modified by an Adjective.<sup>1</sup>

W. 354; B. 203; AG. 215; H. 440, 3.

234 *Rule.*—Quality may also be expressed by the Ablative, but only when the Ablative is modified by an Adjective.<sup>2</sup>

W. 394; B. 224; AG. 251; H. 473, 2.

<sup>1</sup> That is, we may say **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the greatest courage*; but we may not say **vir virtūtis**, but **fortis vir**.

<sup>2</sup> There is often no distinction between the genitive and ablative, but for expressions of time, space, number, and measure, the genitive is used, e. g., **mūrus decem pedum**: while for parts of the body and external qualities the ablative is employed, e. g., **puer magnīs pedibus**, and sentence 2 above.

235

## VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus (ad + iuvō, 132), <i>to help, assist.</i>	Graecus, -a, -um, <i>Greek, Greekian.</i>
<b>Asia</b> , -ae, f. <i>Asia</i> .	iuvenis, -is, m. <i>a youth</i>
<b>Athēniēnsis</b> , -e, <i>Athenian.</i>	(iuventus, 182).
<b>auctōritās</b> , -ātis, f. <i>authority, influence.</i>	Miltiadēs, -is, m. <i>Miltiades.</i>
<b>augeō</b> , -ēre, auxī, <i>auctus, to increase.</i>	necessārius, -a, -um, <i>necessary, needful.</i>
<b>barbarus</b> , -a, -um, <i>barbarous, foreign.</i>	paucī, -ae, -a, <i>few.</i>
<b>Chersonēsus</b> , -ī, f. <i>the Chersonesus.<sup>1</sup></i>	Persicus, -a, -um, <i>Persian.</i>
<b>Eurōpa</b> , -ae, f. <i>Europe.</i>	saepe, <i>often.</i>
<b>fortitūdō</b> , -inis, f. <i>bravery</i> ( <i>fortis</i> , 181, <i>fortiter</i> , 111).	suus, -a, -um, <i>his (her, its, their) own.</i>
	timeō, -ēre, -uī, <i>to fear.</i>

236

1. Erat oīlim inter Athēniēnsīs iuvenis summae fortitudinis et māgnō corpore, cui nōmen erat Miltiadī. 2. Ille imperātor cum māgnā manū et nāvibus multīs impetum barbarōrum in Chersonēsō fēlīciter sustinēbat. 3. Hī barbarī hominēs vidēbantur māgnā virtūte esse māgnumque amōrem patriae habēre. 4. Paucīs diēbus omnem illam regiōnem imperātor occupāverat et incolās armīs privāverat; iam bonōs armābat et rēbus necessāriīs adiuvābat, omnia māgnā cūrā administrābat. 5. Ibi cum exercitū multōs annōs manēbat et erat inter eās natiōnes māgnae auctōritātis. 6. Posteā patriam suam cōnsiliō et virtūte saepe adiuvābat et augēbat. 7. Ab hostibus Atheniēnsium semper timēbātur, ab amicīs suīs et eōrum māgnoperē amābātur. 8. Māximē ēius auctōritātē et cōsiliō adiūtī sunt Atheniēnsēs in Persicō bellō, quō tempore Miltiadēs illum Persicum rēgem superāvit. 9. Nēmō eā victōriā. clārior apud Graecōs erat quam Miltiadēs,

<sup>1</sup> A peninsula of Thrace on the northwest of the Hellespont.

nēmō māiōris auctōritātis; itaque Atheniēnsēs eī multās nāvīs dedērunt. 10. Hīs nāvibus paucās urbēs, quae barbarōs cōpiis iūverant, expūgnāvit. Sed posteā timuit cōpiās rēgis et Athēnās<sup>1</sup> properāvit.

**237** 1. The general is a person of great influence; within ten days he will have an army of seven legions. 2. He has increased his forces, which are already many more than in the former war. 3. They have undergone<sup>2</sup> much labor and are ready to remain the entire winter far from their native country. 4. They have built a seven-foot wall and will gladly fight by reason of their lack of all things needful. 5. The inhabitants of those regions are men of great courage and boldness. 6. The trees are higher than those which we see in our part of Europe, but the houses are very low. 7. The old men are of greater authority, but the young men are feared by the enemy. 8. On the march in Germany they often saw animals with large horns but small bodies.

## LESSON XXIX

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

**238** LEARN the Present System, active and passive, of the Subjunctive of *sum* (485), *amō* (479), and *habeō* (480).

<sup>1</sup> *To Athens.* With names of towns the accusative alone expresses the limit of motion, 425.

<sup>2</sup> *sustineō.*

(a) Notice carefully the following facts:

(1) That the personal endings of the Subjunctive are the same as those of the Indicative.

(2) But that in the present tense the stem **amā-** of the First Conjugation is changed to **amē-**, and that the stem **habē-** of the Second Conjugation becomes **habea-**.

(3) And that the tense sign of the Imperfect is **-re-**. Compare the tense sign of the Imperfect Indicative.

#### VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

239

#### EXAMPLES

1. <b>Hunc laudēmus.</b>	<i>Let us praise this man.</i>
2. <b>Hodiē nē pūgnēmus.</b>	<i>Let us not fight to-day.</i>
3. <b>Haec dōna habeat.</b>	<i>Let him have these gifts.</i>
4. <b>Nē haec dōna habeat.</b>	<i>Let him not have these gifts.</i>

(a) Notice that the Subjunctives in these sentences express the Will of the speaker that something shall or shall not be done. This subjunctive that expresses the will is called the *Volitive Subjunctive* (*volō*, *to will*). In the third person it is sometimes called also the *Jussive Subjunctive*<sup>1</sup> (*iubeō*, *to order*).

240     *Rule.*—The Volitive Subjunctive states the action as willed.

W. 481–482; B. 273–275; AG. 266; H. 559.

241

#### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

#### EXAMPLES

1. <b>Haec habeāmus.</b>	<i>May we have this.</i>
2. <b>Nē haec habeat.</b>	<i>May he not have this.</i>

<sup>1</sup> It should be observed that only the First and Third persons of the Present Subjunctive are ordinarily used in this construction. If we wish to translate into Latin “Praise him,” we usually use the imperative, **hunc laudā**, 355; for the negative addressed to the second person, “Do not praise him,” the Latin employs a circumlocution which will be given later (356).

3. **Utinam fortis esset.** *Would that he were brave.*  
 4. **Utinam nē hostēs essent.** *Would that they were not enemies.*

(a) Notice that here the subjunctives express the Wish or Desire of the speaker that something may or may not be done. This subjunctive is called the *Optative Subjunctive* (*optō*, to wish, desire). Compare with the Volitive Subjunctive.

(b) Notice also that the Present tense refers to Future, the Imperfect to Present time.

(c) In the Optative Subjunctive all three persons may be used. Compare the Volitive Subjunctive.

(d) **Utinam** is often used with the Present, regularly with the Imperfect, of the Optative Subjunctive.

**242 Rule.**—The Optative Subjunctive states the action as a wish or desire.

W. 484; B. 279; AG. 267; H. 558.

**243** 1. Haec laudēmus; frātrem suum laudet. 2. Haec habeāmus; nē pūgnent. 3. Utinam fortēs essētis; utinam laudārentur. 4. Dūcem laudētis; utinam nē pūgnārētis. 5. Nē haec habeat; bonī sīmus.

**244** 1. Let them be slaves; may they be free. 2. Would that you were being praised; let us praise them. 3. Would that we were not fighting against them; let him have the books. 4. May we have the gifts; let us not be slaves.

**245**

#### VOCABULARY

<i>fidēs</i> , -eī, f. <i>faith, pledge.</i>	<i>memoria</i> , -ae, f. <i>memory.</i>
<i>hodiē</i> ( <i>hōc</i> + <i>diē</i> ), adv. <i>to-day.</i>	<i>moveō</i> , -ēre, <i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtus</i> , <i>to move;</i> <i>signa movēre</i> , <i>to advance;</i> <i>castra movēre</i> , <i>to break camp.</i>
<i>māiores</i> , -um, m. <i>elders, fore-fathers.</i>	

nē, adv. and conj. <i>not.</i>	tamen, adv. <i>still, nevertheless.</i>
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus ( <i>prō</i> + <i>habeō</i> ), <i>to hinder, prevent, keep from.</i>	tēlum, -i, n. <i>weapon, spear, javelin.</i> (Compare <i>hasta, arma</i> , 111.)
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, <sup>1</sup> f. <i>state.</i>	tum, adv. <i>then, at that time.</i>
sī, conj. <i>if.</i>	utinam, adv., used with optative subjunctive.
sīgnūm, -i, n. <i>signal, standard.</i>	vix, adv. <i>hardly, with difficulty.</i>
spēs, -ei, f. <i>hope.</i>	

**246** 1. Nōn sine spē, mīlitēs, sīmus; nē hodiē castra moveāmus. 2. Vidēmus, iuvenēs, aciem equitātumque hostium; nē timeāmus impetum eōrum. 3. Sed sī fortissimē cum eīs pūgnābimus, clāra vīctōria nostra erit. Prohibeāmus hostis ab aquā et ā rēbus necessāriis. 4. Ubi sīgnūm ab imperātōre dabitur, signa moveāmus et castra quam<sup>2</sup> celerrimē oppūgnēmus. 5. Bona spēs vīctōriæ nostrīs mīlitibus est. Sī eōs fugābimus, nostra auctōritās apud omnīs nātiōnēs māxima erit. 6. Senēs et mulierēs omnēs cum suīs impedimentīs in castra properent quae nōn longē ab hāc rīpā absunt. Difficillimē rīpis est hōc flūmen; itaque barbarī castrīs vix adpropinquābunt. 7. Utinam hodiē eum animū habērēmus quem māiōrēs nostri paucīs ante annīs nōn longē ab hīs locīs habuērunt. 8. Semper, cīvēs, memoriā teneātis ea quae māiōrēs vestrī prō rē pūblicā fēcērunt.<sup>3</sup> 9. Utinam nē impetum Gallōrum timērētis. Sī māiōra corpora et longiōra tēla habent, nōn fortiorēs sunt. 10. Sī virtūtem, fidem, fortitūdinēque māiōrum memoriā tenēbitis, audācius impetum hostium sustinēbitis.

<sup>1</sup> Each part is declined separately: Dat. **reī pūblicae**: Acc. **rem pūblicam**, etc.

<sup>2</sup> quam with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs means *as possible.*

<sup>3</sup> Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to do.*

**247** 1. Would that you remembered to-day all the things which our ancestors did<sup>1</sup> for our native land. 2. They freed their state from the fear of the barbarians, who had come against it with a great force. 3. The leader who held the command was a man of great foresight.<sup>2</sup> Would that he were present to-day. 4. Let us not remain longer in this place, but break camp to-day and hurry into the neighboring mountains. 5. The enemy's commander is a man of the greatest bravery and influence; still our men have good hope of victory. 6. If we shall keep the enemy away from our supplies, our allies will soon aid us. 7. May we soon advance a long distance from this camp; then we shall not be kept from water and supplies. 8. May Caesar's influence increase the bravery of his own auxiliary troops.

---

## LESSON XXX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT  
SENTENCES

## PURPOSE CLAUSES

**248**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Pūgnant** (*pūgnāvērunt*) *They are fighting (have fought) to be free.*  
*ut liberi sint.*
2. **Pūgnant** (*pūgnāvērunt*) *They are fighting (have fought) that they may not be slaves.*  
*nē servi sint.*

---

<sup>1</sup> 246, 8.<sup>2</sup> cōnsilium.

3. **Pūgnābunt ut liberi sint.** *They will fight to be free.*  
 4. **Pūgnābunt nē servī sint.** *They will fight that they may not be slaves.*  
 5. **Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt)  
ut liberi essent.** *They were fighting (fought) to be free.*  
 6. **Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt)  
nē servī essent.** *They were fighting (fought) that they might not be slaves.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Purpose of the leading verb; also that the conjunction **ut** introduces positive clauses, **nē** negative.

(b) Notice further that when the point of view of the leading verb is Present<sup>1</sup> or Future, the Present Subjunctive<sup>2</sup> follows; when the point of view is Past,<sup>3</sup> the Imperfect Subjunctive is used in the dependent clause.

(c) In a dependent clause the subjunctive is said to follow the tense of the principal verb, which fixes the point of view. This relation is called the *Sequence of Tenses*.

**249 Rule.—The Subjunctive is used with *ut, that, nē, that not*, to express Purpose.**

W. 506; B. 282; AG. 317; H. 568.

<sup>1</sup> The point of view of the definite perfect, in English, *I have fought*, is the same as that of the present tense; but that of the indefinite, in English, *I fought*, is past like the imperfect.

<sup>2</sup> The student should remember that the present subjunctive in independent sentences (239, 241) may express future time, so that its use in clauses depending on a future verb is natural. As it also may have a present meaning, it does double duty.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., imperfect or indefinite perfect.

250

## RESULT CLAUSES

## EXAMPLES

1. **Nostrī tam fortiter pūg-** *Our soldiers are fighting*  
**nānt (pūgnāvērunt) ut** *(have fought) so bravely*  
**hostis fugent.** *that they are putting the*  
*enemy to flight.*

2. **Nostrī tam fortiter pūg-** *Our men were fighting*  
**nābant (pūgnāvērunt)** *(fought) so bravely that*  
**ut nōn superārentur.** *they were not conquered.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Result of the action of the leading verb; also that **ut** introduces positive results, **ut nōn** negative.

(b) Compare these with purpose clauses above and notice that **nē** is used only with negative purpose, **ut nōn** only with negative result clauses; notice also that in result clauses, as in those of purpose, the present tense follows the present point of view, the imperfect the past.

251 **Rule.**—The Subjunctive is used with **ut, that, ut nōn, that not,** to express Result.

W. 519; B. 284; AG. 319; H. 570.

252 **celeritās, -ātis, f. speed.** *porta, -ae, f. a gate.*  
**cūr, adv. why?** *portus, -ūs, m. harbor.*  
**enim, conj. for (nam, 138).** *postquam, conj. after.<sup>2</sup>*  
**mille,<sup>1</sup> adj. thousand.** *statim, adv. immediately.*  
**multitūdō, -inis, f. crowd.** *tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great,*  
**Nūma, -ae, m. Numa.** *such.*  
**ōrō, -āre, to ask, beg.** *terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus,*  
**passus, -ūs, m. pace (about** *to frighten.*  
*five feet).* **ut, conj. that.**

<sup>1</sup> **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. The plural is a neuter noun and is declined: Nom. Acc. Voc. **mīlia**, Gen. **mīlium**, Dat. Abl. **mīlibus**.

<sup>2</sup> Used with the perfect indicative.

**253** 1. Cūr senēs iuvenēsque ex portīs oppidī tantā celeritāte adpropinquābant? 2. Hibernīs nostrīs adpropinquābant ut ūrārent nē in numerō hostiū habērentur. 3. Postquam sīgnūm datum est, nostrī castra statim mōvērunt; barbarī ita terrēbantur ut in oppidō nōn continērentur. 4. Omnēs qui eum locū habitābant, nē frūmentō prohibērentur, māgnā celeritāte decem mīlia passuum<sup>1</sup> in fīnīs sociōrum properābant. 5. Proximō diē māgna multitūdō Gallōrum locū castrīs magis idōneūm occupāvit; tum Caesar cum parte equitātūs properāvit ut hunc locū oppūgnāret. 6. Gallī in memoriā tenēbant omnia quae māiōrēs fēcērunt ut patria libera esset; itaque dūx eōrum māgnam spēm victōriāe habuit. 7. Utinam tāntam fidem habērēmus ut in hāc rē publicā nēmō malus esset. 8. Māiōrem partem cōpiārum continēbat imperātor in hibernīs, quae septem mīlia passuum ab eō oppidō aberant sed proxima portuī. 9. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, cōnsul omnia auxilia in sinistrō, sociōs in dextrō cornū tantā celeritāte conlocāvit, ut hostēs statim terrērentur.

**254** 1. The Gauls often fought that they might not be deprived of their towns and lands. 2. The Romans built their city on hills in order that it might not be suddenly attacked by the enemy. 3. The city was small in the time of Romulus, the first king, but it was afterward enlarged so that it was the greatest city in Italy. 4. The Romans were men of such bravery and courage that they were not often conquered by the enemy. 5. Romulus, in order that he might increase the number of citizens, gave citizenship to many from the neighboring peoples. 6. The next king, whose name was Numa, was very different from Romulus (dative); for he liked peace more than war. 7. Why did consuls, rather than<sup>2</sup> kings, hold the power afterward?

---

<sup>1</sup> mīlle passūs, a Roman *mile*, about 5,000 feet.

<sup>2</sup> prō.

## READING EXERCISE

*The Persian Wars*

Posterō annō Dārēus, rēx Persārum, lēgātōs in Graeciam mīsit,<sup>1</sup> quī rēgis nōmine terram et aquam ā cīvitātibus Graeciae postulābant; simulque aliī lēgātī maritimās urbēs Āsiae nāvīs longās parāre iubēbant.<sup>2</sup> Brevī tempore hae urbēs nāvīs, quās rēx eīs imperāverat,<sup>3</sup> parāvērunt. Lēgātīs, quī in Graeciam missī sunt,<sup>4</sup> ā multīs cīvitātibus data sunt omnia quae rēx postulāverat; sed contrā eās quae terram et aquam nōn dederant, Dārēus māximō exercitū pūgnāre parāvit. Itaque imperātōrēs ēius, Dātis et Artaphernēs, plūrimās nāvīs adversus<sup>5</sup> Eretriam<sup>6</sup> et Athēnās dūxērunt, quās urbēs Dārēus expūgnāre atque incolās in servitūtem redigere<sup>7</sup> māximē cupīvit.<sup>8</sup> Eretria sex<sup>9</sup> diēs āb Persīs frustrā<sup>10</sup> oppūgnābatur; sed septimō diē duo cīvēs urbem hostibus prōdidērunt,<sup>11</sup> postquam multī utrimque<sup>12</sup> occisi sunt.<sup>13</sup> Hostēs omnia vastāvērunt atque incolās, ut<sup>14</sup> Dārēus imperāverat, in servitūtem redēgērunt.<sup>15</sup> Post paucōs diēs ad Atticam nāvigāvērunt hostēs ut Athēniēnsīs quoque superārent. In campum Marathōnium,<sup>16</sup> quī locus totius Atticae opportūnissimus<sup>17</sup> erat equitibus, cōpiās ē nāvibus ēdūxērunt.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. act. of **mittō**, *to send*.

<sup>2</sup> **iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, *iussus*, *to order*.

<sup>3</sup> See 192.

<sup>4</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of **mittō**.

<sup>5</sup> Prep. with the accu., *against*; compare **contrā**.

<sup>6</sup> A city in Euboea.

<sup>14</sup> *As.*

<sup>7</sup> *To reduce.*

<sup>15</sup> Perf. ind. act. of **redigere**.

<sup>8</sup> Perf. ind. act. of **cupiō**, *to wish*.

<sup>16</sup> *Of Marathon.*

<sup>9</sup> *Six.*

<sup>17</sup> **opportūnus**, *suited*.

<sup>10</sup> Adv., *in vain*.

<sup>18</sup> Perf. indic. act. of

<sup>11</sup> Perf. indic. act. of **prōdō**, *to betray*.

**ēdūcō**, *to lead out*,

<sup>12</sup> Adv., *on both sides*.

*to disembark*.

<sup>13</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of **occidō**, *to kill*.

## LESSON XXXI

## THIRD OR ē CONJUGATION

## PRESENT SYSTEM

**256** LEARN the Present System of **regō**, 481, in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation end in -ē (ī). Compare this with the stems of the First and Second Conjugations.

(b) Notice also that the Future Indicative is not formed by the tense sign -bī- (-bē) as in **amābō** and **habēbō**, but that the vowel is -a in the First Person Singular and -e in the other persons. Compare also the formation of the Present Subjunctive **regam** with **amem** and **habeam**.

**257** Conjugate the following: **dīcō**, *to say*; **dūcō**, *to lead*; **mittō**, *to send*.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

**258**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Dūcī persuādent** (**persuā-sērunt**) **ut auxilium mit-tat.** *They persuade (have persuaded) the leader to send help.*
2. **Lēgātīs imperābit** **ut bellum gerant.** *He will order his lieutenants to carry on the war.*
3. **Eum ōrābant** (**ōrāvērunt**) **nē oppidum oppūgnāret.** *They were asking (asked) him not to attack the town.*

(a) Notice that in each sentence the dependent clause is a direct object of the verb, that is, that the clause is a substantive; moreover, that each dependent clause expresses also the purpose of the subject of the leading

verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Purpose*<sup>1</sup> and are used with verbs whose action looks toward the future.

(b) Notice further that the sequence of Tenses is the same as in simple Purpose Clauses, 248, that is, that the Present Subjunctive follows the present point of view, the Imperfect the past.

259     *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used after verbs whose action looks toward the future—that is, verbs of Will or Aim.

W. 511; B. 295; AG. 331; H. 564 ff.

## 260

## VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m. <i>arri-</i>	Épirus, -ī, f. <i>Epirus</i> (a dis-
<i>val.</i>	trict of Northwestern
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	Greece).
(ā + mittō), <i>to lose.</i>	gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, <i>to</i>
Appius, -ī, m. <i>Appius.</i>	<i>carry on, perform.</i>
atque, āc, <sup>2</sup> conj. <i>and.</i>	iterum, adv. <i>again.</i>
Cineas, -ae, <sup>3</sup> m. <i>Cineas.</i>	lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. <i>embassy</i>
classis, -is, f. <i>fleet.</i>	(lēgātus, 138).
Claudius, -ī, m. <i>Claudius.</i>	mittō, -ere, misi, missus, <i>to</i>
committō, -ere, -misi, -missus	<i>send.</i>
(cum + mittō), <i>to engage</i>	modus, -ī, m. <i>manner.</i>
(in battle).	persuādeō, -ere, -suāsi, -suā-
dīcō, -ere, dīxi, dictus, <i>to</i>	sūrus, <i>to persuade</i> (with
<i>say.</i>	dat. of the person).

<sup>1</sup> While Substantive Clauses of Purpose are generally used as objects of the leading verb, they are occasionally employed as subjects of Passive Verbs, e. g., *ut bellum gerant lēgātīs imperātum est, That they should carry on the war was the command to the lieutenants.*

<sup>2</sup> **atque** is used before vowels and consonants, **āc** only before consonants.

<sup>3</sup> A Greek name declined like any noun of the First Declension except in the nominative.

**petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī),<sup>1</sup> petī-** **renūntiō, -āre** (**re + nūntiō,**  
**tus, to seek, ask.** **126), to carry back**  
**prīmum, adv. first, for the** **word.**  
**first time.** **Tarentinus, -ī, m. a citizen**  
**pūgna, -ae, f. battle (pūgnō,** **of Tarentum (a city in**  
**101).** **Southern Italy).**  
**Pyrrhus, -ī, m. Pyrrhus (King of Epirus).**

**261** 1. Tarentīnī ōrābant Rōmānōs, nē portum suum cum  
 nāvibus intrārent; sed Rōmānī māgnam classem mīsē-  
 runt. 2. Itaque Tarentīnī per lēgātiōnem petunt ā  
 Pyrrhō, Ēpīrī rēge, ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs mittat.  
 3. Eī persuāsērunt ut statim māgnō exercitū adiuvāret;  
 tum prīmum Rōmānī cum hoste exterō dīmicāvērunt.  
 4. Hī prīmā pūgnā, quam post adventum Pyrrhī cum eō  
 commīsērunt, ita terrēbantur ut facile superāret rēx  
 ille. 5. Tantam multitūdinem hominum hōc in proe-  
 liō āmīsit Pyrrhus ut diceret, “Sī iterum hōc modō Rō-  
 mānōs superāverō, bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterō.”<sup>2</sup>  
 6. Lēgātī, quī dē captīvīs missī sunt, summō honōre  
 ab Pyrrhō habēbantur; captīvōs statim Rōmam<sup>3</sup> mīsit.  
 7. Nam ille omnia faciēbat<sup>4</sup> nē grāvis Rōmānīs Tarentī-  
 nīsque vidērētur. 8. Posteā Pyrrhus lēgātum, Cīneam  
 nōmine, ad urbem Rōmam mīsit, eō cōnsiliō, ut pāx cum  
 Rōmānīs esset; multum argentum portābat ut dōnīs  
 persuādēret Rōmānīs. 9. Sed Appius Claudius, vir  
 clārissimus, cīvibus persuāsit nē cum rēge pācem  
 cōfirmārent. 10. Itaque Cīneas Pyrrhō renūntiāvit:  
 “Urbs Rōma templum, patria rēgum, hominēs rēgēs esse  
 videntur.”

**262** 1. An embassy is sent by the Romans to ask Pyrrhus  
 to liberate the prisoners. 2. Pyrrhus ordered the Roman

<sup>1</sup> A number of verbs have two forms in the perfect active, e. g., **petīvī** or **petīī.** <sup>2</sup> Future indic. of **possum**, *to be able.*

<sup>3</sup> Compare **236, 10.**

<sup>4</sup> *Did.*

prisoners to be liberated and sent to the city. 3. You will not persuade the Romans to establish peace, if you remain in Italy. 4. In the first battle in which he engaged after his arrival, Pyrrhus was victorious,<sup>1</sup> but he lost many men. 5. He said, "If I fight again in this way, I shall no longer have an army." 6. I hope that (utinam) there will not be a victory of this sort again. 7. They persuaded Pyrrhus not to fight again on that day. 8. Cineas captured more cities by eloquence<sup>2</sup> than by arms. 9. The chief man of the embassy asked the Romans to make peace with the king, but Appius persuaded them to carry on the war much longer.

---

## LESSON XXXII

## THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued)

## PERFECT SYSTEM

**263** LEARN the Perfect System of *regō*, 481, in the Indicative,<sup>3</sup> and review the Perfect System in the Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

**264** VOCABULARY

<i>Africa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Africa</i> .	<i>cōgō</i> , -ere, <i>coēgi</i> , <i>coāctus</i>
<i>agō</i> , -ere, <i>ēgi</i> , <i>āetus</i> , <i>to</i>	( <i>cum</i> + <i>agō</i> ), <i>to drive together, to compel</i> .
<i>Carthāginiēnsis</i> , -e, <i>Cartha-</i>	<i>condiciō</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>condition, terms</i> .

---

<sup>1</sup> *vīctor*.<sup>2</sup> *vōce*.<sup>3</sup> The perfect and pluperfect Subjunctives and the other moods will be learned later.<sup>4</sup> *grātiās agere*, *to pay thanks, to thank*. Compare *grātiam habēre*, *to feel grateful*.

<b>contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,</b>	<i>quod, conj. because.</i>
<i>to exert one's self, hasten.</i>	
<b>deinde,<sup>1</sup> adv. then, second-</b>	<b>reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (re + dō) to return.</b>
<i>ly.</i>	
<b>dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, to lead (dūx, 144).</b>	<b>Rēgulus, -ī, m. <i>Regulus</i> (a Roman general).</b>
<b>indignus, -a, -um, unworthy, shameful.</b>	<b>rūrsus, adv. again.</b>
<b>ingēns, -tis, huge.</b>	<b>senātus, -ūs, m. senate.</b>
<b>Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Lacea- daemonician.</b>	<b>sententia, -ae, f. opinion.</b>
<b>peritus, -a, -um, skilled, ex- periented.</b>	<b>tot (indeclinable), so many.</b>
	<b>trādūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, to lead across (trāns + dūcō).</b>
	<b>ūnus, -a, -um,<sup>2</sup> one, a single.</b>

**265** 1. Rēgulus, pīnceps Rōmānōrum, exercitum in Africam trādūxit ut ibi bellum gereret. 2. Ille erat vir summae virtūtis; māgnā spē vīctōriae contrā hostīs contendit. 3. Mox multīs pūgnis Carthāginiēnsīs ita superāvit ut pācem petere cōgerentur. Senātus Rōmānus illī grātiās ēgit quod rēs in Africā bene gesserat. 4. Rēgulus dūrisimās condīcōnēs dabat; deinde Carthāginiēnsēs ā Lace- daemoniīs petiērunt ut imperātōrem bellī perītissimum mitterent. 5. Ab eō Rōmānī ingenti clāde superātī sunt et māgnā partem exercitūs āmīsērunt. Inter captīvōs erat Rēgulus. 6. Sed proximō annō bellum fēliciter rūrsus gerēbant Rōmānī et post multa mala<sup>3</sup> hostēs Rēgulum captīvum Rōmam<sup>4</sup> mittere cōgerentur, ut per eum pācem peterent. 7. Postquam eum in senātūm dūxērunt Rōmānī, eiī imperāvērunt ut sententiam dē pāce et captīvīs Rōmānīs diceret. 8. Ille ḥrābat nē tot mīlia captīvōrum propter ūnum senem et paucōs Rōmānōs redderent ut

<sup>1</sup> Always a dissyllable.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive sing. ūnīus, dat. sing. ūnī; otherwise declined like bonus. Compare tōtus, 177.

<sup>3</sup> mala: neut. plur. used as a substantive.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 236, 10.

indigna pāx cum hostibus esset. 9. Hāc sententiā mōtī sunt Rōmānī ut bellum multō ācrius administrārent; sed Rēgulus ā Carthāginiēnsibus indignissimō modō est necātus.

266 1. The Senate ordered Regulus to lead an army across into Africa. 2. Regulus led an army across into Africa with the design of carrying on war with the Carthaginians. 3. In what manner did Regulus carry on the war after his arrival? 4. Regulus was a general experienced in war and he quickly compelled the Carthaginians to sue for peace. 5. The Senate thanked Regulus, and then asked him to give<sup>1</sup> his opinion with regard to the conditions of peace. 6. He said: "It is not best to return the prisoners, but to send me back to Africa again." 7. Regulus was a man of great patriotism and great courage; the manner of his death was most sad. 8. Regulus was held in the highest honor by the Romans on account of his many victories and his great spirit.

---

### LESSON XXXIII

#### THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō)

267 LEARN the conjugation of **capiō**, 482, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, and in the Present Subjunctive the -i of the

---

<sup>1</sup> dīcō.

stem is retained whenever it is followed by another vowel.

## 268

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

1. **Efficit (effēcit) ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He secures (has secured) the result that the allies report everything to the leader, or He succeeds (has succeeded) in having the allies, etc.*
2. **Efficiet ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He will succeed in having, etc.*
3. **Impetrābat (impetrāvit) ab eō ut castra nōn mōvēret.** *He was obtaining (obtained) from him the result that he did not break camp.*

(a) Compare these clauses with Substantive Clauses of Purpose (258), and notice that these also bear the relation of substantives to leading verbs as well as express the result actually obtained in each case. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Result* and are used with verbs expressing the accomplishment of a result.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Notice that the sequence of tenses is the same as in all other Result or Purpose Clauses.

## 269

**Rule.—Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.**

W. 521-526; B. 297; AG. 332; H. 571.

<sup>1</sup> A Substantive Clause of Result may also be the Subject of the leading verb, e. g., **impetrātum est ut omnia renūntiārentur.** *The result obtained was that everything was reported.*

270

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUÍN, that not

## EXAMPLES

1. **Nōn** dubitō quīn sociī haec renūntient. *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. **Nōn** dubitābo quīn sociī haec renūntient. *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. **Nōn** erat dubium quīn sociī haec renūntiārent. *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. **Nōn** dēterrēbantur hostēs quīn in fīni sociōrum contenderent. *The enemy were not deterred from hurrying into the lands of the allies.*

271

**Rule.**—Substantive clauses introduced by *quīn* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of Doubting, Hindering, and the like.

W. 575–579; B. 298; AG. 332, *g*; H. 595–596.

272

## VOCABULARY

clam, adv. <i>secretly.</i>	dēnique, adv. <i>finally.</i>
Cunctātor, -ōris, m. <i>The De-layer</i> (a name applied to Fabius).	dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -itus (dē + terreō, 252), <i>to frighten away, deter.</i>
cupiō, -ere, -ivī (-ii), -itus, <i>to desire.</i>	dubitō, -āre, <i>to doubt.</i>
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (dē + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead away.</i>	efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (ē + faciō), <i>to accomplish, bring about.</i>
dēfendō, -ere, -dī, dēfēnsus, <i>to defend.</i>	Fabius, -ī, m. <i>Fabius.</i>
	faciō, -ere, fēci, factus, <sup>1</sup> <i>to do, make.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The irregular passive will be given later; but compounds of faciō which like efficiō change a to i have a regular passive, efficior, etc.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, to flee.

Hannibal, -alis, m. Hannibal.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est (impersonal), it is permitted.

quīn, conj. but that, from.

ratiō, -ōnis, f. way, reason.

Saguntum, -ī, n. Saguntum (a city in Spain).

tergum, -ī, n. back.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), to hand over, betray.

uter, utra, utrum, which of two?<sup>1</sup>

**273** 1. Deinde postquam Saguntum ā Carthāginiēnsibus armīs captum est, statim lēgātiō in Africam missa est, cūius prīnceps erat Fabius. 2. Fabius effēcit ut in Africam mitterētur. “Hīc,” dīxit senātuī Carthāginiēnsium, “bellum et pācem portō. Utrum vōbīs<sup>2</sup> optimum vidētur, habēre licet.” 3. Nōn dubitābat Fabius hōc bellō quīn novam bellī ratiōnem capere melius esset. 4. Itaque morā rem pūblicam dēfendit: sī hostēs terga dabant atque fugiēbant, ad eōs contendit; sī pūgnāre cupiēbant, Fabius agmen dēdūxit. 5. Hōc modō effēcit ut Cunctatōris nōmen caperet et summus perītissimusque dūx laudārētur. 6. Nōn dubium erat quīn Fabius rem pūblicam morā servāret. 7. Tamen dūx Carthāginiēnsium nōn dēterrēbātur quīn bellum māgnā cum virtūte celeritāteque gereret. 8. Tarentīni iuvenēs, ut urbem Carthāginiēnsibus trāderent, ad Hannibalem contendērunt et eum dē cōnsiliō suō certiōrem fēcērunt.<sup>3</sup> 9. Hannibal iuvenibus persuāsit ut pecora Carthāginiēnsium, quae in agrīs erant, ad urbem agerent. 10. Id saepe fēcērunt; dēnique Hannibal mīlitēsque ēius cum iuvenibus portīs clam adpropinquāvērunt atque urbem intrābant.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive sing. in all genders **utrīus**; dat. sing. **utrī**. Compare the demonstrative pronouns (**123, 135**).

<sup>2</sup> To you.

<sup>3</sup> **eum certiōrem facere**, to inform him.

274 1. There was no doubt that Fabius was managing affairs well by his policy of delay.<sup>1</sup> 2. The soldiers were not deterred by fear of the enemy from hastening in line of battle to the town. 3. He made the enemy turn their backs and flee in great haste. 4. Hannibal ordered the young men to drive the flocks to the city-gates. 5. Finally Hannibal succeeded in<sup>2</sup> entering the city secretly with his soldiers. 6. The Carthaginians desired to make war, because they had no doubt that Hannibal was a more skilful general than Fabius. 7. "Again a victory of this sort, and I shall have made an end of the war." 8. "The Romans also have a general skilled in war. We have lost the city in the same<sup>3</sup> way in which we took it."

---

## LESSON XXXIV

### FOURTH OR -ī CONJUGATION

275 LEARN the conjugation of *audiō*, 483, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation ends with -ī, and compare this with the stems of the other Conjugations. Observe that verbs like *capiō*, 483, have a number of forms similar to those of the Fourth Conjugation, but that the stem vowels differ, as is shown by the Present Infinitives.

(b) Notice that the Tense Sign of the Future Indica-

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate simply, *by delay*.

<sup>2</sup> *efficere ut.*

<sup>3</sup> *eōdem.*

tive in verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations is -e- (-a-), but in verbs of the First and Second -bi- (-be-).

## 276

## VOCABULARY

<i>anteā</i> , adv. <i>before.</i>	<i>pellō</i> , -ere, <i>pepuli</i> , <i>pulsus</i> , <i>to drive.</i>
<i>Antiochus</i> , -ī, m. <i>Antiochus</i> .	<i>relinquō</i> , -ere, <i>-līqui</i> , <i>-lictus</i> , <i>to leave behind.</i>
<i>cōgnōscō</i> , -ere, <i>-nōvī</i> , <i>-nitus</i> , <i>to find out, to become acquainted with.</i>	<i>sciō</i> , <i>scire</i> , <i>scivī</i> , <i>scitus</i> , <i>to know (a fact).</i>
<i>dēdō</i> , -ere, <i>-didi</i> , <i>-ditus</i> ( <i>dē</i> + <i>dō</i> ), <i>to give up.</i>	<i>simul</i> , adv. <i>at the same time.</i>
<i>Hispānia</i> , -ae, f. <i>Spain.</i>	<i>sub</i> , prep. <i>with accu. and abl. under.<sup>2</sup></i>
<i>impediō</i> , -ire, <i>-ivī</i> (-ii), <i>-itus</i> , <i>to impede, hinder.</i>	<i>Syria</i> , -ae, f. <i>Syria.</i>
<i>iniūria</i> , -ae, f. <i>injury, wrong.</i>	<i>veniō</i> , -ire, <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventūrus</i> , <i>to come.</i>
<i>opera</i> , -ae, f. <i>labor.</i> <sup>1</sup>	

277 1. Hannibal puer ā patre petīvit ut cum exercitū Carthāginiēnsī in Hispāniā venīre licēret. 2. "Nōn prohibēbō," dīxit pater, "quīn ad castra mea veniās, sī fidem quam postulō dederis." 3. Hannibal, pūgnæ avidissimus, equitibus imperāvit ut dē adventū hostium cōgnōcerent. 4. Nōn dubitāvit quīn eōs facile fugāret; sed neque numerum hostium neque ratiōnem pūgnæ scivit. 5. Agmen hostium tantā celeritāte sub montem vēnit ut Hannibal neque iter impediret neque locum castris idōneum caperet. 6. Posterō diē ab Rōmānīs in aciē diū fēliciterque pūgnātum est ut hostēs pellerentur. 7. Lēgātī ad urbem vēnērunt ut senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent simulque peterent ut captīvī redderentur. 8. Impetrā-

<sup>1</sup> *operam dare*, *to give attention to, to take pains.*

<sup>2</sup> **sub** with the accusative denotes motion to a place, **sub monte**, *to the foot of the mountain*; with the ablative rest in a place, **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain*. Compare **in**.

vērunt lēgātī ut captīvī et obsidēs quōs Rōmānīs dederant sine morā redderentur. 9. Postquam Hannibal in ītaliā rēs bene gessit, in Africam nāvigāvit ut patriam quoque dēfenderet hostisque ex eā pelleret. 10. Posteā Hannibal Africam clam reliquit et ad rēgem Antiochum in Syriam fūgit, nē Rōmānīs dēderētur. 11. Eīs partibus et sub eō caelō fuit eōdem<sup>1</sup> animō, quō anteā, ac semper operam dedit, ut Rōmānīs iniūriam faceret.

**278** 1. Hannibal came into Italy in order that he might bring injury upon the Roman nation. 2. The Romans could<sup>2</sup> not keep Hannibal from leading his army across into Italy. 3. They could<sup>2</sup> not hinder his approach;<sup>3</sup> but after he came to the foot of the mountains which are not far from Rome, they sent Fabius against him with the greatest speed. 4. No one doubted that Hannibal was a greater general than Fabius; but the latter kept him from besieging the city. 5. He always made an effort to become acquainted with the enemy's method of warfare. 6. After Hannibal left Africa, he came to the king of Syria, where he remained many years. 7. Ambassadors came, who asked that their general might be allowed to leave Italy with his wounded.

### LESSON XXXV

#### REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**279** REVIEW the Indicative, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of the four conjugations (479–483).

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of **īdem**, *the same*.

<sup>2</sup> **poterant.**

<sup>3</sup> **iter.**

## 280

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Equitēs praemittit qui** *He sends forward horsemen*  
*videant.* *to see (who are to see).*
2. **Equitēs praemisit quō celerius imperātor haec audiret.** *He sent horsemen forward*  
*that the general might hear this the quicker.*

(a) Notice that in the first sentence the Relative **qui** introduces the Purpose Clause and is equivalent to **ut ei**. A Relative rather than **ut** is used to introduce a Purpose Clause when the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the antecedent clause.

(b) Notice that in the second sentence the Purpose Clause contains a comparative, **celerius**; **quō** is the ablative case of the relative and is equivalent to **ut eō**, the Ablative being the Ablative of the Degree of Difference, 197. We translate by the English adverb *the*, as in the phrases *the more*, *the less*, *the quicker*, etc. **Quō** is only used to introduce Purpose Clauses which contain a Comparative. The Sequence is the same as in other Purpose Clauses.

## 281

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Sunt qui putent.** *There are men who think.*
2. **Nēmō est qui haec nōn faciat.** *There is no one who does not do this.*
3. **Quis erat qui haec nōn faceret?** *Who was there who did not do this?*
4. **Nōn is sum qui haec dicam.** *I am not one to say this.*

(a) Notice that the principal clause is either a negative or general expression stating something indefinitely, and that the relative clauses answer the question, *Of what kind?* Such clauses are called *Relative Clauses of Characteristic*.

(b) Whenever the antecedent is definite, the relative clause defines who or what is meant and only incidentally characterizes the antecedent, e. g., **Brūtus erat qui Caesarem occidit.** *It was Brutus who killed Caesar.* **Hic est qui haec dicit.** *This is the man who says this.* In such relative clauses the Indicative is regularly used.

**282 Rule.**—A relative clause which states the natural result or Character of something suggested indefinitely in the principal clause, is called a Clause of Characteristic and takes the Subjunctive.

W. 587–588; B. 283; AG. 320; H. 591.

**283**

### VOCABULARY

<b>Alcibiadēs</b> , -is, m. <i>Alcibiades.</i>	<b>plēriique</b> , <b>plēraeque</b> , <b>plēra-expediō</b> , -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus	<i>que, the most of.<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>to get ready</i> ( <b>impediō</b> , 276).	<b>potestās</b> , -tatis, f. <i>power, ability.</i>	
<b>incendo</b> , -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, <i>to set fire to.</i>	<b>praeficiō</b> , -ere, -fēci, -fectus	<i>(prae + faciō, 272), to put in command of.<sup>2</sup></i>
<b>interficiō</b> , -ere, -fēci, -fectus		
<i>(inter + faciō), to kill.</i>	<b>praemittō</b> , -ere, -misi, -missus	
<b>magistrātus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>magistrate, office.</i>		<i>(prae + mittō, 260), to send ahead.</i>
<b>mōs</b> , mōris, m. <i>custom; plur. character.</i>	<b>recipiō</b> , -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus	<i>(re + capiō, 267), to recover, receive.</i>
<b>occidō</b> , -ere, -cidi, -cīsus, <i>to cut down, to kill.</i>		
<b>Persa</b> , -ae, m. <i>a Persian.</i>	<b>redūcō</b> , -ere, -dūxi, -ductus	<i>(re + dūcō, 264), to lead or bring back.</i>
<b>perveniō</b> , -ire, -vēni, -ventū-		
<i>rus (per + veniō, 276), to arrive.</i>	<b>revocō</b> , -āre (re + vocō, 80),	<i>to recall.</i>
<b>Pharnabāzus</b> , -i, <i>Pharnabāzus</i> (a Persian satrap).	<b>satis</b> , adv. <i>enough, sufficiently.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Rare in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> With the accu. of person and the dative of thing.

**sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsūrus, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, to  
to be aware of, perceive.** conquer (victor, 158; vīc-  
**Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily.** tōria, 111).  
**simul atque (āc), conj. as soon as.**

**284** 1. Alcibiadēs honōrēs māximē cupiēbat, bella terrā  
marīque fēlīciter gerēbat; neque erat is quī facile terrērē-  
tur. 2. Postquam Alcibiadēs in Siciliam pervēnit, nāvis  
ā magistrātibus Athēniēnsibus praemissa est, quae eum  
redūcerēt. 3. Sed Alcibiadēs mōrēs Athēniēnsium satis  
cōgnōvit; itaque simul atque in Ītaliāam pervēnit, ad  
hostis Athēniēnsium fugīvit nē interficerēt. 4. Posteā  
ad Persās fugere coāctus est; tum suōs cīvīs ita adiuvā-  
bat ut dēnique revocātus, classī praeſicerēt. 5. Hōc in  
imperiō tantam classem expedīvit ut plērāsque urbēs  
Asiae reciperet quae in potestātem hostium vēnerant.  
6. Nēmō est quī nōn audiat dē victōriīs Alcibiadis, nēmō  
quī eum vidēre nōn cupiat; nam simul ā dē ēius adventū  
sēnsērunt, omnēs ad portum contendērunt. 7. Postquam  
Athēniēnsēs victī sunt, in Asiam fugere coāctus est Alci-  
biades. Sed nōn erat is quī patriam liberāre nōn cupe-  
ret; itaque ā Pharnabāzo petīvit ut ad rēgem Persārum  
mitterēt. 8. Tum Lacedaemoniī eum prohibēre statuē-  
runt ā rēge auxilium petere; itaque paucī clam praemissi  
sunt qui eum occiderent; aedificium in quō erat incendē-  
runt.

**285** 1. Who was there who did not hurry to the harbor, to  
see Alcibiades and to hear his voice? 2. By the advice  
of Alcibiades the Lacedaemonians sent forward men to  
take possession of a citadel. 3. Alcibiades was aware of  
the plans of the magistrates, but he was not a man to be  
frightened. 4. As soon as their foes had defeated the  
Athenians, he fled to the Persians, in order that he might  
not be killed. 5. Men were sent to set fire to the building  
in which Alcibiades was and to kill him. 6. So this

man who had been the most famous general the Athenians had known, was cut down in a most undeserved death. 7. Why did his citizens drive him from his native land and not defend him against his enemies?

## READING EXERCISE

*The Battle of Marathon*

**286** Postquam Athēniēnsēs haec cōgnōvērunt, nūntium ad Lacedaemoniōs mīsērunt quī peteret ut quam celerrimē auxilium mitterent. Sed propter<sup>1</sup> diēs festōs<sup>2</sup> Athēniēnsīs statim adiuvāre eīs nōn licēbat. Itaque nūlla cīvitās auxilium dedit praeter<sup>3</sup> Plataeēnsīs<sup>4</sup>; ea cīvitās mille mīlitēs mīsit. Quōrum adventū decem mīlia armātōrum<sup>5</sup> complēta sunt.<sup>6</sup> Huic exercitū sunt praefectī decem dūcēs, in quibus prīnceps erat Miltiadēs. Hīc cēteris persuāsit ut cōpiās ex urbe in campum Marathōnium statim dūcerent locōque idōneō castra facerent. Ubi is diēs vēnit quō Miltiadēs summum imperium habēbat, aciem ita īstrūxit<sup>7</sup> ut longitūdinem<sup>8</sup> Persārum aciēī aequāret<sup>9</sup> sed in mediā<sup>10</sup> aciē ordinēs minus fīrmī<sup>11</sup> essent quam in cornib⁹. Quamquam Athēniēnsēs numerō īferiōrēs erant, nōn dubitābant quīn Persās vincere possent.<sup>12</sup> Itaque ubi sīgnūm datum est, contrā hostīs māximā virtūte properābant; in mediā aciē barbarī superiōrēs erant; sed postquam Athēniēnsēs et Plataeēnsēs, quī in cornib⁹ Persās vīcerant, in eōs qui medium Athē-

<sup>1</sup> Prep. with accu., *on account of*.

<sup>7</sup> īstrūō, -ere, *to draw up*.

<sup>2</sup> *Festival*.

<sup>8</sup> longitūdō, -inis, *length (longus)*.

<sup>3</sup> Prep. with accu., *with the exception of*.

<sup>9</sup> aequō, -āre, *to equal*.

<sup>4</sup> *Men of Plataea* (a city in southern Boeotia).

<sup>10</sup> mediōs, -a, -um, *middle of*.

<sup>5</sup> armātī, *armed men*.

<sup>11</sup> fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong*.

<sup>6</sup> compleō, -ēre, *to make up*.

<sup>12</sup> Impf. subj. of possum, *to be able*.

niēnsium aciem pellēbant, impetum fēcērunt, māgnam partem eōrum occidērunt; reliquī nōn castra sed nāvīs petēbant. Quārum septem cēpērunt Athēniēnsēs. Numquam parva manus tantās cōpiās fugāverat: decempli-<sup>1</sup> cem numerum hostium vīcerant Graecī.

---

## LESSON XXXVI

## DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

**287** VERBS having Passive forms but Active meanings are called Deponents.

**288** Learn the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of hortor and vereor (484).

**289** SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING  
EXAMPLES

1. **Vereor** (*veritus sum*) *nē* *I fear (I have feared) that*  
*veniat.* *he may come.*
2. **Verēbar** (*veritus sum*) *ut* *I was fearing (I feared)*  
*veniret.* *that he might not come.*

(a) Notice that the clauses introduced by *nē* and *ut* are the objects of the introductory verbs, and are therefore also called Substantive Clauses, like similar clauses of Purpose (258) and of Result (268).

---

<sup>1</sup> *decomplex, -icis, ten times.*

(b) Notice also that after a verb of fearing *nē* means *that* or *lest*, *ut* means *that not*.<sup>1</sup>

290     *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses with verbs of Fearing are introduced by *nē, that, ut, that not*.

W. 516; B. 296, 2; AG. 331, f.; H. 567.

291

### VOCABULARY

*cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, to try.*

*cotidiē, adv. (quot + diē)*  
*daily.*

*Ēlis, -idis, f. Elis* (a district  
in the western Pelopon-  
nesus).

*expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus*  
(ex + pello, 276), *to drive*  
*out.*

*incolumis, -e, safe, unin-  
jured.*<sup>2</sup>

*inquit,<sup>3</sup> said he* (etc.).

*invitus, -a, -um, unwilling.*<sup>2</sup>  
*Lacedaemōn, -onis, f. Sparta.*

*libertās, -tatis, f. liberty,*  
*freedom.*

*mūniō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus, to*  
*fortify.*

*nōnnūlli, -ae, -a, some, a few.*  
*ob, prep. with accu., on ac-*  
*count of.*

*pedes, -itis, m. foot soldier.*  
*poena, -ae, f. penalty.*

*premō, -ere, pressī, pressus,*  
*to press, oppress.*

*quot, adj. indeclin. how*  
*many? as many as (com-*  
*pare tot, 264).*

*supplicium, -i, n. punish-*  
*ment.*

*vehementer, adv. violently,*  
*exceedingly.*

292     1. Alcibiadēs vehementer verēbātur nē odiō suppli-  
ciīisque premerētur. 2. “Alcibiadem hortēmur,” inquit

<sup>1</sup> The reason for this apparent reversal of the meanings of the two particles is that originally the clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* were independent, the Subjunctive being the Optative (241): *vereor, I am fearful; ut veniat, may he come* (but my fear is that he will not); *vereor: nē veniat, may he not come* (but I fear he will). In the development of the Latin language the originally independent clauses became dependent, so that we are obliged to translate as indicated above.

<sup>2</sup> This may often be conveniently translated by an adverb.

<sup>3</sup> This is the only common form of the defective verb *inquam, say I*, inserted in direct quotations.

ēius inimīcus, “ut in prōvinciam contendat, quō eum facilius premāmus.” 3. Invītus Alcibiadēs urbem reliquit; plērique enim cīvēs inimīci erant et eum occidere cupiēbant. 4. Alcibiadēs ab custōdibus fūgit nē poenās dare cōgerētur, atque incolumis p̄imum in Elidem, deinde Lacedaemonem<sup>1</sup> pervēnit. 5. Ibi magistrātibus Lace-daemoniōrum persuāsit ut peditēs equitēsque mitterent quī arcem Athēniēnsium mūnirent. 6. Sed simul atque hostēs virtūtem Alcibiadis cōgnōvērunt, veritē sunt nē ob patriae amōrem Athēniēnsium amīcitiam rūrsus petere cōnārētur. 7. Itaque nōnnūllī Alcibiadem interficere cu-piēbant; verēbantur enim nē ā cīvibus revocārētur et mīlitēs suōs iterum ex patriā suā expelleret. 8. “Uti-nam Alcibiadēs in nostrā patriā esset. Nēmō est enim quī fēlīcius sapientiusque rem pūblicam gerat.” 9. Al-cibiadēs cotidiē operam dedit ut Athēniēnsēs libertātem reciperent nēve<sup>2</sup> in potestāte Lacedaemoniōrum essent. 10. Quot mīlitēs eā pūgnā āmīsit? Multa mīlia homi-num āmīsit, atque etiam plūrēs equōs scūtaque.

**293** 1. They feared that Alcibiades would run away and come in safety to the Persian king. 2. Alcibiades sailed to Sicily against his will, for he greatly feared that he would be oppressed by his enemies. 3. They attempted to persuade the magistrates to send a ship at once. 4. The magistrates ordered the messengers to bring Alci-biades back to Greece. 5. Alcibiades fled in order that he might not be carried to Greece and made to suffer punishment. 6. “Let us have a few soldiers to fortify this place; this garrison is not large enough to deter the neighboring tribes from attacking the camp.” 7. When they saw Alcibiades unharmed, they could hardly be pre-vented from carrying him to the city in their arms.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare 236, 10.      <sup>2</sup> Nēve (nē + ve) before vowels, neu before consonants, is used to introduce the second member of a pur-pose clause when negative.      <sup>3</sup> manus.

## LESSON XXXVII

## DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**294** LEARN the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *sequor* and *potior* (484).

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

**295** Semi-Deponent Verbs have Active forms in the Present System and Passive forms in the Perfect System, keeping their Active meanings throughout. There are but four Semi-Deponents :

- audeō, audēre, ausus, *to dare.*
- gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus, *to rejoice.*
- soleō, solēre, solitus, *to be wont.*
- fīdō, fīdere, fīsus,<sup>1</sup> *to trust.*

**296**

## ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

## EXAMPLES

1. Hōc cōnsiliō ūtitur. *He uses this advice.*
2. Omnibus rēbus frui. *To enjoy all things.*
3. Urbe hostium potiti sunt. *They got possession of the enemy's city.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablative is used where in English we use the Accusative (Objective)

<sup>1</sup> The compound cōnfīdō, *to have confidence,* is much more common than the simple fīdo.

case. Such ablatives are Ablatives of Instrument or of Means (109) and are used with five deponents and their compounds.

**297** *Rule.*—The Ablative is used with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds.<sup>1</sup>

W. 387; B. 218, 1; AG. 249; H. 477.

**298**

## VOCABULARY

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō, 267), to re-	ceive, get.	numquam, adv. (nē + um- quam), never.
Aemilius, -ī, m. <i>Aemilius</i> .		periculōsus, -a, -um, full of risk, dangerous.
Āpūlia, -ae, f. <i>Apulia</i> .		probō, -āre, to approve.
cōsequor, -i, -secūtus (cum + sequor), to overtake.		proficiscor, -i, -fectus, to set out.
dolor, -ōris, m. <i>grief</i> .		quidam, quaedam, quoddam, <sup>3</sup> <i>a, a certain</i> .
ēiusmodi, <sup>2</sup> adj. of that sort, such.		umquam, adv. ever.
exerior, -irī, -pertus, to try, prove.		ūtor, -ī, ūsus, to use.
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of.		Varrō, -ōnis, m. <i>Varro</i> .

**299** 1. Simul atque Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnit, contrā eum summā celeritāte profectī sunt cōsulēs, Aemilius et Varrō. 2. Aemiliō minus periculōsum vidēbātur eā ratione bellī morāque ūtī quā Fabius ūsus erat; sed Varrō ācriōra cōnsilia sequī solēbātur. 3. Aemilius, qui verēbātur nē Rōmānī superārentur, invītus pūgnāvit; Rōmānī ingenti clāde pulsī sunt. 4. Numquam gravius vulnus accēpit rēs pūblica; plēriique dūcēs tribūnīque indīgnā

<sup>1</sup> As *fungor*, *to perform*, and *vēscor*, *to feed*, are not common in the Latin authors which pupils first read, they are not used in this book; but the complete rule should be learned for future convenience.

<sup>2</sup> The genitives *ēius* and *modī* written as one word.

<sup>3</sup> Declined in full, 475.

morte interfecti sunt atque Hannibal magnā praedā potitus est. 5. Aemilius mediā in pūgnā vulnerātum vīdit tribūnus quīdam, quī hortābatur ut equum suum caperet et fugeret. 6. "Etiam sine tuā morte," inquit tribūnus, "satis dolōris est. Nihil impedit quīn fugiās, nēmō tē cōsequētur. 7. Sed cōnsul tribūnō imperāvit ut magistratibus renūtiāret ut urbem mūnīrent. 8. Quot hominēs occisi sunt hāc pūgnā? Multa mīlia; numquam enim Rōmānī ēiusmodi clādem experti sunt. 9. Lēgātus Hannibalem hortābatur ut ad urbem contenderet. "Diē quartō," inquit, "vīctor sub moenibus eris." 10. Ubi hōc cōsillium nōn probāvit Hannibal, dixit ille, "Superrāre hostis scīs, vīctōriā ūtī nōn cūpis."

**300** 1. The consuls set out immediately, in order that they might follow the enemy. 2. Hannibal did not know how to take advantage of<sup>1</sup> the victory, for the Romans were in his power. 3. Aemilius was not accustomed to employ dispatch, and did not try to overtake the enemy's foot-soldiers with his cavalry. 4. Nothing prevents you from taking my horse and fleeing, that you may not meet an undeserved death. 5. At daybreak Hannibal took possession of the Roman camp; the Romans did not attempt to defend it. 6. The consul who had been put in command of the foot was afraid he should not conquer Hannibal. 7. How many soldiers were slain in this battle? So many thousands that this was the greatest disaster which a Roman army ever experienced.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., *to use.*

## LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE  
SUBJUNCTIVE

301 LEARN the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of *sum* (485) and in the four Conjugations, including deponent verbs (479–484).

302 Among the constructions thus far learned the chief use of the Perfect Subjunctive is in Result Clauses where after an introductory verb in a secondary tense the Perfect Subjunctive states the result as a simple fact, and corresponds to the Perfect Indicative of an independent statement: *Galli ita perterriti sunt ut nihil fecerint*, *The Gauls were so thoroughly frightened that they did nothing.*

(a) Here **fecerint** corresponds to **fecerunt** of a simple statement. If the imperfect **facerent** had been used in the Result Clause, it would have indicated the continuance of the action, *were doing*.

303 The Pluperfect Tense of the Subjunctive may be used in wishes referring to the past (the Optative-Subjunctive, 241): *utinam haec fecisset*, *Would that he had done this.*

(a) The Pluperfect like the Imperfect of the Optative Subjunctive is always introduced by **utinam**.

304 Naturally both the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in Characterizing Clauses (281):

1. **Is est qui nihil timuerit.** *He is a man who has feared nothing.*
2. **Is erat qui nihil timuisset.** *He was a man who had feared nothing.*

(a) The other important uses of the Perfect and Pluperfect will be noticed in later lessons.

## 305

## VOCABULARY

audeō, -ēre, ausus, <i>to dare.</i>	moror, -ārī, -ātus, <i>to delay.</i>
cōfido, -ere, -fīsus ( <i>cum + fidō</i> ), <i>to have confidence.</i>	obliviscor, -ī, -lītus, <i>to forget.<sup>2</sup></i>
cotidiānus, -a, -um, <i>daily.</i>	paene, adv. <i>almost.</i>
dēspērō, -āre, <i>to despair.</i>	pecūnia, -ae, f. <i>money.</i>
dēsum, -esse, -fūi, <i>to be lacking, to fail.<sup>1</sup></i>	perterreō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus ( <i>per + terreō</i> , 252), <i>to terrify.</i>
fruor, -ī, frūctus, <i>to enjoy.</i>	sīc, adv. <i>so.<sup>3</sup></i>
loquor, -ī, locūtus, <i>to talk.</i>	tam, adv. <i>so.<sup>4</sup></i>

## 306

1. Nūntiō hūius clādis Rōmānī sīc perterritī sunt ut nihil facere nihilque dicere ausī sint. 2. Māgnū dolōrem accēpērunt cīvēs; nēmō loquēbātur, omnēs tam trīstēs erant ut nēmō contrā hostīs proficīscī audēret. 3. Hannibal tamen nōn erat is qui vīctōriā ūtī scīret; atque nunc quoque vīctōriā fruī, non ūtī, cupiēbat. 4. Utinam morātus esset noster exercitus; nē Fabī ēiusque bellī ratiōnis oblīvīscāmur. 5. Nec tamen dēspērāvērunt Rōmānī; omnia faciēbant nē libertātem potestātemque āmitterent nēve in aciē vincerentur. 6. Quod arma quibus pūgnārent deerant, ex templis scūta tēlaque hostium cēpērunt quibus ūterentur. 7. Pecūniām tēlaque quibus

<sup>1</sup> With the dative, not accusative.

<sup>2</sup> With the genitive of the object. Compare 156.

<sup>3</sup> Modifying verbs.

<sup>4</sup> Modifying adjectives and adverbs, not verbs. Compare ita, 182.

ūtēbantur,<sup>1</sup> senātus suā operā expedīvit, ut urbs facile dēfenderētur. 8. Hannibal fideī<sup>2</sup> Rōmānae sīc cōnfidēbat ut captīvos eōrum ad urbem sine custōdibus mīserit. 9. Utinam castrīs hostium potītī essēmus; atque nunc cēterōs statim cōsequāmur nē hīs auxilium darent. 10. Rōmānī cum eīs nātiōnibus paene cotīdiānīs proeliīs pūgnāre solēbant ut adventū tot mīlium novōrum hostiū nōn perterritī sint.

**307** 1. Hannibal acted with so little speed that the Romans did not despair of the state. 2. Hannibal knew how to enjoy a victory, but not how to use one.<sup>3</sup> 3. Would that the Romans had followed the advice of Aemilius! 4. The advice of Aemilius was to delay and not to fight, for to engage with the enemy at once was dangerous. 5. Because young men were lacking, the senate ordered the slaves to be liberated and armed. 6. The Romans lost so many men in this battle that they no longer had an army. 7. They no longer had enough foot-soldiers to send against Hannibal. 8. They were not a people who had been accustomed to be afraid that they would be conquered.

<sup>1</sup> How does the indic. here differ from the subj. in the preceding sentence?

<sup>2</sup> Dat. with **cōnfidēbat**; translate by the English objective.

<sup>3</sup> Omit in translating.

## LESSON XXXIX

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

308

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS

## EXAMPLES

1. <b>Si</b> adest, bene est. 2. <b>Si</b> aderat, bene erat. 3. <b>Si</b> adfuit, bene fuit.	<i>If he is here, it is well.</i> <i>If he was here, it was well.</i> <i>If he has been (was) here, it has been (was) well.</i>
---	---

(a) Notice that the time of these sentences is either Present or Past, and that nothing is implied as to whether the subject actually is, was, or has been here. Such conditions are called *Simple Present or Past Conditional Sentences*.

(b) The Condition, or Subordinate Clause, of the Sentence is frequently called the *Prótasis*; the Conclusion, or Principal Clause, is called the *Apódosis*.

309     **Rule.**—In Simple Present or Past Conditional Sentences, implying nothing as to the fact, the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis.

W. 553; B. 302; AG. 306; H. 574.

310     CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

## EXAMPLES

1. <b>Si</b> adesset, bene esset. 2. <b>Si</b> adfuisset, bene fuisset.	<i>If he were here, it would be well.</i> <i>If he had been here, it would have been well.</i>
--	---

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences imply that the supposition is not true, i. e., that he is not, or was not here. Such conditions are called *Conditions Contrary to Fact*.

(b) Notice further that the Imperfect Subjunctive refers to Present time, the Pluperfect to Past.

**311 Rule.**—In Present and Past Conditional Sentences contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present, the Pluperfect to Past Time.

W. 557; B. 304; AG. 308; H. 579.

**312**FUTURE CONDITIONS<sup>1</sup>

## EXAMPLES

1. **Si** aderit (ad fuerit), **bene**    *If he is (shall be, shall have been) here, it will be well.*  
 2. **Si** adsit, **bene** **sit.**              *If he should be here, it would be well.*

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences both refer to Future time and therefore state the condition as Possible, rather than as a simple fact or one impliedly false. In the first sentence the Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative states the condition more vividly than the Present Subjunctive does in the second. The first sentence is called a *More Vivid Future Condition*, the second a *Less Vivid Future Condition*.

(b) In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Perfect Indicative is very common in the Protasis, as the Latin language is more precise than the English. We generally use the Present Indicative here to represent both the Future and the Future Perfect.

**313 Rule.**—In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; in Less Vivid Future Conditions the Present Subjunctive.

W. 553, 555; B. 302, 303; AG. 307; H. 574, 576.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will remember that conditional sentences with the Indicative have been freely used in many of the preceding exercises.

314

## VOCABULARY

<i>aequus, -a, -um, equal, fair, level.</i>	<i>nanciscor, -i, nactus, to find.</i>
<i>aetās, -ātis, f. age.</i>	<i>necesse, adj. necessary.</i>
<i>dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (dī + mittō, 260), to dismiss.</i>	<i>nisi, conj. unless.</i>
<i>etsī, conj. even if, although.</i>	<i>pedester, -tris, -tre, foot (pedes, 291).</i>
<i>graviter, adv. heavily, severely.</i>	<i>pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, to put, place.<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish.</i>	<i>propter, prep. with accu. on account of.</i>
<i>māne, adv. early in the morning.</i>	<i>rēgius, -a, -um, royal.</i>
<i>morior, -i, mortuus, to die.</i>	<i>respondeō, -ēre, -ndi, -nsus, to answer.</i>
	<i>Scipiō, -ōnis, m. Scipio.</i>

315

1. Scipiō olim magistrātū quendam petīvit, sed propter aetātem hunc habēre eī nōn licuit. 2. "Sī mē," inquit, "omnēs cīvēs magistrātū facere cupiunt, satis annōrum habeō." 3. Scipiō tantā virtūte ēgit ut vītam patris ex hostiū tēlī servāverit. 4. Nam pater graviter vulnerātus erat, ut nisi eum Scipiō celeriter perīculō liberāvisset, in hostiū manūs vēniisset mortuusque esset. 5. Ubi iuvenēs quīdam dē rē pūblicā dēspērāvērunt, Scipiō respondit, "Sī reī pūblicaē deeritis, hūius gladi virtūtem experiētis." 6. Sī Scipiō aequissimō locō māne castra posuerit, pedestribus cōpiis paene cotidiē cum hostib⁹ pūgnābit. 7. Etsī ea nātiō nōn māgna erat, tamen apud eōs multa arma nōnnūllōsque captivōs nactus est imperātor. 8. Erat inter captivōs Hispānōs puer rēgius īsignisque, quōcum<sup>2</sup> Scipiō pauca loquēbātur. 9. Scipiō probāvit ea quae puer dīxit, atque ubi eī equum equitēsque dedit quī eum tūtō dēdūcerent, domum dīmī-

<sup>1</sup> *castra pōnere, to pitch camp.*

<sup>2</sup> *cum* is regularly attached to the abl. of the Personal and Relative Pronouns.

sit. 10. *Sī beātus esse cupīs, bonīs vītae sapienter ūtī et frūi necesse est.*

**316** 1. If Scipio had not acted with great haste, his father would have died in the hands of the enemy. 2. Scipio's father was so severely wounded that he almost died. 3. Scipio's years were not many; still he would receive from the citizens the magistracy if he should seek it. 4. "Unless you follow my advice and defend the state," said Scipio, "my sword will make<sup>1</sup> you drive the enemy out." 5. If the enemy be not terrified, they will pitch camp early in the morning in a level place. 6. Scipio persuaded the youth who was brought to him not to be afraid. 7. "My father died," said the boy, "so that I followed my mother's brother to the war." 8. If you should use and enjoy wisely the goods of life, you would be happy.

---

## LESSON XL

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

#### PARADIGMS

**317**

	SINGULAR		
	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM.	<b>ego</b>	<b>tū</b>	—
GEN.	<b>mei</b>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>sui</b>
DAT.	<b>mihī, mī</b>	<b>tibī</b>	<b>sibī</b>
ACCU.	<b>mē</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>sē, sēsē</b>
ABL.	<b>mē</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>sē, sēsē</b>

<sup>1</sup> *efficiō* with a substantive clause.

## PLURAL

NOM. (Voc.)	<b>nōs</b>	<b>vōs</b>	—
GEN.	<b>nostrum, nostri</b>	<b>vestrum, vestri</b>	<b>sui</b>
DAT.	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>	<b>sibī</b>
ACCU.	<b>nōs</b>	<b>vōs</b>	<b>sē, sēsē</b>
ABL.	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>	<b>sē, sēsē</b>

(a) The First and Second Personal Pronouns are used only for emphasis; *ego haec laudō, tū ista laudās, I praise this, you praise that.* Ordinarily the form of the verb alone indicates the subject in these two persons.

(b) **Nostrum** and **vestrum** usually denote the whole of which the modified word is a part: *quis nostrum? Who of us?* **Nostri** and **vestri** are generally used as Objective Genitives: **memōria nostri, Memory of us.**

(c) There is properly speaking no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person. Its place is taken by the Demonstratives **ille** and **is** (123, 135).

(d) The Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are supplied from the Personal Pronouns: *ego mē laudo, I praise myself; tū tē laudās, You praise yourself.*

<b>meus, my</b>	<b>noster, our</b>	for the First Person
<b>tuus, your (thy)</b>	<b>vester, your</b>	for the Second Person
<b>suus, his own, their own</b>		for the Third Person

(a) These are adjectives, which have been already used, and are declined like **bonus** and **niger**. But the Voc. Sing. Masc. of **meus** is **mī**.

(b) **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands: *suum filium laudat, He praises his own son; filium illius laudat, He praises his (another man's) son.*

**319** The following table shows the correspondence of the Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, and Demonstrative Pronouns.

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE	DEMONSTRATIVE
FIRST PERSON	<b>ego</b>	<b>meī</b>	<b>meus, noster</b>	<b>hic</b>
SECOND PERSON	<b>tū</b>	<b>tui</b>	<b>tuus, vester</b>	<b>iste</b>
THIRD PERSON	( <b>ille, is</b> )	<b>sui</b>	<b>suus</b>	<b>ille</b>

**320**

## VOCABULARY

aut (aut . . . aut), conj. **iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus,** *to either (either . . . or).*

dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, *to cease, cease from, give up.*

dignus -a, -um, *worthy.*

**Hasdrubal, -alis**, m. *Hasdrubal* (a famous Carthaginian).

**idem, eadem, idem**,<sup>1</sup> *the same.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum,<sup>1</sup> *self, very.*

iste, ista, istud,<sup>1</sup> *that (of yours).*

**iudeō, -āre, iūdicō, -āre, iūdiciū, -ūm, iūdicātis,** *to judge, consider, (iūdex, 144.)*

magnitūdō, -inis, f. *size, greatness.*

**modo, adv. only.**

nē . . . quidem, adv. *not even.*

nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

**silentium, -ī, n. silence.**

**321** 1. Multitūdō eadem Hispānōrum Scipiōnem ingentī clāmōre rēgem appellāvit; sed ille nōn passus est sē rēgiō nōmine appellārī. 2. Postquam silentium eōs facere iussit, summā auctōritātē dīxit, “ Nōmen imperātōris quō mē milites meī appellāvērunt, mihī est māximus honor. 3. Rōmānī nē nōmen quidem rēgium patī solent. Etsī vōs hōc nōmen māximum dīgnissimumque iūdicātis, tamen necesse est vōs<sup>3</sup> etiam invītōs cōnsiliō dēsistere.”

<sup>1</sup> These are declined in full, 475. Compare with other demonstrative pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> Followed by the accu. and infin.: **iubeo tē haec facere, I order you to do this.** Compare **imperō**, 191.

<sup>3</sup> Accu. subject of **dēsistere**; translate, *that you, etc.*

4. Tum sēnsērunt nōn modo illī sed etiam cēterī māgnitūdinem ēius animī, ut eum rēgem appellāre dēstiterint.
5. "Quot vestrum hōc animō sunt? Sī cōnsilium istud probārem, nōn dubitārem quīn nōmen illud accipere necesse esset."
6. Deinde Scipiō proficīscī parābat, ut dūrō tempore anni māgnum agmen in Africam trādūceret.
7. Lēgātiōnem cum dōni ad rēgem mīsit; sed nōn poterat<sup>1</sup> eī persuādēre ut fidem, nisi cum ipsō dūce Rōmānō, aut daret aut acciperet.
8. Idem effēcit ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ipse, quī Hispāniā expulsus erat, ad hunc portum peryenīret.
9. Numquam tuī oblīviscar, etsī aetās mihi longissima sit.

**322**

1. I should accept the name of king for love of you, if the Romans would allow me to do so.
2. Scipio ordered the Spaniards not to call him king against his wishes.<sup>2</sup>
3. Because the Spaniards recognized his nobility of spirit, they gave up their plan.
4. I do not approve of your plan; let them not call me by that name.
5. If he had not sent an embassy to the king, he not only would have come himself, but would also have given up the hostages.
6. If you wish to exchange<sup>3</sup> pledges with me, it will be necessary for you to come yourself.
7. After a short silence, he said, "I shall not forget you, even if you forget me."
8. You are eager to adopt<sup>4</sup> either that plan of yours or this of mine?<sup>5</sup>

**323**

## READING EXERCISE

*The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis*

Postquam Darēus' dē pūgnā Marathōniā certior est factus, Graeciam vincere multō magis cupiēbat. Itaque per cīvitatēs Asiae lēgātōs mīsit quī cōpiās et nāvīs longās

<sup>1</sup> Imperfect indic. of **possum**, to be able.

<sup>2</sup> **invītus**.      <sup>3</sup> Use **dō** and **acciipiō**; compare 321, 7.

<sup>4</sup> **capere**.      <sup>5</sup> Simply **hīc**; compare 124 (a).

et equōs et frūmentum parārī iubērent. Sed mox Darēus moritur. Deinde Xerxēs rēgnat.<sup>1</sup> Quamquam<sup>2</sup> in animō nōn habēbat<sup>3</sup> bellum Graeciae īferre,<sup>4</sup> tamen Mardonius, cūius auctōritās apud eum erat māxima, eī persuāsit ut patris cōnsilia persequerētur.<sup>5</sup> Per quattuor<sup>6</sup> annōs māgnūm exercitū omnīsque rēs exercitū necessāriās parābat ut quīntō<sup>7</sup> annō ingentibus cōpiis proficīscerētur. Ubi rēx cum peditib⁹ equitibusque ad Thermopylārum<sup>8</sup> angustiās<sup>9</sup> pervēnit, castra ante eās pōnere est coāctus, quod in angustiīs erant Graeci, quī parātī erant prohibēre eum suōs mīlitēs in Graeciam dūcere. Cēterī Graeci, māgnō numerō hostium perterriti,<sup>10</sup> ex angustiīs fugere et Isthmum mūnīre cupiēbant; sed Leōnidās hanc sententiam nōn probābat, et cum Lacedaemoniis suis manēbat.

Ubi nōnnūllōs diēs rēx morātus est, suōs mīlitēs impetum facere iussit. Quamquam summā audāciā pūgnāvērunt, tamen tanta erat caedēs eōrum ut dēnique proeliō dēstiterint āc sē in castra recēperint. Neque reliquī plūs contrā Graecōs effēcērunt. Ubi iam dē vīctōriā Xerxēs dēspērābat, eī Graecus quīdam viam per montēs indicāvit. Eā nocte Persae profectī sunt ut Graecōs ā tergō<sup>11</sup> adorīrentur.<sup>12</sup> Leōnidās omnīs praeter<sup>13</sup> Lacedaemoniōs dīmiserat. Prīmā lūce Persae in eōs im- petum fēcērunt: parva manus Graecōrum fortissimē pūg-

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative is often thus used in narration to record incidents as they occur. It is best known as the Annalistic Present.

<sup>2</sup> *Although.*

<sup>3</sup> Compare **in** **animō** **esse**, 193, 6.

<sup>4</sup> *Infin.*, *to bring on*, with dat.

<sup>5</sup> **persequor**, *to follow out.*

<sup>6</sup> *Four.*

<sup>7</sup> *Fifth.*

<sup>8</sup> **Thermopylae**, a pass from Thessaly to southern Greece.

<sup>9</sup> **angustiae**, *pass.*

<sup>10</sup> *Perf. pass. partic.*, not indic.

<sup>11</sup> *In the rear.*

<sup>12</sup> **adorior**, -īrī, *to attack.*

<sup>13</sup> Prep. with accu., *except.*

nāvit, sed omnēs occīsī sunt. Hic in ūnō locō sepultī,<sup>1</sup> semper in māximō honōre apud suōs erant.

Paulō post apud Salamīnem<sup>2</sup> pūgnam nāvālem<sup>3</sup> cum classe Persicā commīsērunt Graecī, quī cōnsiliō Themistoclis<sup>4</sup> hōc locō dīmicāre coāctī sunt. Multī enim ā Salamīne ad Isthmum fugere in animō habuerant. Maior pars nāvium Persārum interiit;<sup>5</sup> multae ab Athēniēnsibus sociisque sunt captae. Ita Graecia est līberāta.

---

## LESSON XLI

### THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

**324** REVIEW the Present Infinitives and learn the Perfect and Future Infinitives of the model verbs (**479–485**).

(a) Notice that the Future Active Infinitive is made up of the Future Active Participle and **esse**; the Perfect Passive of the Perfect Passive Participle and **esse**. These participles, it should be remembered, are declined like **bonus**.

**325** SUBJECT AND OBJECT INFINITIVES

The Infinitive in Latin, as in English, is a Verbal Noun and has neither person nor number. It is chiefly used as Subject or Object.

---

<sup>1</sup> Perf. pass. partic. of **sepeliō**, *to bury*.

<sup>2</sup> **Salamis**, -īnis, an island south of Athens.

<sup>3</sup> **nāvālis**, -e, compare **nāvis**.

<sup>4</sup> **Themistocles**, -is, the famous Athenian general.

<sup>5</sup> *Was lost*,

326

## EXAMPLES

1. Urbem dēfendere erit peri- culōsum.	To defend the city will be dangerous.
2. Urbem mūnire cupit.	He wishes to defend the city.
3. Urbem mūnīrī cupit.	He wishes the town to be de- fended.
4. Urbem esse māgnam cupit.	He wishes the city to be large.
5. Urbs māgna esse dīcitur.	The city is said to be large.
6. Urbs dēfēnsa esse dīcitur.	The city is said to have been defended.

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 the Infinitive is the Subject of **erit**; in 2, 3, and 4 it is the Object of **cupit**; and that in 5 and 6 it simply completes the meaning of the sentence. Such infinitives as those in sentences 2–6 are frequently called *Complementary Infinitives*, especially when, as in sentence 2, the infinitive has no subject. All these constructions are common in English, so that they have been freely used in the preceding lessons.

(b) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 the accusative **urbem** is the Subject of the infinitives, and that in sentence 4 the predicate adjective **māgnam** is therefore accusative. But in sentences 5 and 6, in which the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the finite verb and therefore nominative, the predicate adjective **māgna** and the participle **dēfēnsa** are nominative.

**327 Rule.**—The Infinitive may be used as Subject or Object of a Finite Verb.

W. 622–629; B. 326–332; AG. 270–272; H. 613–615.

**328 Rule.**—The Accusative may be used as the Subject of an Infinitive.

W. 322; B. 184; AG. 240, f.; H. 415.

329

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

## EXAMPLES

## DIRECT

## INDIRECT

1. <b>Tū urbem dēfendis.</b>	<b>Dicit tē urbem dēfendere.</b>
<i>You are defending the city.</i>	<i>He says that you are defending the city.</i>
2. <b>Ego urbem dēfendi.</b>	<b>Dixit mē urbem dēfendisse.</b>
<i>I defended the city.</i>	<i>He said that I defended the city.</i>
3. <b>Urbs dēfēnsa est.</b>	<b>Dixit urbem dēfēnsam esse.</b>
<i>The city has been defended.</i>	<i>He said that the city had been defended.</i>
4. <b>Urbem dēfendēbat.</b>	<b>Dicit sē urbem dēfendisse.</b>
<i>He was defending the city.</i>	<i>He says that he defended the city.</i>
5. <b>Hic urbem dēfendet.</b>	<b>Dixit hunc urbem dēfēn-sūrum esse.</b>
<i>This man will defend the city.</i>	<i>He said that this man would defend the city.</i>

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Infinitives with Subjects in the Accusative are Objects of the introductory verb, but at the same time represent the quoted thought or words of some person, as is shown by the left-hand column. When a person's thought or words are thus quoted after a verb of Saying or Thinking, the construction is called *Indirect Discourse*. Compare 326, 5 and 6.

(b) The Tenses of the Infinitive have no independent time of their own, but their time depends on that of the leading verb, as is shown by the examples given above.

330     *Rule.*—The Present Infinitive expresses the same time as that of the leading verb, the Perfect Infinitive time before, and the Future Infinitive time after the time of the leading verb.

W. 632-635; B. 270 *a-c*; AG. 288; H. 617-620.

331

## VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud, *another*.<sup>1</sup>  
 arbitrōr, -ārī, -ātus, *to think*.  
 centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion*.  
 circum, prep. with accu.  
     *around, about*.  
 cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitū-  
     *tus, to establish, place, sta-*  
     *tion, determine*.  
 difficultās, -ātis, f. *difficulty*  
     (*difficilis*, 196).  
 imperitūs, -a, -um (*in +*  
     *peritus*, 264), *unskilled*.  
 iniquus, -a, -um (*in + ae-*  
     *quus*, 314), *unequal, un-*  
     *even, unfair*.  
 paulum, adv. *a little, some-*  
     *what* (*paulō*, 199).  
 procul, adv. *far off*.  
 prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *to*  
     *advance*.  
 putō, -āre, *to think*.  
 quisquam, —, *quidquam*,  
     *indefinite pron. any one,*  
     *anything*.<sup>2</sup>  
 sōl, -is, m. *sun*.  
 spērō, -āre, *to hope*.  
 Suēbī, -ōrum, m. *The Suebi*  
     (*a German people*).  
 suprā, adv., and prep. with  
     accu. *above, beyond*.  
 tālis, -e, *such*.  
 tollō, -ere, *sustulī, sublātus*,  
     *to lift up, carry off, re-*  
     *move, destroy*.

332

1. Ipse Caesar cōpiās pedestrīs in Germaniam dūcere castraque pōnere cōstituit paulō suprā eum locum ubi anteā peditēs trādūxerat. 2. Arbitrābātur hostīs, imperītōs hominēs, aut inīquō locō proelium commissūrōs aut dē vīctōriā dēspērātūrōs esse. 3. Hōc modō spērābat sē castrīs eōrum argentōque omnī potītūrum esse. 4. Sōl occultātus erat nūbibus ut periculōsum difficileque esse putāret tālī caelō proficīscī; sed prīmōs ordinēs paulum prōgredī iussit. 5. Mōs hārum cīvitātum fuisse dīcitur, ut circum sē fīniā vastātōs vacuōsque ab incolīs habērent; hōc modō sē tūtiōrēs esse arbitrābantur. 6. Caesar, simul atque certior factus est Suēbōs inīquō locō bellum committere nōn audēre, longius prōgredī cōstituit. 7. Nē timōrem barbarīs tolleret, turrim nōn procul ā rīpā cōn-

<sup>1</sup> Declined in full, 469.

<sup>2</sup> For the declension, see 478. *Quisquam* is used in negative sentences and in questions; compare 332, 9.

stituit, centuriōnem quendam turrī castrīsque praefēcit. 8. Postquam ipse peditēs plērōsque incolumīs redūxit, ad alium bellum profectus est. Arbitrābatur illōs supplicī nōn oblītūrōs esse. 9. Ista silva est sacra deīs; neque est quisquam qui sē ad fīnem ēius umquam pervēnisse dīcat aut māgnitūdinem ēius cōgnōverit. 10. Sī pontem nōn incendisset, barbarī arbitrātī essent eum in Germaniam prōgressūrum esse atque perterritī essent.

**333** 1. It is a dangerous and difficult matter to follow the Suebi into such a forest. 2. He thought that the centurion had erected a tower not far from the bridge. 3. The Suebi had determined to betake themselves into the forest, nor was there any one who knew their plan. 4. If the sun had not been hidden by clouds, he would have set out on that day. 5. A little way above the bridge was a very large forest, in which there were many strange animals; this forest is said to have been sacred to the gods. 6. Caesar was informed that the Suebi would neither engage in battle nor stay where they were.<sup>1</sup> 7. If you wish to destroy all fear and to enjoy<sup>2</sup> quiet, you must lay waste the country about your cities.

## LESSON XLII

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

**334**

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

## EXAMPLES

## DIRECT

## INDIRECT

1. **Quid facit?**

<b>Rogat quid faciat.</b> <i>He asks what he is doing.</i>
<b>Rogāvit quid faceret.</b> <i>He asked what he was doing.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *in the same place*.<sup>2</sup> **ūtī.**

2. Cūr proficiscēbātur?      Rogāvit cūr proficiscerētur.  
*He asked why he started.*

3. Ubi vēnit?      {  
 Sciō ubi vēnerit.  
*I know when he came.*  
 Sciēbam ubi vēnisset.  
*I knew when he came.*

(a) Notice that the verbs of the direct questions in the left-hand column when quoted in the right become the Subjunctive. The Sequence of Tenses is similar to that of other subordinate clauses, 248 b, c. In general all questions and all subordinate clauses when quoted have their verbs in the Subjunctive.

**335 Rule.**—In Indirect Discourse the verb of a Declarative sentence is in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; the verb of an Interrogative, Hortatory, or Imperative Sentence, or of a Subordinate clause is in the Subjunctive.

W. 599, 605; B. 314, 315; AG. 336; H. 642, 643.

### CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

#### EXAMPLES

**336 SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS<sup>1</sup>**

1. DIRECT. Sī haec facis, bene facis.

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { faciās,  
 Dicit } facerēs, } bene facere.

2. DIRECT. Sī haec fēcisti, bene fēcisti.

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { fēceris,  
 Dicit } fēcissēs, } bene fēcissem.

**337 FUTURE CONDITIONS**

3. DIRECT. Sī haec { faciēs, } bene { faciēs.  
 faciās, } faciās.

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { faciās, } bene factūrum esse.  
 Dicit } facerēs, }

---

<sup>1</sup> Present and Past Conditions Contrary to Fact are not frequent in Indirect Discourse and are not treated here.

(a) Notice that the verb of the Apodosis of a conditional sentence, being independent, is changed to the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse ; the verb of the Protasis, being dependent, is changed to the Subjunctive, following the regular sequence of tenses.

(b) Notice also that Protases of the Simple Present and the More and the Less Vivid Future Conditions have the same Subjunctive form when quoted. The Tense of the Infinitive in the Apodosis shows in part what kind of condition was used in the Direct Discourse ; but there is no way of distinguishing between the two classes of Future Conditions when quoted, except by the context.

## 338

## VOCABULARY

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, to withdraw, yield.	nūllus, -a, -um, no, none. <sup>2</sup>
conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven-tūrus (con + veniō, 276), to come together, assemble.	oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. attack, assault, siege (oppūgnō, 111).
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), to go away, depart.	ostendō, -ere, -ndi, -ntus, to show.
domus, -ūs, f. house, home. <sup>1</sup>	pīlum, -ī, n. javelin.
existimō, -āre, to think.	quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to ask, enquire.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.	revertor, revertī, reversus, to return. <sup>3</sup>
intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, to perceive, understand.	salūs, -ūtis, f. safety, life.
	undique, adv. from all sides.

## 339 1. Centuriō existimāvit, sī tālī tempore oppūgnātiōne dēsisteret, hostīs aut cōpiās dēductūros aut aedifi-

<sup>1</sup> See 465. The accu. without a preposition is used as the limit of motion like names of towns.

<sup>2</sup> Declined in full, 469.

<sup>3</sup> Usually deponent in the present system ; in the perfect system the active revertī is used.

cia Rōmānōrum incēnsūrōs esse. 2. Nūntium rogāvit cūr tam tristis esset. Respondit ille hostis undique convēnisce, hastis pīlisque armātōs, neque procul abesse. 3. Caesar, nē caedēs māgna esset, silentiō māne revertī cōstituit; nē ūnum quidem diem mānserat. 4. Ipse dux certior factus est hostis iam discessisse, neque quisquam sciēbat ubi essent. Exīstīmābat Caesar eōs medium in prōvinciam profectōs esse. 5. Arbitrābātur, sī tālī tempore sōl nūbibus occultārētur, imperitōs hominēs dē salūte dēspērātūrōs et oppūgnātiōne dēstītūrōs esse. 6. In tantā difficultāte dīxit eīs, sī locō nōn cēderent, sē eōs incolūmīs domum dēductūrūm esse. 7. Sī sentient necesse esse morī, māiōre fortitūdine bellī fortūnam experientur et sē fortiōrēs ostendent. 8. Quaesīvit ab eīs quam ob rem māne prōgressī essent. Respondērunt sē bellī fortūnam secundā hōrā experīrī cupīvisse. 9. Caesar intellēxit nisi locum nātūrā mūnitūm nancīserentur, eōs numquām proelium commissūros esse.

**340** 1. He asked the messenger where the enemy were and why they had determined to return. 2. He thought that, if he returned, the enemy would advance and try the fortune of war. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy had gathered from all sides and would attack the tower if Caesar should fall back from his position. 4. You ask why I wish to give up<sup>1</sup> the attack. I think it will be dangerous to stay here, if the enemy do not withdraw. 5. He told them that, if they should show themselves brave men, they need not despair of victory and safety. 6. Not to deprive<sup>2</sup> them altogether of hope, he says that if they withdraw quickly, they will reach<sup>3</sup> home in safety. 7. He asks how many miles distant the enemy are from the camp and how large an army they have.

---

<sup>1</sup> dēsistō.

<sup>2</sup> tollō.

<sup>3</sup> revertor.

341

## READING EXERCISE

*Roman History from 60 B.C.*

Quartō annō post coniūrātiōnem Catilīnae Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul est factus. Datae eī sunt in quīnquennium prōvinciae, Gallia et Illyricum, deinde in alterum quīnquennium prōrogātae. Pācāvit autem annīs novem paene omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Bis mīlitēs Rhēnum trādūxit Germānōsque in ultimās regiōnēs sē recipere coēgit; bis etiam trānsgressus est in Brittaniam, quod inde Gallī auxilia missa erant, vīctorque in prōvinciam revertit. Septimō ex quō Caesar in Galliam vēnerat annō gravis oritur sēditiō; paene omnēs Gallī, quōrum Vercingetorix erat dux, contrā Rōmānōs coniūrant. Sed Caesar Alesiam, quō sē hostēs recēperant, expūgnāvit et tōtam Galliam gravibus suppliciis pācāvit. Interim cum Pompēiō et Crassō societātem illam reī pūblicaē periculōsam renovāvit. Pompēiō etiam fīliam Iūliam Caesar in mātrīmōnium dedit, ut eum sibi adiungeret; sed illa iam alterō annō moritur. Crassus, cui post cōnsulātūm quem cum Pompēiō gesserat, data est Syria et bellum Parthicūm, ad Carrās, Mesopotamiae oppidum, ā dūce Parthōrum vīctus et interfectus est. Mox inimīcī erant Caesar et Pompēius: huic illīus opēs suspectae erant, illum hūius auctōritās grātiaque apud nōbīlīs sollicitābant.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

<b>adiungō</b> , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-	<b>Carrae</b> , -ārum, f. <i>Carrae</i> .
<i>tus, to join to, attach.</i>	
<b>alter</b> , -era, -erūm, <i>other, sec-</i>	<b>cōnsulātus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>consul-</i>
<i>ond.</i>	<i>ship.</i>
<b>bis</b> , adv. <i>twice.</i>	<b>inde</b> , adv. <i>from that place.</i>
	<b>mātrīmōnium</b> , -ī, n. <i>marriage.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Proper names are not ordinarily given in the vocabularies to the reading exercises, unless they present some difficulties.

<i>nōbilis</i> , -e, <i>noble</i> .	<i>Rhēnus</i> , -i, m. <i>the Rhine</i> .
<i>novem</i> , (indeclin.) <i>nine</i> .	<i>Rhodanus</i> , -i, m. <i>the Rhone</i> .
<i>opēs</i> , -um, f. plur. <i>power</i> .	<i>sēditiō</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>uprising</i> .
<i>orior</i> , -īrī, -ortus, <i>to arise</i> .	<i>societās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>alliance</i> .
<i>Parthicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Parthian</i> .	<i>suspiciō</i> , -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, <i>to suspect</i> .
<i>prōrogō</i> , -āre, <i>to extend</i> .	
<i>quinquennium</i> , -i, n. <i>five years</i> .	<i>trānsgressiō</i> , -i, -gressus, <i>to cross</i> .
<i>renovō</i> , -āre, <i>to renew</i> .	

## LESSON XLIII

## THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM

**342** THE only compounds of *sum* which present any peculiarities are *possum*, *can*, *be able*, and *prōsum*, *to be of advantage to*, *to help*. Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive entire of these verbs (486).

(a) **Possum** is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*; therefore the *t* appears everywhere before a vowel, e. g., *potest*, *poteram*, etc. **Prōsum** is compounded of *prōd* (an old form of *prō*) and *sum*.

**343** DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

1. **Peditibus** occurrit. *He met the infantry.*
2. **Equitātui** praefuit. *He was in charge of the cavalry.*
3. **Equitātui** praefectus est. *He has been put in command of the cavalry.*
4. **Haec tibi** prōderunt. *These things will be to your advantage.*

(a) Notice that the Dative, not the Accusative, is used with these Verbs Compounded with the preposi-

tions **ob**, **prae**, and **prō**. Many compound Latin verbs are intransitive and have the Dative depending on them thus; but their English equivalents are often transitive.

**344** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*.

W. 332; B. 187, iii; AG. 228; H. 429.

**345**

VOCABULARY

cōsistō, -ere, -stītī, —, to stand, halt.	praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, to be in command of.
fossa, -ae, f. ditch.	(Compare praeficiō, 283).
interim, adv. meanwhile.	profectiō, -ōnis, f. departure (proficiscor, 298).
occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursū- rus, to go to meet, resist.	prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi- tus (prō + pōnō, 314), to set forth, tell, offer.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. speech. <sup>1</sup>	quō, adv. whither, to which place.
orior, -īrī, ortus, to arise.	tandem, adv. at last, finally.
peditātus, -ūs, m. foot-soldiers, infantry (pedes, 291).	vēlōciter, adv. swiftly.
polliceor, -ērī, -itus, to prom- ise.	

**346** 1. Ille lēgātus, quī peditātuī praefuit, cōnstitit nōn procul ā classe, et māgnā vōce apud imperītam et egen-  
tem multitūdinem ūrātiōnem habuit. 2. Deinde quibus-  
dam prōposuit quō hostēs prōgrederentur et quot con-  
vénissent; hortābātur ut eōs cōsequerentur et ostendit  
victōriam suīs prōfutūram esse. 3. Pollicētur sē eīs mul-  
tum etiam argentum datūrum esse, quō fruantur quōque  
aedificia domōsque faciant. 4. Centuriōnem quendam  
multitūdinī praefēcit, āc iussit eum hastis pīlīisque eōs  
armāre; postquam sōl ortus est, silentiō peditātum prae-  
mittit. 5. Arbitrābātur eōs, sī vēlōciter prōgrederentur,  
exercitum cui Quīntus praeesset cōsequī posse. 6. Se-  
cundā hōrā hostēs, nūllō certō ordine profectī, effēcē-

<sup>1</sup> ūrātiōnem habēre, to make a speech.

runt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 7. Interim nōnnūllī convēnērunt et vacua ab mīlitibus aedificia esse audīvērunt; statim clāmōrem ingentem tollunt et prōgrediuntur. 8. Propter altitūdinem fossae, peditātus cui centuriō praeerat neque sequī neque revertī poterat. 9. Quaesīvit ab eīs cūr aut dē suā salūte aut dē ipsīus dīlgentiā dēspērārent. Post hanc ōratiōnem vēlōciter hosti- bus occurrērunt. 10. Tandem coniugibus hostium signisque potītī sunt et domum discessērunt nē inīquam condiciōnem experīrentur.

**347** 1. The infantry, of which Labienus was in charge, halted not far from the ditch. 2. Caesar put Labienus in charge of the infantry, which then went to meet<sup>1</sup> the army. 3. He promises that he will lead them off home, if they show themselves brave men. 4. They were able neither to advance nor to retreat, and it was of no avail to them to have found out the enemy's plans. 5. He asked them why they had not set out and gone to meet the enemy. 6. In the meantime the sun rose; he delivered a speech in which he told them where his brother had gone. 7. That their departure might not have the appearance of flight, they advanced with a shout and showed their spears. 8. If Caesar had been in charge of those troops, they would not have despaired of their lives<sup>2</sup> and returned home.

### LESSON XLIV

#### VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

**348** LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitives of **volō**, *to wish*, **nōlō**, *to be unwilling*, and **mālō**, *to prefer* (487).

<sup>1</sup> One word.

<sup>2</sup> salūs.

(a) **Nōlō** is compounded of **nē, not**, and **volō**; **mālō** of the stem of **magis, more**, and **volō**.

(b) Notice that the Present Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are the only tenses in which any irregular forms appear. None of these verbs has a Future Infinitive.

(c) These verbs are all followed by the Complementary or Object Infinitive.

## 349

## VOCABULARY

**adorior, -īrī, -ortus** (**ad + orior, 345**), *to rise up against, attack, assault.*

**alter, altera, alterum, the other of two (469).** (**Compare alius, 331.**)

**dēbeō, -ere, dēbui, dēbitus, to owe, ought.**

**ferē, adv. almost.<sup>1</sup>**

**imprōvisō, adv. suddenly, unexpectedly.**

**intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, to stop, interrupt, let pass.**

**militāris, -e, pertaining to war (miles, 142).**

**omnīnō, adv. altogether, wholly.**

**patior, -ī, passus, to suffer, allow.**

**prope, adv. and prep. with accu. near.**

**quantus, -a, -um, how great, as great as.<sup>2</sup>**

**quisque, quaeque, quidque, each one.<sup>3</sup>**

**subsidiū, -ī, n. reserve, aid.**

350 1. Centuriō, quī peditātuī praeerat, subsidium ad Caesarem mittere volēbat, sed imperitus reī militāris<sup>4</sup> erat. 2. Alium ducem peditātuī praeficere nōlēbat Caesar nē omnīnō timidis hominibus<sup>5</sup> spem salūtis tolleret. 3. Cae-

<sup>1</sup> Used chiefly with numerals and negative adjectives and adverbs; **paene, 305**, is of wider application and is found with verbs as well.

<sup>2</sup> Frequently used as a correlative with **tantus, 252**: **tantam multitūdinem interfēcērunt quantum diēī tempus est passum.** *They killed as great a number as the time allowed.*

<sup>3</sup> Declined in full, **478.**

<sup>4</sup> **rēs militāris, science of war.**

<sup>5</sup> Translate *from*.

sar cōpiās pedestrīs ā labōre revocāvit atque hostīs secūtus est quantum diēi tempus est passum, ut alterō diē māne eīs occurreret. 4. Māluit imperītum dūcem classī prae-esse quam alium in tantā difficultāte praeſici, quod hostīs imprōvīsō adorīrī voluit. 5. Arborēs māgnā altitūdine prope classem erant; caelum nūbibus occultābātur ut nostrī ab hostibus neque audīrī neque vidērī possent. 6. Cōfidēbat, sī pecūniām eīs pollicērētur, sē ab eīs im-petrātūrum esse ut domōs fīnitimōrum incenderent et sē sequerentur. 7. Nūllum ferē diem intermittēbant quīn pedestrī proeliō experīrentur quid in quōque animī esset; ac paene cotīdiē decem mīlium passuum iter facere sole-bant. 8. Nōn intellegō utrum cōnsilium probēs, neque quisquam est quī sē iūdicāre posse dīcat. 9. Nisi fossā essēmus impeditī quīn hostibus vēlociter occurriſsēmus, numquam morātī essēmus. 10. Nōn modo bonam fortū-nam spērāre dēbēs, sed etiam malam cum fortitūdine experīrī. Beātus ille, cui pauca satis sunt!

**351** 1. On the second day Caesar wished to advance swiftly, in order that he might attack the enemy unex-pectedly. 2. The soldiers allowed hardly a day to pass<sup>1</sup> without advancing many miles. 3. They preferred to do this rather than<sup>2</sup> to be defeated in battle line. 4. As long as the time of day allowed, they followed the enemy, for Caesar had promised them much money. 5. They were unwilling to leave the fleet before midnight, for fear they should be seen or heard. 6. He does not doubt that if he places another in charge of the infantry, the soldiers will despair of their lives. 7. Caesar wished to set out early the next day, in order to engage the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 350, 7.

<sup>2</sup> quam.

352

## READING EXERCISE

*The Beginning of Civil War (52-48 B. C.)*

Itaque Pompēius, postquam cōnsul sine collēgā creātus est, lēgem tulit<sup>1</sup> nē cui absentī cōnsulātum petere licēret, quā lēge plēbiscītum abrogāvit, quō paulō ante Caesari permissum erat ut absēns alterum cōnsulātum peteret; atque inimicī Caesaris senātū persuāsērunt ut ante tempus ex Galliā revocārētur. Tum Caesar suōs mīlitēs est hortātus ut imperātōrem cūius ductū<sup>2</sup> tot annīs plūrima proelia secunda fēcissent fīnīsque imperi Rōmānī auxis-sent, ab inimicīs dēfenderent, et trāns Rubicōnem, quod flūmen est inter Galliam Cisalpīnam<sup>3</sup> et Ītaliām, contēdit. Cōnsulēs senātusque omnis cum Pompeiō ex urbe et ex Ītaliā in Graeciam fūgērunt, ubi bellum contrā Caesarem parāvērunt. Is vacuā urbe aerāriōque potītus est et dictātōrem sē fēcit. Inde Hispāniās<sup>4</sup> petiit: ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs fortissimōsque cum dūcibus superāvit, sed mīlitēs omnīs incolumīs dīmīsit. Deinde postquam Massiliām expūgnāvit, Rōmam rediit<sup>5</sup> et cōnsul creātus est cum Publiō Serviliō. Mox in Graeciam pro-fectus est ut contrā Pompēium dīmicāret. Prīmō proeliō vīctus est et fugātus; sed nōn est captus quod Pompēius noctū sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre vincere āc sē effectūrum esse ut posteā numquam superārī posset.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<b>abrogō, -āre,</b> <i>to abrogate, abolish.</i>	<b>aerārium, -ī,</b> <i>n. treasury.</i>
<b>absēns,</b> <i>absent.</i>	<b>Cisalpinus, -a, -um,</b> <i>this side the Alps.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. act. of **ferō**, *to carry*; with **lēgem**, *to have a law passed.*

<sup>2</sup> *Under whose leadership.*

<sup>3</sup> Roughly that portion of northern Italy which is included in the modern Piedmont, Lombardy, and Emilia.

<sup>4</sup> Spain was at this time divided into two provinces.

<sup>5</sup> *Returned.*

<i>collēga, -ae, m.</i>	<i>colleague.</i>	<i>lēx, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>cōsulātus, -ūs, m.</i>	<i>consul-</i>	<i>nē quis, that not . . . any-</i>	<i>one (478).</i>
<i>ship.</i>		<i>noctū, adv.</i>	<i>by night.</i>
<i>creō, -āre, to elect.</i>		<i>permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</i>	
<i>dictātor, -ōris, m.</i>	<i>dictator.</i>	<i>(per + mittō), to allow, en-</i>	<i>trust.</i>
<i>dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</i>	<i>(dī + mittō), to send away.</i>	<i>plēbiscitū, -ī, n.</i>	<i>vote of the</i>
<i>ductus, -ūs, m.</i>	<i>leadership</i>	<i>people.</i>	
<i>(dux).</i>			

---

## LESSON XLV

## COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

353 LEARN the Imperatives of all the paradigms 479–486, and of *nōlō*, 487. The pres. imper. sing. of *dico*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō*<sup>1</sup> are *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*; their other imperative forms are regular.

## 354

## EXAMPLES

1. <i>Haec laudā.</i>	<i>Praise these things.</i>
2. <i>Nōlī haec laudāre.</i>	<i>Don't praise these things.</i>
3. <i>Cavē nē haec laudēs.</i>	<i>Take care not to praise these things.</i>
4. <i>Fac (vidē) nē haec laudēs.</i>	<i>See that you do not praise these things.</i>

(a) The first example illustrates the common way of expressing a Command or Request in the second person;<sup>2</sup> in the first and third persons, and sometimes in

<sup>1</sup> The full conjugation of this verb will be given later.

<sup>2</sup> The future imperative is rare, being only used in sentences stating an expected result or in formal language, laws, etc.

the second, the Hortatory or Jussive Subjunctive is used, 239.

(b) The second example illustrates the most common way of expressing a Prohibition in the second person; sometimes the imperatives *cavē*, *beware*, *fac* or *vidē*, *see to it*, followed by *nē* and the present subjunctive, are used as in 3 and 4.

(c) For prohibitions in the first and third persons, the Hortatory Subjunctive is used, 239.

**355** *Rule.*—The Imperative states the action of the verb as a Command or Request.

W. 495; B. 281; AG. 269; H. 560.

**356** *Rule.*—Prohibitions are regularly expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the Infinitive; sometimes by *cavē*, *fac* or *vidē*, with *nē* and the present subjunctive.

W. 496, 1.3; B. 276, c; AG. 269, a, 2.3; H. 561.

**357**

### VOCABULARY

<i>caveō</i> , -ēre, <i>cāvī</i> , <i>cautus</i> , <i>to be on one's guard</i> , <i>take care not.</i>	<i>incertus</i> , -a, -um (in + <i>certus</i> , 192), <i>uncertain.</i>
<i>complūrēs</i> , -ia or -a (gen. -ium), <i>several.</i>	<i>instituō</i> , -ere, -ui, -ūtus, <i>to begin.</i>
<i>cōnficiō</i> , -ere, -fēci, -fectus (con + <i>faciō</i> , 272), <i>to complete, finish, weaken.</i>	<i>mercātor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>trader.</i>
<i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, <i>tired out.</i>	<i>opus</i> , -eris, n. <i>work.</i>
<i>excitō</i> , -āre, <i>to arouse.</i>	<i>quamquam</i> , conj. <i>although, and yet.</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>facultās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>opportunity.</i>	<i>quidem</i> , adv. <i>at least, in fact, etc.</i>
	<i>voluntās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>will, wish.</i>

**358** 1. *Habētis*, *militēs*, *facultātem* *quam voluistis*; *inīquō locō et imprōvīsō adorīminī hostīs*, *nōlīte cēdere*. 2. *Nōlīte ūnam quidem hōram opus intermittere*; *dūcem ipsum audīre haec et vidēre existimāte*; *subsidiū mit-*

<sup>1</sup> Used with the Indicative,

tite. 3. Vidēte nē locō cēdātis; multam vōbīs pecūniām prōpōnō et hanc mē vōbīs datūrum esse polliceor, sī hostīs cōsequāminī. 4. Opus cōficiāmus; tēla, hastās pilaque, expediāmus; īsignis erit vōbīs glōria, si hostīs premētis. 5. Cōnstitērunt mīlitēs et ad opus discessērunt; quisque alterō diē cōgnōscere voluit quō hostēs sē recēpissent. 6. “Arborēs portāte ut castra mūniātis.” Hāc ūrātiōne mōti militēs, quamquam dēfessī erant, sē ex quiēte excitāvērunt et opus īstituērunt. 7. Aliae<sup>1</sup> gentēs equīs māgnoperē dēlectantur, aliae eōs sacrōs habent; ad hanc gentem ab mercātōribus portantur. 8. Germānī complūrēs annōs ā Suēbīs premēbantur; hī nihil omnīnō contrā suam voluntātem facere solēbant. 9. Cavē nē exīstīmēs eōs domum reversūrōs esse; spērō et cōfidō eōs revertisse, sed incertum est. 10. Nōn imperītī reī mīlitāris sunt; paene cotidiānīs proeliīs contendere mālēbant quam pāce fruī.

**359** 1. Halt, soldiers, and pitch camp ; see that the enemy do not attack you unexpectedly. 2. Do not desist from the work ; believe that Caesar sees all that you do. 3. The opportunity that you desired is here ; be brave men ; fight as long as the time of day will allow.<sup>2</sup> 4. It was uncertain which of the two plans Caesar approved ; but the soldiers preferred to fight. 5. Although they were tired, they set to work as soon as the sun had risen. 6. They were nearly all aroused by this speech, nor was there anyone who did not wish to meet the enemy. 7. They never did anything which they did not wish to do;<sup>3</sup> still they were skilled in military matters. 8. They asked the traders, of whom there were several present, what they brought.

<sup>1</sup> *aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.*

<sup>2</sup> Compare 350, 3.

<sup>3</sup> *voluntās*; compare 358, 8.

LESSON XLVI  
THE VERBS EŌ AND FIŌ

eō, īre, (īvī) ii, itūrus, *to go.*

360 LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) The stem is -i- ; this appears as -e- in the forms eō, eunt, euntō, and in the present subjunctive throughout.

fiō, fierī, factus, *to be made, become.*

361 Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) Notice that the i is long except in the form fit and when followed by -er.

(b) Fiō is the passive of faciō ; but compounds of faciō which, like efficiō, change the a to i have regular passives, e. g., efficiar, effici, effectus.

362

## VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. and f.	noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, <i>to harm.<sup>2</sup></i>
<i>young man or woman.</i>	
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-	noctū, adv. <i>by night (nox).</i>
tus (circum + veniō, 276),	nōndum, adv. <i>not yet.</i>
<i>to surround.</i>	opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
coepī, -isse, coeptus, <i>to be-</i>	sus (ob + premō, 291), <i>to</i>
<i>gin.<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>overwhelm.</i>
ēdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus (ē +	permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus
dūcō, 264), <i>to lead forth.</i>	(per + mittō, 260), <i>to yield,</i>
expeditus, -a, -um, <i>lightly</i>	<i>surrender, permit.</i>
<i>burdened, unincumbered</i>	prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessūrus
(expediō, 283).	(prō + cēdō, 338), <i>to ad-</i>
latus, -eris, n. <i>side, flank.</i>	<i>vance.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere.

<sup>2</sup> Used with the dative.

**363** 1. Eōsdem quōs in fugā esse arbitrābantur, ad sē īre vīdērunt; itaque ipsī fugere coepērunt. 2. Fiēbat ut clāmor post tergum tollerētūr. Tum undique convēnērunt hostēs et nostrōs ab latere sinistrō adortī, circumvēnērunt. 3. Interim adulēscētem quendam praemīsit, quī eōs māgnoperē hortārētūr nē longius tālī tempore prōcēderent. 4. Sōl iam ortus erat, sed eī quī, ut hostīs opprimerent, trāns fossam ierant, nōndum reverterant. 5. Nōlite fugā salūtem petere; prīmū cōsistite, deinde contrā hostīs vēlōciter īte; sīc spērō vōs servārī posse. 6. Etsī propter altitūdinē flūminis erat summa difficultās, tamen cōpiās pedestrīs noctū trādūcere coepit. 7. Caesar postquam quid ā quōque fierī velit ostendit, legiōnēs expeditās ēdūcit; statim sē suaque omnia potestātī ēiū permīsērunt hostēs. 8. Haec ad sē portārī ab mercātōribus Germānī nōn patiuntur, quod ea sibi nocēre exīstīmant. 9. Únā nocte Germānī eōs vulneribus dolōreque cōfēctōs adortī omnīs oppressērunt. 10. Hīc est Gallōrum mōs, ut mercātōrēs, etiam invītōs, cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit, quaerant.

**364** 1. Caesar ordered them first to make camp, then to go against the enemy. 2. He showed what he wished to be done by each man, that they might not be surrounded and attacked on all sides. 3. Finish the work which you have begun; do not surrender yourselves and all your possessions to them. 4. The Germans thought that many things which the traders brought injured them. 5. Therefore some tribes did not allow the traders to go to them, but used what they themselves had. 6. The storming of the town was so difficult for the right flank that nearly everybody was killed. 7. They would have begun to march early, if there had not been the greatest difficulty on account of their baggage.

365

## READING EXERCISE

*The Civil Wars (continued)*

Deinde in Thessaliā ad<sup>1</sup> Pharsālum ingentibus cōpiis diū dīmicātum est. Postrēmō vīctus est Pompēius: ipse fugātus<sup>2</sup> Alexandrēam petiit ut ā rēge Aegyptī acci-peret auxilia. Sed hīc fortūnam magis quam amīcitiam secūtus<sup>3</sup> occīdit Pompēium et caput ēius ad Caesarem mīsit; quī, ubi caput tantī virī et generī quondam suī vīdit, etiam lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur.

Mox Caesar Alexandrēam<sup>4</sup> vēnit. Ipsum quoque Ptolemaeus conātus est interficere; itaque rēgī bellum illā-tum est,<sup>5</sup> quī vīctus in Nilō moritur. Caesar Alexandrēā potītus,<sup>3</sup> rēgnū Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōrī. Deinde Pharnacem quī ad Pompēium in Graeciam auxi-lium miserat, aciē vīcit; posteā ad mortem eum coēgit. Postquam Rōmam revertit, sē cōnsulem cum Lepidō col-lēgā fēcit. Deinde in Africam profectus,<sup>3</sup> suōs inimīcōs post multa proelia superāvit. Ubi Catō, quī nōn longē ab urbe Uticā castra posuerat, certior est factus de vī-tōriīs ēius, mortem sibi cōscīvit.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam revertit ubi quartō sē cōn-sulem fēcit. Eī tamen quiēte fruī nōn licuit: statim in Hispāniās est profectus, quod ibi Pompēi filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum parāverant. Multa proelia secūta sunt quōrum ultimum ad Mundam erat. In hōc proeliō Caesar paene vīctus est ut sē voluerit occīdere nē post tantam reī mīlitāris glōriam in potestātem inimicōrum

<sup>1</sup> Near.

<sup>2</sup> Perf. pass. partic. agreeing with **ipse**.

<sup>3</sup> Observe that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

<sup>4</sup> See 236, 10.

<sup>5</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of **Inferō**, an irregular verb which is treated in Lesson LI; translate, *was brought on*.

vēnerit; dēnique suōs in aciem redūxit vīctique hostīs.  
Ex Pompēi filiīs māior<sup>1</sup> occīsus est, minor fūgit.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

cōsciscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus,	gener, -erī, m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
<i>to determine; with mor-</i>	glōria, -ae, f.	<i>glory.</i>
tem sibi, <i>to commit sui-</i>	lacrima, -ae, f.	<i>tear.</i>
<i>cide.</i>	postrēmō, adv.	<i>finally.</i>
fortūna, -ae, f.	quartō, adv.	<i>for the fourth</i>
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, <i>to</i>		<i>time.</i>
<i>pour out.</i>	soror, -ōris, f.	<i>sister.</i>

## LESSON XLVII

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

366

EXAMPLES

1. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.  
*After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*
2. Ubi parāti sunt, oppida sua incendērunt.  
*When they were prepared, they set their towns on fire.*
3. Cum prīnum potuit, ad exercitum contendit.  
*As soon as he could, he hurried to the army.*

(a) The pupil will remember that similar sentences have been used frequently in the preceding lessons. Such temporal clauses usually refer to a single past action and take the Perfect Indicative.

**Rule.**—*Postquam, after, ubi, ut, when, cum prīnum, ubi prīnum, simul atque (simul āc), as soon as, when referring to a single past action, are used with the Perfect Indicative.*

W. 530, 531; B. 287; AG. 324; H. 602.

<sup>1</sup> māior is often used to mean *the elder*; **minor**, *the younger*. Compare māiorēs, *ancestors*.

367

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM<sup>1</sup>

## EXAMPLES

1. **Oppidum nōn antequam tēla deerant expūgnātum est.**  
*The town was not taken until arms failed.*
2. **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervē-nērunt.**  
*They did not stop fleeing until they reached the river.*
3. **Caesar priusquam haec faciat, castra oppūgnābit.**  
*Before Caesar does (shall do) this, he will storm the camp.*
4. **Priusquam id effici posset, Rōmānī aderant.**  
*The Romans were there before that could be done.*

(a) Notice that in the first two sentences the clauses introduced by **antequam** and **priusquam** express an actual fact and have the Indicative; but in sentences 3 and 4 the clauses express an act as anticipated and have the Subjunctive.

368     **Rule.**—**Antequam** and **priusquam** are used with the Indicative to express an actual fact; with the Subjunctive to express an act as anticipated.

W. 534; B. 291, 292; AG. 327; H. 605.

369

## CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY DUM

## EXAMPLES

1. **Dum haec geruntur, ad flūmen contendērunt.**  
*While this was being done, they hurried to the river.*
2. **Dum erat facultās, abibant.**  
*So long as there was a chance, they went away.*

---

<sup>1</sup> **Antequam** and **priusquam** are compounded of the adverbs **ante**, **prius**, and the conjunction **quam**; they are often separated: **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**; as in sentence 2.

3. **Caesar exspectat dum nāvēs conveniant.**  
*Caesar is waiting until the ships (shall) assemble.*

4. **Caesar nōn exspectāvit dum Helvētii pervenirent.**  
*Caesar did not wait until the Helvetii should arrive.*

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 **dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative expressing a continued action in past time. The Present is used, as the clause expresses something which was going on at the same time with the action of the principal verb; but we translate by the past.

(b) When, as in sentence 2, **dum** means *so long as*, any tense of the Indicative may be used.

(c) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 **dum**, *until*, introduces clauses of expected action and that the Subjunctive is used.<sup>1</sup>

**370 Rule.**—**Dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative; **dum**, *so long as*, with any tense of the Indicative; but **dum**, *until*, introducing a clause of expected action, is used with the Subjunctive.

W. 523; B. 293; AG. 328; H. 603.

### 371

### VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (ab + eō, 360), <i>to go away.</i>	interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, <i>to cut off.</i>
compleō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētus, <i>to fill, cover.</i>	poscō, -ere, poposcī (poscitūrus), <i>to demand.</i>
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (cum + cēdō, 338), <i>to yield.</i>	prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -visus (prō + videō, 229), <i>to provide.</i>
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. <i>sally.</i>	trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (trāns + eo, 360), <i>to cross.</i>
extrā, prep. <i>outside of.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes **dum**, *until*, introduces an actual event; it is then used with the Indicative: **exspectāvērunt dum pervēnit.** *They waited until he arrived (not for him to arrive).*

**372** 1. Cum primum facultas data est, copias eduxit et montem militibus complere coepit. 2. Non prius eum abire patiuntur quam ab eo concessum sit, ut hostibus altero die occurrerent. 3. Non prius ille vacuus a militibus relictus est locus quam eruptio est facta. 4. Dum adulcentes longius procedunt, hostes qui undique convenierunt eruptiōem fecerunt et eos castris interclusērunt. 5. Dum tempus noctis patiebatur, quiete per herbam fruēbantur. Ubi sol ortus est, abiabant, atque eo die multa milia passuum procedebant. 6. Dixit eos ipsos quidem non debere dubitare, quin hostes progredi extrā agmen auderent. 7. Exspectavit dum omnes undique convenirent; antequam abiaret, quid in tantā difficultate vellet, imperavit. 8. In eiusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia prōvidēri poterat, sapienter prōvidebatur. Signum profectionis datum est priusquam hostes domum discederent. 9. Priusquam ei certiores fierent, obsides poposcit, atque postquam hī traditi sunt, flumen transiit. 10. Nihil erat quod se virtute non efficere posse putarent, nec prius sequi dēstiterunt quam muro portisque adpropinquavērunt.

**373** 1. So long as the night allowed, they advanced; but they did not arrive before the sun rose. 2. As soon as they arrived, he began to lead forth his troops and to cross the river. 3. He brought all his legions together into one place, before the Gauls could be informed of his arrival. 4. The enemy waited until he should cover the hill with men, before they made an attack. 5. While the soldiers were pitching and fortifying the camp, the young men made a sally. 6. There was no provision<sup>1</sup> that was not made, and they thought that with courage they could do everything. 7. Do not stop advancing until you arrive near the wall and the gates of the city. 8. After

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare 372, 8.

the hostages had been handed over, Caesar departed and the tired soldiers dispersed to their homes.

---

## LESSON XLVIII

## CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CUM

## CUM TEMPORAL

374

## EXAMPLES

1. **Tēcum videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō.**  
*I seem to be with you when I read your letter.*
2. **Tum erās cōnsul cum meām domūm incendēbant.**  
*You were consul at the time when they set my house on fire.*
3. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, p̄incipēs erant Haedui.**  
*At the time Caesar entered Gaul, the Haedui were the leaders.*

(a) Notice that these clauses introduced by **cum**, like those in **366**, fix or determine the time which is meant, and have the Indicative. Often the independent part of the sentence contains **tum**, **eō tempore**, *then, at that time*, or a similar expression. Compare these clauses with defining Relative Clauses **281, b**, remembering that **cum** is itself a relative.

## CUM CIRCUMSTANTIAL

375

## EXAMPLES

1. **Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, sē in montem recēpērunt.**  
*Being unable to (when they could not) withstand the charges of our soldiers any longer, they withdrew to the mountain.*

2. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.

*When this had been reported to Caesar, he hurried into further Gaul.*

3. His cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs misérunt.

*Being unable to (since they could not) persuade these, they sent envoys.*

4. Cum diū pūgnātum sit, hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

*While (although) the battle lasted a long time, no one could see an enemy.*

(a) Notice that all these clauses introduced by **cum** express not the time so much as the situation or the circumstances, under which the action denoted by the principal verb took place, and have the Subjunctive. If the Indicative had been used in 1 and 2, **cum . . . nōn pote-rant**; **cum . . . nūntiātum erat**, to give the full meaning we should have had to translate: *It was when they could not*; *It was when report had been made*, etc.

(b) In English we use either a participial clause, as in the translation of 1 and 3, or a relative *when*, *as*, etc., to express the same relation. Such clauses in English may express simply the circumstances or they may be causal or concessive: e. g., “*Being in town, I saw him*,” may tell nothing but the circumstances under which I saw him; but it may also mean, “*Because I was in town, I saw him*”; or even “*Although I was in town, I saw him*.<sup>1</sup>” Exactly so in Latin, circumstantial clauses with **cum** and the Subjunctive may express Cause as in 3, or Concession as in 4.

376     **Rule.**—**Cum** is used with the Indicative to determine the particular time of an action; with the Subjunctive to state the situation or circumstances of an action; such clauses may also express Cause or Concession.

W. 535, 536, 542, 571; B. 288, 289, 309. 3; AG. 325, 326; H. 598, 600, 601.

377

## VOCABULARY

dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (dē + faciō, 272), *to fail, be wanting.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, *to arrange, draw up.*

legō, -ere, lēgi, lectus, *to read.*

littera, -ae, f. *letter* (of the alphabet), plur. *letter* (epistle).

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification* (mūniō, 291).

nāscor, nāsci, nātus, *to be born, arise.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, *of the night, by night* (nox, 177).

perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (per + faciō, 272), *to finish.*

prōdūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctus (prō + dūcō, 264), *to lead forth.*

propinquus, -a, -um, *neighboring; as a substantive, relative.*

378 1. Caesar, cum suōs inīquō locō pūgnātūrōs esse exīstīmāret, eōs ē castrīs ēdūcere et ab<sup>1</sup> dextrō latere hostium cōnstituere coepit. 2. Dum illī dē condicōnibus inter sē agunt,<sup>2</sup> litterās ad lēgātum mīsit nē animō dēficeret. 3. Cum vir īsignī locō nātus mortuus est, propinquī conveniunt ut de morte ēius quaerant. 4. Nōlīte vōs potestātī eōrum permittere; omnia prius experiantur quam illud cōnsilium probētis. 5. Cum ipse centuriō vulneribus aetāteque cōnfectus esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat. 6. Eō tempore cum ēruptiō facta est, labōre vulneribusqne cōnfēctī hostīs circumveniēbātis et ā castrīs interclūdēbātis. 7. Cum mili-tēs summō studiō sīgnū poscerent, cōpiās prōdūcī aciemque īstruī iussit. 8. Antequam suis persuadēre posset ut extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēderent, hostēs fossam trānsierant. 9. Labōre operis quod nōndum perfectum est defessī, simulque adventū hostium perterritī, neque ēruptiōnem facere neque aciem īstruere audēbant.

<sup>1</sup> Giving the direction; translate *on*.

<sup>2</sup> Often, as here, *to discuss, treat.*

10. Ubi litterās Caesaris lēgit, cōpiās expedītās ēdūcī et incertīs itineribus noctū ad eum īre iussit.

**379** 1. When he arrived at the camp, he learned that the neighboring tribes were in arms. 2. Since not only courage but also weapons now failed our men,<sup>1</sup> the centurion ordered them to withdraw. 3. Although they were tired out by the long march, they did not stop<sup>2</sup> working day or night. 4. The enemy filled up the ditch before Caesar's soldiers knew what was being done. 5. At the very time when that sally took place, we were crossing the river. 6. Inasmuch as the fortifications had not yet been finished, he sent a letter to Caesar for aid.<sup>3</sup> 7. While this was happening in Gaul, Caesar was arming the young men. 8. As soon as he had read the letter, he went to the other camp, of which his brother was in charge. 9. Being unable to persuade the soldiers to fight, he ordered them to withdraw within<sup>4</sup> the fortifications.

**380**

## READING EXERCISE

*The Assassination of Caesar 44 B. C.*

Iam omnia bella cīvilia tōtō orbe<sup>5</sup> terrārum compo-suerat ut Rōmam revertī posset. Cum plūrimi māximi-que honōrēs ā senātū dēcrētī essent, inter quōs ut<sup>6</sup> pater patriae appellārētur āc dictātor perpetuus esset, cīvēs eī<sup>7</sup> īrātī esse coepérunt quod honōrēs, qui ā populō anteā dēcernēbantur, dabat eīs quibus voluit, et senātuī,<sup>8</sup> qui eī tantōs honōrēs dederat, nōn adsurgēbat aliaque paene rēgia īsolentius faciēbat; sed cum populus eum rēgem appellāvisset, respondit *Caesarem sē, nōn rēgem esse*, et cum ā cōnsule Antōniō diadēma saepius capitī<sup>8</sup> admōtum

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> **intermittō.** Compare 358, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Use a purpose clause.

<sup>4</sup> **In** with the accu.      <sup>5</sup> Abl. of place.

<sup>6</sup> **ut . . . appellārētur**, etc., a substantive clause depending on **dēcretī** essent.

<sup>7</sup> Dative.

<sup>8</sup> Dat. depending on a compound verb, 344.

esset, reppulit atque in templum Iovis mīsit. Contrā eum multī senātōrēs equitēsque coniūrāvērunt. Prīncipēs inter coniūrātōs fuērunt duō Brūtī, Marcus et Decius, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī prīmus cōnsul fuerat et rēgēs ex-pulerat, Cāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ab hīs Caesār cum inter cēterōs<sup>1</sup> vēnisset in cūriam, multīs vulneribus occīsus est; deinde Capitōlium occupātum est. Cum oblīviō caedis ēius ā senātū dēcrēta esset atque obsidēs acceptī essent, coniūrātī ā Capitōliō dēscendērunt. Testāmentō Caesāris inter hērēdēs īstitūtus et in nōmēn adoptātus est Cāius Octavius, sorōris nepōs; populō Rōmānō hortī trāns Tiberim datī sunt. Corpus Caesāris, cum in campum Martiūm portārētur, ā plebe ante rōstra<sup>2</sup> cremātum est.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<b>admoveō</b> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,	<b>duo</b> , <i>two.</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>to bring near.</i>	<b>hērēs</b> , -ēdis, m. <i>heir.</i>
<b>adoptō</b> , -āre, <i>to adopt.</i>	<b>insolenter</b> , adv. <i>haughtily.</i>
<b>adsurgō</b> , -ere, -surrēxī, -sur-	<b>īrātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>angry.</i>
<i>rēctus, to rise before.</i>	<b>nepōs</b> , -ōtis, m. <i>grandson.</i>
<b>Capitōlium</b> , -ī, n. <i>the capitol.</i>	<b>oblīviō</b> , -ōnis, f. <i>pardon.</i>
<b>cīvilis</b> , -e, <i>civil.</i>	<b>orbis</b> , -is, m. <i>circle;</i> <b>orbis</b>
<b>compōnō</b> , -ere, -posuī, -positus,	<i>terrārum, the world.</i>
<i>to settle, finish.</i>	<b>perpetuu</b> s, -a, -um, <i>perpetual,</i>
<b>coniūrātus</b> , -ī, m. <i>conspira-</i>	<i>permanent.</i>
<i>tor.</i>	<b>repellō</b> , -ere, <b>reppulī</b> , -pulsus,
<b>cūria</b> , -ae, f. <i>senate-house.</i>	<i>to put away, refuse.</i>
<b>dēcernō</b> , -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,	<b>rōstra</b> , -ōrum, n. <i>rostra, plat-</i>
<i>to vote, decree.</i>	<i>form (for speakers).</i>
<b>diadēma</b> , -atis, n. <i>crown.</i>	<b>soror</b> , -ōris, f. <i>sister.</i>
<b>dictātor</b> , -ōris, m. <i>dictator.</i>	<b>testāmentum</b> , -ī, n. <i>will.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Supply *senātōrēs.*<sup>2</sup> So called because it was adorned with the rams (*rōstra*) of captured ships. A temple was afterward built at the spot where Caesar's body was burned.<sup>3</sup> The declension will be given later.

LESSON XLIX  
CAUSE AND CONCESSION

## CAUSE

**381** ONE of the most common ways of expressing cause is by *cum* and the Subjunctive, 376; other particles are *quod*, which has already been used, 264, *quia*, and *quoniam*, *because*, *since*.

**382** EXAMPLES

1. **Quod mōns aberat mille passūs, eō sē recēpērunt.**

*Because the mountain was a mile away, they withdrew to it.*

2. **Quia haec fierī nōn posse intellegēbant.**

*Because they understood that this could not be done.*

3. **Quoniam mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vōs quidem dēfendam.**

*Since I cannot save myself and you, I will defend you at least.*

4. **Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod iūstus esset.**

*Aristides was driven from his native land, because (as people said) he was just.*

(a) Notice that in sentences 1–3 the causal clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* and the Indicative state the reasons as those of the writer or speaker, while in 4, where the reason of some one else is reported, the Subjunctive is used. Such a Subjunctive is really in Indirect Discourse, as the implied quotation shows.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Naturally when a verb of saying or thinking is expressed, all causal clauses, being subordinate, must have the Subjunctive.

**383** *Rule.*—*Quod, quia, quoniam, because, since*, are used with the Indicative to give the reason of the speaker or writer; with the Subjunctive to give the reason of some one else.

W. 544–546, B. 286; AG. 321; H. 588.

#### CONCESSION

**384** Two of the common ways of expressing concession are by *cum* with the Subjunctive, 376, and by *etsi*, *even if*, usually with the Indicative, 314. Another common way is by *quamquam* with the Indicative, 357.

W. 570; B. 309, 2; AG. 313, e; H. 586.

**385**

#### VOCABULARY

<i>accēdō</i> , -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō, 338), to approach.	<i>incolō</i> , -ere, -ui, —, to dwell, inhabit.
<i>autem</i> , conj. but, however, moreover.	<i>ineō</i> , -ire, -ii, -itūrus (in + eō, 360), to enter, enter upon.
<i>cāsus</i> , -ūs, m. chance, occurrence.	<i>lacessō</i> , -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to provoke, challenge, harass.
<i>cōnsulō</i> , -ere, -ui, -tus, to have regard for, care for, consult. <sup>1</sup>	<i>postrīdiē</i> , adv. (posterus + diēs), on the next day.
<i>ēgredior</i> , -i, -gressus, to go forth.	<i>priḍiē</i> , adv. (prior + diēs), on the preceding day.
<i>eō</i> , adv. thither, to that place (is).	<i>reperiō</i> , -ire, repperī, reper-tus, to find.
<i>frūstrā</i> , adv. to no purpose.	

**386** 1. Ea quae anteā postulāvistis, fierī licet, quoniam propius accessistis mūnītiōnēsque nostrās circumvēnistis.

---

<sup>1</sup> *hunc cōsulere*, to ask this man's advice; *huic cōsulere*, to look out for this man's interest.

2. Cum virī complūribus pūgnīs dēfessī essent atque tēla eōs dēficerent, nē noctū quidem hostīs lacessere dēstitērunt. 3. Quia locum magis idōneum reperīre nōn poterat, postridiē montem militib⁹ expeditīs complēre hostīs que interclūdere īstituit. 4. Cum pridiē frūstrā hostīs lacessīvisset, novam bellī ratiōnem iniit ut ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia parāret. 5. Iī qui ea loca incolēbant ē finibus suis ēgressī sunt, quod frūmentum deesset; itaque Caesar eō contendit. 6. Petivērunt, quoniam nūllā ratiōne amicīs cōsulere possent, ut sibi ēius voluntāte ē cīvitāte ēgredī licēret. 7. Qui nāvibus praeeerat, adulēscēns erat et rei mīlitāris imperitus; quod postridiē ventum secundum nactus est, prōgrediēbātur. 8. Cum hostēs aut ex rīpā aut paulum in aquam prōgressī pūgnārent, nostrōs celeriter oppressērunt. 9. Caesar autem, cum lēgātī cōsilium probāret et ipse idem sentīret, nūllā ratiōne id facere poterat. 10. Imperātor, quod nūllum ēiusmodī cāsum exspectābat, suōs etsī omnibus malīs dēfessī erant, aequum in locum prōdūxit et aciem īstrūxit.

387

1. Inasmuch as we can not look out for our friends' interests, we beg to be allowed to leave the city. 2. Although the soldiers were tired with their work, they did not stop provoking the enemy. 3. Caesar determined to enter upon a new method of fighting, because on the previous day he had challenged the enemy to no purpose. 4. They begged Caesar to care for their friends because, as they said,<sup>1</sup> they could not care for them themselves. 5. Caesar determined to go to England; when he arrived there, he proceeded<sup>2</sup> to make provision against all chances. 6. Those who dwelt in England at the time when Caesar arrived there were barbarians. 7. The Britons could not conquer the Romans because they were not so experienced in warfare.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 382, 4.<sup>2</sup> Use īstituō.

LESSON L  
PARTICIPLES

**388** LEARN the Present Active and the Perfect Passive Participles of the Model Verbs, 479–489.

**389** Participles are adjectives in form and agreement; for the declension of the Present Active see 468; the Perfect Passive is declined like **bonus**, 467. In force they are verbs, having the same constructions as the verbs to which they belong.

**390** EXAMPLES

1. **Fortissimē pūgnāns interfectus est.**

*He was killed while fighting most bravely.*

2. **Gallia est omnis dīvisa.**

*Gaul is divided as a whole.*

3. **Ducem vulnerātum servāvit.**

*He saved the wounded leader (or the leader who was wounded).*

4. **Auctōritātē rēgis permōtī, cōstituērunt exīre.**

*Moved by the influence of the king, they decided to go out.*

5. **Cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta, ē fīnibus exīre conābātur.**

*When the state was aroused (the state having been aroused) on account of this, it attempted to leave its territory.*

(a) Notice in sentence 1 that the present participle represents the action as going on at the time indicated by the verb.

(b) The perfect participle with **sum** may become

nothing more than a predicate adjective, as in 2; but its most common use is to express an action as finished before the time of the main verb, as in 3, 4, and 5.

(c) Notice also that the participles in 4 and 5 may express time, cause, concession, etc., according to the context in which the sentences are found. Therefore, we may best translate by *when*, *because*, *although*, etc., or by a verb coordinate with the main verb, e. g., "They were moved by the influence of the king and decided," etc.

## 391

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Caesare dūce oppidum expūgnāvērunt.**

*Under the leadership of Caesar they stormed the town.*

2. **Caelē serēnō sōl ortus est.**

*The sun rose in a clear sky.*

3. **Gnaeō Pompēiō, Marcō Crassō cōnsulibus Germānī Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**

*In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus (or When Pompey and Crassus were consuls) the Germans crossed the Rhine.*

4. **Germānī clāmōre auditō fūgērunt.**

*The Germans fled on hearing the shout.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences two nouns, a noun and an adjective, or a noun and a participle are used in the Ablative to express some circumstance attendant on the action of the main verb; this Ablative may also express time, as it clearly does in 3, or cause, as in 4. These same ideas might all be expressed by *cum*-clauses.

(b) Notice further that this ablative has no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence; it is therefore called the *Ablative Absolute*.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> While we sometimes employ in English such phrases as "Caesar being leader," "The shout having been heard," these expressions are

**392 Rule.**—A noun or pronoun with another noun, an adjective or participle may be used in the Ablative to express the circumstances, time, or cause of an action.

W. 397–399; B. 227; AG. 255; H. 489.

**393**

### VOCABULARY

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō, 264), to in- duce.	oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. v. <i>it is proper, one ought.</i>
beneficiū, -ī, n. (bene + faciō), <i>kindness, service.</i>	permovereō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (per + moveō, 245), <i>to move deeply, to induce.</i>
Cassivelaunus, -ī, m. <i>Cassi- velaunus.</i>	pertineō, -ēre, -uī —, (per + teneō, 227), <i>to pertain to, to reach.</i>
commūnis, -e, adj. <i>common.</i>	queror, -ī, <i>questus, to com- plain.</i>
dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus, to divide.	trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (trāns + eō, 360), <i>to cross.</i>
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ex + eō, 360), <i>to go forth.</i>	ūsus, -ūs, m. <i>use, need</i> (ūtor, 298).
iugum, -ī, n. <i>yoke, ridge</i> (of mountains).	uterque, -traque, -trumque, <i>each (of two).<sup>1</sup></i>
maritimus, -a, -um, adj., <i>be- longing to the sea, sea (mare, 162).</i>	

**394**

1. Britannī, nostrō adventū permōtī, suae salūtī cōnsulere et ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia prōvidēre īstituērunt.
2. Omnibus rēbus parātis, quae ad ūsum nāvium perti-  
nent, Caesar postridē in Britanniam trānsiit.
3. Imperiō bellī Cassivelaunō permissō, Britannī cum commūnī cōn-  
siliō noctū convēnissent, postridie nostrōs proeliō lacessere

often awkward, and such phrases as those used in the translations given are generally to be preferred. Compare with the Latin construction the English Nominative Absolute. It should be remembered that the English has a Perfect Active Participle, "having made," etc., but that the Latin has none, save in Deponent Verbs.

<sup>1</sup> Declined like **uter**, 272, 469.

coepérunt. 4. Nostrī, ab utrōque latere hostīs abortī,<sup>1</sup> eōs gladiōs ēducere cōnātīs atque vix sē dēfēndēntīs opprēsērunt. 5. Cassivelaunō dūce Britannī ā Caesare superātī sunt; fīnēs illīus ā maritimīs cīvitātib⁹ māgnō flūmine dīvīsī sunt. 6. Inopiā omnīum rērum adductī, quod frūmentū in agrīs esse repperērunt nūllūm, ē fīnībus noctū clam exīre īstituērunt. 7. Quoniam ad hunc locū per-ventū est, dē Britanniae mōrib⁹, quid sentiam quidque cognōverim prōpōnere oportet. 8. Tandem Britannī ab dextrō latere summū iugū nactī, hostīs locō expellunt; fugientīs ad flūmen sequuntur complūrīsque interficiunt. 9. Conciliō dīmissō, Haeduīs dē iniuriīs querentib⁹ pētentib⁹ usque ut sē beneficīo<sup>2</sup> dīgnōs habēret, libertātem concessit. 10. Interim dīmissīs circum omnia oppida lit-terīs iīsque ab oppidānīs lectīs, barbarī dē suīs fortūnīs dēspērāvērunt.

**395** 1. Induced by the hope of plunder, they left the ships and marched out by night. 2. Having found the enemy on the top of the ridge, they drove them away and killed nearly all as they fled. 3. This done, they set forth and reached the ships before the sun rose. 4. Caesar crossed into Britain when Pompey and Crasso were consuls; when he arrived Cassivelaunus was the chief man there. 5. He left several cohorts on the shore<sup>3</sup> and proceeded into the interior of the country.<sup>4</sup> 6. When the prisoners begged that he would not kill them, he granted them their liberty. 7. Caesar did not pursue the fleeing enemy farther, because he wished to finish the fortifications before night.

<sup>1</sup> Remember that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Abl. with **dīgnōs**, *worthy of*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *near the sea*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate, *into the interior parts*.

## READING EXERCISE

*The Destruction of the Conspirators*

**396** Populus Rōmānus Pompēiō et Caesare interfectis redisse<sup>1</sup> in libertātem vidēbātur; et redisset,<sup>2</sup> nisi Caesar hērēdem scripsisset Gāium Octāvium, quī posteā Augustus Caesar est appellātus, eumque filium adoptāvisset. Haec prīma cīvilium bellōrum causa erat cum<sup>3</sup> Antōnius, irātus quod praelātus<sup>4</sup> sibi esset iuvenis Octāvius, eum opprimere vellet. Sed Antōnius ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est et Caesar Octāviānus<sup>5</sup> iūssus est cum cōnsulibus dēsig-nātīs Hirtiō et Pānsā bellum contrā eum gerere. Hī dūcēs profectī eum ad<sup>6</sup> Mutinām vīcērunt. Ēvēnit tamen ut vīctōrēs cōnsulēs ambō occīsī sint; unde factum est ut trēs exercitūs unī iuvenī Octāviānō pārērent. Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū ad Lepidum pervēnit quī tum prōvinciās Galliae cum plūrimīs cōpiīs habēbat. Mox Lepidō adiuvante Caesar cum Antōniō pācem fēcit et Rōmam<sup>7</sup> cum exercitū reversus effēcit ut sibi annum vīcēsimū agentī<sup>8</sup> cōsulātus darētur. Cum sociīs Antōniō et Lepidō rem pūblicam armīs tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō ḫrātor occīsus est multīque aliī nōbilēs.

Intereā Brūtus et Cassius ingēns bellum mōvērunt. Contrā eōs igitur profectī Octāviānus et Antōnius (relictus enim erat Lepidus ut Italiam dēfenderet) ad<sup>6</sup> Philip-pōs, Macedoniae urbem, pūgnāvērunt. Cum prīmō proeliō vīctī essent Antōnius et Caesar, tamen interfectus est

<sup>1</sup> A shorter form for rediisse.

<sup>2</sup> What kind of condition?

<sup>3</sup> The clause *eum . . . vellet* is in predicate apposition to **haec prīma causa**.

<sup>4</sup> **praelātus esset**, plup. subj. pass. of **praeferō**, *to prefer*.

<sup>5</sup> The form of name which Octavius assumed after his adoption.

<sup>6</sup> With names of towns, *near*.

<sup>7</sup> Compare **236**, 10.

<sup>8</sup> **annum agere**, *to spend a year*; translate here, *in his*, etc.

Cassius; secundō Brūtum et plūrimōs nōbilis quī cum illis bellum gesserant, vīctōs interfēcērunt. Ac sīc inter dūcēs dīvisa est rēs pūblica ut Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Ītaliāmque tenēret, Antōnius Asiam et Orientem, Lepidus Africam acciperet.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<i>adoptō, -āre, to adopt.</i>	<i>īrātus, -a, -um, angry.</i>
<i>civilis, -e, civil (cīvis).</i>	<i>nōbilis, -e, well known, noble.</i>
<i>cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. consul- ship (cōnsul).</i>	<i>Oriēns, -ntis, m. the Orient, East.</i>
<i>dēsignātus, -a, -um, elect.</i>	<i>pāreō, -ēre, pārui, —, to obey.</i>
<i>ēveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūrus (ē + veniō), to turn out; often impersonal with a substantive clause as its subject.</i>	<i>redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō), to return.</i>
<i>hērēs, -ēdis, m. heir.</i>	<i>trēs, tria, three (473).</i>
	<i>unde, adv. wherefore.</i>
	<i>vīcēsimus, -a, -um, twentieth (vigintī).</i>

## LESSON LI

## THE VERB FERŌ, to bear, bring

397 LEARN the conjugation of ferō entire with the exception of the gerund, gerundive, and supine, 489.

398

## VOCABULARY

<i>abdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (ab + dō), to put away, to hide.</i>	<i>adversus, -a, -um, opposite, unfavorable.</i>
<i>accidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, to fall, happen.</i>	<i>cōnstō, -āre, -stiti, -statū- rus, to agree, correspond (impers. it is an established fact, it is well known).</i>
<i>adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (ad + ferō), to bring up.</i>	

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suē-	pār, paris, equal, like.
tus, to get accustomed to.	paulātim, adv. gradually.
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. custom.	referō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus
crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent.	(re + ferō), to carry back (pedem referre, to retreat).
īferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus (in + ferō), to carry, bring upon.	succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (sub + cēdō), to come up, to relieve.
integer, -gra, -grum, whole, fresh.	

399 1. Hōc cāsū adductus, omnīs quī per aetātem arma  
ferre possint ēgredī iubet; mulierēs sē in silvās abdidē-  
runt. 2. Levī proeliō factō, ad oppidum in quō hiemāre  
cōnsuēvit, contendit, quod maritimum erat. 3. Litterīs  
mediā nocte adlātīs, intellēxit māgnūm periculum acci-  
disse, quō nostrī interclūsī fugientēsque interfectī essent.  
4. Prope oppidum collis erat; ab flūmine parī māgnitū-  
dine alter collis nāscēbātur adversus huic; eō Caesar  
exercitum addūxit. 5. Integrī dēfessī<sup>1</sup> successērunt;  
sed, cum nūllum frūstrā pīlum accideret, omnēs tandem  
sub montem pedem rettulērunt. 6. Crēberrimīs Caesaris  
beneficiīs adductus lēgātīs respondit nōn oportēre eōs dē  
suā voluntātē dubitāre. 7. Ad haec ūnum modo respon-  
dit: nōn esse suam cōnsuētūdinē dē paribus condiciōni-  
bus loquī. 8. Crēbrīs nocturnīs ēruptiōnībus aut īgnem  
mūrō īferēbant aut mīlitēs incertīs temporib⁹ lacessē-  
bant; haec quidem ratiō bellī eīs māximē prōderat.  
9. Hostēs, quia prīdiē Caesar neque cōpiās prōdūxisset  
neque flūmen trānsīsset, paulātim pedem rettulērunt.  
10. Ea silva ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnīs hos-  
tium ad flūmen pertinet; multa ibi animālia nāscī cōnstat.

400 1. Being asked why they had retreated, they replied  
that they could not endure the onrush of our soldiers.  
2. As it was agreed that they must pass the winter in

Gaul, no grain had been provided in Britain. 3. When they complained of their wrongs, Caesar replied that he brought no hope or terms of peace. 4. This state had often brought war upon the Gauls; with equal valor it had often defended itself. 5. Fresh troops came up, and the enemy were gradually dislodged from their position and retreated. 6. Several ships, sailing out<sup>1</sup> of the harbor, were drawn up opposite us, but it was not agreed what our ships ought to do. 7. As the Gauls were in a higher position, their javelins fell with great force. 8. They said that the Germans had gradually grown accustomed to crossing the Rhine.

---

## LESSON LII

PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR  
ADJECTIVES

**401** REVIEW the Pronouns learned thus far, 123, 129, 135, 136, 298, 317, 318, 320.

**402** Learn the declension of the Indefinite pronouns *aliquis*, *some one*, *quisquis*, *whoever*, *quicunque*, *who-soever*, 478.

**403** The following nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular, with the exception of *alterius* which has *alterius* throughout:

<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>one, single</i>
<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alone</i>
<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>whole</i>
<i>ūllus</i>	<i>ūlla</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>any</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice the real time here expressed.

<b>nūllus</b>	<b>nūlla</b>	<b>nūllum</b>	<i>not any</i>
<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<i>another</i>
<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>	<i>the other (of two)</i>
<b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<i>which (of two)</i>
<b>neuter</b>	<b>neutra</b>	<b>neutrum</b>	<i>neither</i>

(a) These have no Vocative. The form **alterius** is regularly employed as the genitive of **alius** to prevent confusion with the nominative. Five of these have been already used. The declension is given, 469.

## 404

## VOCABULARY

<b>animadvertisō</b> , -ere, -tī, -sus	<b>redeō</b> , -ire, -ii, -itūrus	(re + (animum + advertō), to notice.
<b>quārē</b> , adv. whereby? how?	<b>unde</b> , adv. whence?	the place from which (both interrogative and relative).
wheretore (both interrogative and relative).	<b>valeō</b> , -ere, -ui, —,	to be strong.

## 405

1. Neque ūllum fere tōtius hiemis tempus erat, quīn aliquis nūntius dē adversō proeliō adferrētur. 2. Quamquam crēbris nūntiis commūnīque perīculō permōtī sunt, sīc parātī erant, ut, quīcumque accidisset cāsus, hunc aequō animō ferrent. 3. Quidquid illī possunt, nāvibus valent; maritimās enim partēs incolunt, neque est ūllus<sup>1</sup> apud eōs reī mīlitāris ūsus. 4. Alterō diē hostēs iugō relictō proelium iniērunt; proeliō adversō factō, nostrī pedem rettulērunt et unde vēnerant rediērunt. 5. Quia neutrum eōrum flūminum trānsire poterant nostrī ad montem, quō prōvincia ā maritimīs cīvitātibus dīvisa est, paulātim rediērunt. 6. Nōn oportēre putābat commūnem salūtem Haeduīs sōlīs committere; quārē mīlitēs paulātim sē recipere iūssit. 7. Paribus beneficiīs ūsus,<sup>2</sup> contrā

<sup>1</sup> When a sentence is connected with the preceding, **neque** . . . ūllus rather than **et nūllus** is used as here. Compare sentence 1.

<sup>2</sup> From ūtor.

voluntātem eōrum facere nōn dēbēre intellēxit; itaque neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvābat. 8. Graviter querentibus quod ē finib⁹ ēgredī coācti essent, respondit sē amicōrum fortūnīs cōnsulere cōsuēscere. 9. Haec ubi Caesar animadvertisit, cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in iugō cōstituit. 10. Cum nōn modo tēla sed etiam cōsilia utrīque dēficerent, uterque rūrsus exercitum in castra redūxit.

**406** 1. The Gauls are accustomed to defend themselves against whatsoever people brings war against them. 2. The soldiers answered, “Whoever they are, let us attack them before they return to the place from which<sup>1</sup> they came.” 3. Whatsoever wars you wish to be carried on, we will carry on without any danger on your part.<sup>2</sup> 4. Between the two armies was a forest which offered some hope of safety. 5. Each commander ordered his soldiers to withdraw gradually from their position and retreat to this forest. 6. Neither noticed that in the other army fresh troops were relieving the exhausted. 7. Caesar was strongest in infantry,<sup>3</sup> but the commander of the enemy trusted to his cavalry alone.

#### READING EXERCISE

**407** *The Battle of Actium (31 B. C.) and the End of the Civil Wars*

Sublātīs coniūrātīs quī Caesarem occiderant, supererat Sextus Pompēius quī post clādem ad Mundam fugā ēvāserat. Hīc contractīs eīs quī supererant ex partibus<sup>4</sup> Brūtī Cassīque, ingēns bellum in Siciliā commōvit, sed ab Agrippā ita vīctus est ut in Asiam effugere coāctus sit; ubi paulō post occīsus est.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 405, 4.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 405, 3.

<sup>2</sup> Objective gen.

<sup>4</sup> *The party.*

Cum iam omnem occāsiōnem bellī cīvīlis sublātam esse vidērētur, pāx imprōvisō ab Antōniō erupta est; nam hīc captus amōre Cleopātrae, rēgīnae Aegyptī, sorōrem Octāviānī repudiāvit, et incitātus ā rēgīna quae muliebri cupiditāte etiam in urbe rēgnāre volēbat, bellum contrā Octāviānum parāvit. Quī, prīmō nūntiō hūius periculī adlātō, Brundisiō<sup>1</sup> in Graeciam trānsiit ut imminentī bellō<sup>2</sup> occurreret, positīsque castrīs in Epīrō ad Actiacī<sup>3</sup> Apollinis templum, classe sinum Ambracium quem nāvēs Antōni tenēbant obsēdit. Octāviānō quadringentae amplius<sup>4</sup> nāvēs, ducentae hostibus fuērunt; sed hārum māgnitūdō numerum illārum superāvit: haec ipsa rēs hostibus exitiō<sup>5</sup> fuit cum nāvēs tam māgnae essent ut nōn celeriter movī possent, et classis clārā nāvālī pūgnā victa est. Prīma dux fugae erat rēgīna; eam secūtus est Antōnius quī fugientis mulieris quam pūgnantis exercitūs suī comes esse māluit. Proximō annō Caesar rēgīnam Antōniūmque Alexandrēam persecūtus, ultimam bellīs cīvīlibus imposuit manū. Antōnius obsessus ā Caesare, dēspērātīs rēbus, praesertim fāmā occīsam esse<sup>6</sup> Cleopātram permōtus, sē ipse interfēcit; rēgīna cum frūstrā ā Caesare petīsset ut sibi rēgnūm redderētur, et sē triumphō<sup>7</sup> servārī vīdisset, sibi serpentem admīsit, cūius venēnō occīsa est.

<sup>1</sup> “Abl. of place from which”; this is essentially the same as the Abl. of Separation, 206. Notice, however, that the name of a town has no preposition.

<sup>2</sup> 344.

<sup>3</sup> The promontory of Actium was on the south side of the entrance to the Ambracian bay.

<sup>4</sup> The comparative is used here without any influence on the case of nāvēs.

<sup>5</sup> Study 415-418.

<sup>6</sup> Indirect discourse after fāmā.

<sup>7</sup> Dative depending on servārī, *saved for*.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<i>Actiacus, -a, -um, of Actium.</i>	<i>muliebris, -e, womanish, a woman's.</i>
<i>admittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,</i>	<i>obsidēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, to blockade.</i>
<i>to let come, give access to.</i>	
<i>amplius, adv. comp. more (than).</i>	<i>occāsiō, -ōnis, f. opportunity.</i>
<i>commoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mō-</i>	<i>persequor, -i, -secūtus, to overtake.</i>
<i>tus, to arouse.</i>	<i>quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.</i>
<i>contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus,</i>	<i>repudiō, -āre, to cast aside, divorce.</i>
<i>to draw together, collect.</i>	
<i>cupiditās, -ātis, f. desire, passion.</i>	<i>rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, to break.</i>
<i>ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.</i>	<i>serpēns, -ntis, f. snake.</i>
<i>ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus,</i>	<i>sinus, -ūs, m. bay.</i>
<i>to go out, escape.</i>	<i>supersum, -esse, -fūi, to survive, remain.</i>
<i>exitium, -ī, n. ruin.</i>	<i>triumphus, -ī, m. triumph.</i>
<i>imminēns, threatening.</i>	
<i>impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,</i>	<i>venēnum, -ī, n. poison.</i>
<i>to put on.</i>	

## LESSON LIII

REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND  
DATIVE

## THE GENITIVE

**408** THUS far the Genitive has been used chiefly to indicate the Possessor, 35, the Object, 156, and Quality, 232. It has also been employed as the Object with *obliviscor*, 305, and in such phrases as

**pars militum**, in which it denotes the whole. The Genitive in this use is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

**409** *Rule.*—The Partitive Genitive is used to denote the whole of which the modified word is a part.

W. 355; B. 201; AG. 216; H. 440, 5–443.

### THE DATIVE

**410** The Dative has been used chiefly as the Indirect Object, 37, to denote the Possessor, 45, and with Compound Verbs, 344. The Dative with **persuādeō** also represents the construction with a considerable class of verbs.

**411** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with intransitive verbs meaning *favor, please, trust, assist* (and their opposites), *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade*.<sup>1</sup>

W. 330; B. 187, ii; AG. 227; H. 426, 1.

(a) It is evident that the passive of these verbs can only be used impersonally, e. g., *I am persuaded, mihi persuādētur*.

**412** Certain adjectives like **grātus, idōneus, similis**, and **dissimilis** from their meanings are used with the dative.

**413** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with Adjectives meaning *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, equal, near, and dear*, and with others of like or opposite meaning.

W. 333; B. 192; AG. 234; H. 434.

<sup>1</sup> Many of these verbs are used with the dative in English, but this is not apparent, because our language has lost most of its inflectional endings.

**414** Two constructions which have not yet been employed are illustrated by the following:

**415**

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.** *It was of great service to our men.*
2. **Cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit.** *He leaves the cohorts for the defense of the camp.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the datives **ūsuī**, **praesidiō** are in the predicate, are abstract nouns, and express either that which the subject tends to become or the purpose of the verb's action. Such a dative is called the *Predicate Dative*.

**416** *Rule.*—The **Predicate Dative** is used to express Tendency or Purpose.

W. 341–345; B. 191; AG. 233; H. 433.

**417** Notice that in the sentences in **415**, the datives **nostrīs**, **castrīs** are not dependent on any single word, but rather on the entire sentence, and express the persons or thing with reference to which the statements are made. This construction is called the *Dative of Reference*.

**418** *Rule.*—The **Dative of Reference** denotes the object interested or referred to in a statement.

W. 334–335; B. 188; AG. 235; H. 425, 2–4.

**419**

#### VOCABULARY

<b>adeō</b> , - <i>ire</i> , - <i>ii</i> , - <i>itūrus</i> (ad +	<b>cōgitō</b> , - <i>āre</i> , <i>to think</i> .
<i>eō</i> ), <i>to approach</i> .	<b>comprehendō</b> , - <i>ere</i> , - <i>ndi</i> , - <i>pre-</i>
<b>aditus</b> , - <i>ūs</i> , m. <i>approach</i> .	<b>hēnsus</b> , <i>to arrest, seize</i> .

**cōnferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus **palam**, adv. *openly* (compare **clam**, 272).  
 (con + ferō), *to bring together.*

**dēmōnstrō**, -āre, *to point out, show.*

**hūc**, adv. *hither, to this place* (compare **hic**, 132).

**opīniō**, -ōnis, f. *opinion, belief, reputation.*

**praeter**, prep. w. accu. *beyond, contrary to, besides.*

**quā**, adv. *in what way, by what road (qui).*

**singulī**, -ae, -a, *single, individual.*

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, f. *suspicion.*

**420** 1. Crassus autem adulēscēns, cum aliquōs hostīs accēdere animadvertisset, septimam cohortem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. 2. Rēbus quae ad bellum ūsuī erant hūc conlātis, suōs exīre prohibēbat timōrisque opīniōnem hostibus augēbat. 3. Hostēs autem putābant nūllōs sibi esse parīs posse; sōlīs deīs concēdere cōnsuēscēbant. 4. Dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrōs quōs incolant nihil esse reliquī<sup>1</sup>; quārē eīs partem exercitūs subsidiō mīsit. 5. Ut omnem timōris suspiciōnem tolleret, alteram partem exercitūs mīsit quae Haeduīs bellum īferret. 6. Hīc autem, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem, paulātim rediit unde vēnerat. 7. Quam ob rem, quisquis is esset cūius operā Gallī excitātī essent, comprehendī atque interfici iūssit. 8. Quārē Caesarem adiērunt palamque de eōrum iniūriīs questī sunt qui ēius beneficiīs ūsī, amīcīs ēius nocērent. 9. Repperit omnis ferē hominēs māgnāe virtūtis esse neque ūllum ad eōs aditum esse mercātōribus. 10. Eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae anteā cōgitāverat, lēgātīs singulīs in singulās<sup>2</sup> cīvitātēs missīs, ipse flūmen trānsiit quā minimē altum erat.

**421** 1. Caesar left a cohort as protection for the baggage and returned by the easiest road.<sup>3</sup> 2. Having found a

<sup>1</sup> Gen. modifying **nihil**, 409.

<sup>2</sup> *One to each.*

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *where the road was easiest.*

suitable place for a camp, he built a fortified camp and made<sup>1</sup> a ten-foot ditch. 3. He sent his lieutenants, each with a legion,<sup>2</sup> to make war upon the Germans. 4. Everything that was useful for the storming of a city he brought to this place. 5. One part of the army he left in camp, another part he sent as a support to those who were fighting. 6. That they might remove every suspicion of fear, they went out of camp openly. 7. They come to him and show him that they have nothing except their arms left. 8. They arrested those through whose agency the lieutenant had been killed, and brought them to Caesar.

---

## LESSON LIV

REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND  
ABLATIVE

## THE ACCUSATIVE

**422** THE Accusative has thus far been used as the Direct Object, 31, as the Subject of the Infinitive, 328, with a number of prepositions to express various relations, and also to denote the Duration of Time, 174. Closely connected with this last use is the Accusative of Extent of Space, e. g., *sex mīlia passuum prōcēdit*, *he advances six miles*. The rule in 174 therefore may be expanded to read :

**423** *Rule.*—Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256, 257; H. 417.

---

<sup>1</sup> dūcere.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 420, 10.

**424** The Accusative with *ad* or *in* has frequently been used to express the Aim or Limit of Motion, and since **236**, 10 names of towns *without* a preposition have been employed to express the same thing. Learn the following:

**425** *Rule.*—The Aim or Limit of Motion is expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns omit the preposition.<sup>1</sup>

W. 325; B. 182; AG. 258, 2, *a*; H. 418.

#### THE ABLATIVE

**426** The Ablative has been used in nearly all its important relations. If these various constructions be examined, it will be found that they fall into three classes corresponding to the English Objective case with *from*, *with*, and *in*.

**427** This is historically due to the fact that the Latin Ablative represents three cases which have been blended into one—the Ablative proper or *from*-case, the Instrumental or *with*-case, the Locative or *in*-case.

**428** The Ablative proper includes the

1. Ablative of Separation, **206**.
2. Ablative of Agent, **100**.
3. Ablative of Comparison, **190**.

**429** The Instrumental Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, **71**.
2. Ablative of Manner, **150**.
3. Ablative of Means, **110**.
4. Ablative with Deponents,<sup>2</sup> **297**.

<sup>1</sup> Also a few other words, of which **domum**, *home*, is the most frequent.

<sup>2</sup> This is properly also Ablative of Means.

5. Ablative of Cause, 119.
6. Ablative of Degree of Difference, 197.
7. Ablative of Quality, 234.
8. Ablative Absolute, 392.

**430** To these should be added the Ablative in such expressions as *linguā differunt*, *they differ in language*; *virtūte praecēdunt*, *they excel in bravery*; in which the Ablative specifies that with respect to which the statement is made.

**431** *Rule.*—The Ablative of Specification denotes that with respect to which anything is or is done.

W. 398; B. 226; AG. 253; H. 480.

**432** The Locative Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Place, 55.
2. Ablative of Time, 176.

### 433

#### VOCABULARY

<b>Avāricum</b> , -ī, <i>Avaricum</i> (a town in Gaul).	item, adv. <i>likewise, also.</i>
<b>concurrō</b> , -ere, -currī or -cu- currī, -cursūrus, <i>to run together.</i>	<b>lingua</b> , -ae, f. <i>tongue, language.</i>
<b>coniungō</b> , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc- tus, <i>to join together.</i>	<b>longinquus</b> , -a, -um, <i>long, distant.</i>
<b>conloquor</b> , -ī, -locūtus ( <i>cum + loquor</i> ), <i>to talk together.</i>	<b>perpetuus</b> , -a, -um, <i>continuous.</i>
<b>cursus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>course, march.</i>	<b>plērumque</b> , adv. <i>for the most part, generally.</i>
<b>differō</b> , -ferre, <i>distulī, dilātus</i> ( <i>dis + ferō</i> ), <i>to spread, scatter</i> (in the present system, <i>to differ</i> ).	<b>praecēdō</b> , -ere, -cessī, -cessū- rus ( <i>prae + cēdō</i> ), <i>to go before, excel.</i>
<b>inde</b> , adv. <i>from that place, after that.</i>	<b>primō</b> , adv. <i>at first.</i>
<b>infra</b> , prep. w. accu. <i>below.</i>	<b>subitus</b> , -a, -um, <i>sudden.</i>
	<b>ultrā</b> , prep. w. accu. <i>beyond.</i>
	<b>ūnā</b> , adv. <i>at the same time, in company with.</i>

**434** 1. Complūria mīlia passuum ultrā eum locum prōgressus, petīvit ut sibi ūnā cum Caesare conloquī licēret. 2. Volēbat flūmen trānsīre complūribus mīlibus passuum īfrā eum locum ubi pōns esset perfectus. 3. Cōnstābat inter omnīs, quā arbitrārentur hostīs oppidum adīre, iugum aditū diffīcillimō esse perpetuīsque silvīs mūnitum. 4. Plērumque accidit ut cōnsilia Gallōrum subita sint; māximam opīniōnem virtūtis habent, cēterōs Gallōs auc-tōritātē praecēdunt. 5. Longīs litterīs dēmōnstrant sē longinquam oppūgnātiōnem ferre nōn posse; quārē cum integrīs mīlitib⁹ Avāricum contendit. 6. Captō iugō et succēdentibus nostrīs, Haeduī qui haec animadverterant ad arma concurrunt, itemque aliōs hortantur. 7. Praeter opīniōnem cōsuētūdinemque accidit ut omnēs ūnā concurrant; prīmō māgnus clāmor audītur, inde cursus fit ad iugum. 8. Quoniam illa castra ab oppidō mīlia passuum multa absunt, hī nōn facile coniungī cum dūce possunt; altera castra multō propinquiōra sunt. 9. Caesar, lectīs litterīs, sī palam conloquī vellent, concessit; sed hī omnēs linguā differunt. 10. Fossam inter turrīs dūxit,<sup>1</sup> quō tūtius ab subitō hostium impetū etiam singulī redire possent.

**435** 1. They marched seven miles on that day and pitched camp one mile from the town. 2. Though tired out by the march and the flight, they dug the ditch through the entire night. 3. On one side the camp was protected by a continuous forest, on the other by a river. 4. For the most part they use horses in battle that they may retreat more easily. 5. At first they ran to arms with a shout; after that they approached the town in silence. 6. He hurried to Avaricum, because he learned that the city was being fortified by the enemy. 7. When Caesar arrived in this place, the whole state was in arms; but the

---

<sup>1</sup> fossam dūcere, to make a ditch.

Romans were superior in the number of troops. 8. He pitched the new camp ten miles below the old camp, and waited there several days.

## READING EXERCISE

*Octavian's Triumph and Rule*

**436** Bellis tōtō orbe ita cōfēctis Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ubi trēs triumphōs ēgit,<sup>1</sup> ūnum ex Illyricō,<sup>2</sup> alterum ex Actiacā<sup>3</sup> vīctōriā, tertium dē Cleopātrā. Tum Iānī geminī<sup>4</sup> portās suā manū clausit, quae tantummodo bis anteā clausae erant, p̄imō sub Nūmā<sup>5</sup> rēge, iterum Titō Manliō cōnsule<sup>6</sup> post p̄imum Pūnicum bellum.<sup>7</sup> Iam rem pūblicam, quam duodecim annōs cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat, sōlus per quattuor et quadragintā annōs administrābat. Nūllō tempore rēs Rōmāna magis florēbat: nam Octāviānus Rōmānō adiēcit imperiō plūrimās prōvinciās; vīcit etiam proeliis Dācōs,<sup>8</sup> et Germānōrum ingentīs cōpiās cecīdit, ipsōs quoque trāns Albim<sup>9</sup> flūmen submōvit, quod longē ultrā Rhēnum est. Reddidērunt etiam Parthī<sup>10</sup> legiōnum sīgna quae Crassō victō<sup>11</sup> adēmerant. Scythī et Indī, quibus anteā Rōmānōrum nōmen

<sup>1</sup> *Celebrated.*<sup>2</sup> Illyricum was north of Epirus in Greece.<sup>3</sup> An adjective formed from **Actium**.<sup>4</sup> Janus, the god of gates and doors, was called **geminus**, *double*, because he was represented with two faces looking in opposite directions. His temple, near the northeast corner of the Forum, was always open in time of war.<sup>5</sup> Numa was the second king of Rome.<sup>6</sup> 235 B. C.<sup>7</sup> The First Punic War lasted from 264–241 B. C.<sup>8</sup> The Dacians lived north of the Danube, in and around the modern Roumania.<sup>9</sup> The Albis was probably the modern Elbe.<sup>10</sup> The Parthians were the foes most feared by the Romans in the East.<sup>11</sup> In 53 B. C.

incōgnitum fuerat, dōna et lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. Tantō amōre<sup>12</sup> etiam apud barbarōs fuit ut rēgēs, populī Rōmāni amicī, in honōrem ēius conderent urbēs quās Caesarēas nōminārent, sicut in Maurētāniā<sup>13</sup> ā rēge Iubā, et in Palaestinā, quae posteā urbs erat clārissima. Octāviānō māximī honōrēs ā senātū dēlāti sunt: ipse Augustus nōminātus et in ēius hōnōrem mēnsis sextīlis eōdem nōmine est appellātus quod illō mēnse bellīs cīlibus finis est impositus. Multa mala lūxuriamque cīvium gravibus lēgibus suppliciisque ita coercuit ut ob haec facta pater patriae quoque appellātus sit. Obiit in oppidō Campaniae Nōlā;<sup>14</sup> sepultus est Rōmae<sup>15</sup> in campō Martiō. Post mortem Dīvus appellātus est.

## 437

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to add.	dīvus, -a, -um, divine.
adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, to take away.	duodecim, twelve.
bis, adv. twice.	floreō, -ēre, florūi, —, to be prosperous.
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, to cut down, kill, annihilate.	Iānus, -ī, m. Janus.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, to close.	incōgnitus, -a, -um, unknown.
coerceō, -ēre, -ercui, -ercitus, to check, restrain.	lūxuria, -ae, f. luxury.
condō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, to found.	nōminō, -āre, to name.
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, to offer, grant.	obeō, -īre, -īi, -itūrūs, to die.
	quadringintā, forty.
	quattuor, four.
	sepeliō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), sepul-
	tus, to bury.

<sup>12</sup> 234.<sup>13</sup> The modern Algiers and Morocco.<sup>14</sup> A town about fifteen miles east of Naples.<sup>15</sup> The locative (24), at Rome.

**sextīlis, -e,** *the sixth* (used only with reference to the month). **submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus,** *to remove.*

**sicut,** adv. *as.* **tantummodo,** adv. *only.*

**trēs, tria,** *three* (473).

---

## LESSON LV

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

**438** LEARN the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive of all the paradigm verbs, 479–489.

## ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

**439** The Future Active Participle with sum forms the Active Periphrastic Conjugation : Pres. Indic. *amātūrus sum, I am about to love*, Imperf. Indic. *amātūrus eram, I was about to love*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

**440** This Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in any of the active constructions of the verb where the meaning allows.

## PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

**441** The Gerundive with sum forms the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation : Pres. Indic. *amandus est, He is to be* (i. e., *must be, ought to be*) *loved.* Imperf. Indic. *amandus erat, He was to be* (*ought to have been*) *loved*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

## DATIVE OF AGENT

442

## EXAMPLES

1. **Mihi oppidum est expūg-** *The town is to be (must be) stormed by me.*  
**nandum,**

2. **Vōbis prōvincia erat dē-** *The province was to be (had to be) defended by you.*  
**fendenda.**

(a) Notice that this second Periphrastic Conjugation implies duty, necessity, or obligation. The person on whom the duty rests is expressed by the Dative;<sup>1</sup> as this person is virtually the Agent the construction is called the *Dative of Agent*.

443     *Rule.*—The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty rests.

W. 339; B. 189; AG. 232; H. 431.

444

## VOCABULARY

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-	offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus (ob + ferō), to present.
tus, to join to.	
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē + ferō), to bring down, report.	praesertim, adv. especially.
discessus, -ūs, m. departure (discēdō).	quālis, -e, of what sort, as.
eōdem, adv. to the same place.	rēgnūm, -ī, n. kingdom, royal power (regō).
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ex + cēdō), to go out from.	servitūs, -ūtis, f. . bondage (servus).
lātē, adv. broadly.	studeō, -ēre, -ui, —, to pay attention to, be eager for (411).
obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tentus (ob + teneō), to maintain, hold.	utrimque, adv. from both sides.

445     1. Cum intellegeret omnīs Gallōs celeriter ad bellum  
excitārī atque omnīs hominēs libertātī studēre, lātius sibi

<sup>1</sup> This is only one form of the Dative of Reference, 418.

exercitum mittendum esse putāvit. 2. Poenae timōre permōtī, nocentīs comprehēnsūrī erant interfectūrīque; dēmōnstrant sē perpetuā servitūte premī. 3. Ēiusmodi cōnsilium neque initūrī erant neque ullum omnīnō bellum contrā eum gessūrī. 4. Eōdem impedimenta nostrīs cōferrēda erant priusquam hostēs ad arma concurrerent; ad hostīs dēlātum est Caesarem castra cum oppidō mūrō coniūncētūrum esse. 5. Ea apud eōs cōnsuētūdō est ut quī summum magistrātū obtineant, excēdere ex finib⁹ nōn liceat. 6. Discessū Caesaris animadversō, Gallī longinquiōrēs cīvitātēs sibi adiūnxerant; ad locum īfrā pontem, inde Avāricum sē contulērunt. 7. Eō tempore, praeſertim cum tālis oblāta esset potestās, quālis nunquām anteā, exeundum sibi esse putāvērunt. 8. Utrīmque integrī succēdunt; et, quod cōnstābat montem mille passuum abesse, eōdem sua omnia contulērunt. 9. Subīto impetū oppidum cēpērunt; illum, quī rēgnū tot annōs obtinuerat, comprehēnsum suppliciō gravi interfēcērunt. 10. Nactī idōneum ventum sub noctem ex portū exiērunt, et postridiē longius dēlātī ultrā locum cōnstitūtum ad terram vēnērunt.

**446** 1. Caesar had to recall the men from work and to give the signal for battle at the same time. 2. They said they would go into whatsoever place Caesar should decide, and would carry their goods to the same place. 3. He thought that he ought to make war upon the Gauls, especially as the opportunity was offered. 4. The Haeduans reported to Caesar that all the Gauls were as a rule eager for a revolution.<sup>1</sup> 5. He thought that there would never be another opportunity such as<sup>2</sup> this was. 6. He who had held the royal power in his state for so many years was arrested and killed. 7. They said that they had to endure perpetual bondage and were eager for freedom.

<sup>1</sup> novae rēs.

<sup>2</sup> quālis.

## LESSON LVI

## GERUND AND SUPINE

**447** LEARN the Gerunds and Supines of all the paradigm verbs, **479–489**.

## THE GERUND

**448** The Gerund is a verbal noun with the force of an active verb. The Infinitive supplies the nominative and accusative cases in the constructions of Subject and Direct Object, **325–327**.

## EXAMPLES

1. **Loquendī finem fēcit.** *He made an end of speaking.*
2. **Ad audiendum parātī su-** *We are prepared to hear  
mus.* *(for hearing).*
3. **Hominis mēns discendō** *Man's mind is nourished by  
alitur. learning.*

**449** The Gerund may have a direct object, e. g., **spatiū arma capiēndī**, *time for taking arms*; but in place of the Gerund with the object accusative, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is to be preferred.

**450**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Cōnsilium urbīs capiendaē.** *A plan for taking the city.*
2. **Vēnērunt ad pācem peten-** *They came to ask for peace.*  
**dam.**
3. **Haec rēs Caesari difficul-** *This fact caused Caesar dif-*  
**tātem ad cōnsilium ca-** *ficulty in forming his*  
**piendum adferēbat.** *plan.*
4. **Brūtus in liberandā patriā** *Brutus was killed in free-*  
**est interfectus.** *ing his country.*

(a) Notice that in each example the Gerundive is a verbal adjective agreeing with its noun, which is in the case required by the sentence.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Notice that in the second example **ad pācem petendam** expresses purpose and is equivalent to **ut (qui) pācem peterent**. This is one of the common ways of expressing purpose.

### THE SUPINE

451

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Lēgātī vēnērunt rogātūm** *Envoy's came to ask help auxilium.*
2. **Perfacile factū est haec perficere.** *To accomplish this is very easy (to do).*

(a) Notice that in the first example the Supine **rogātūm** is used with a verb of motion to express purpose, being equivalent to **ut (qui) rogārent** or **ad auxilium rogan-dum**. This is the only use of this Supine.<sup>2</sup>

(b) The Supine in -u is rare, being used in a few expressions like the second example as Ablative of Specification.

452     **Rule.**—The Supine in -um expresses Purpose after verbs of Motion.

W. 654; B. 340, 1; AG. 302; H. 633.

453

#### VOCABULARY

**aliēnus, -a, -um, another's,** **officium, -i, n. duty, office, foreign (alius).** **function.**  
**iūs, iūris, n. justice, right.** **perfacilis, -e, very easy.**

<sup>1</sup> The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is rare, so that no example is here given.

<sup>2</sup> The future pass. infin. **amātūm īrī**, etc., belongs under this head, as **īrī** is the pres. pass. infin. of **eō** used impersonally.

**potius**, adv. *rather.*                   **praetereā**, adv. *besides.*  
**praestō, -āre, -stītī, —, to ex-**      **vel**, conj. *and* adv. *or,*  
*cel, exhibit, perform.*                    *even.*<sup>1</sup>

**454**   1. Nūllā in rē deerat lēgātus, et in hortandīs militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis fortis officia praestābat. 2. Praeter cōsuētūdinem cotidiē sub castra studiō pūgnandī vēnērunt hostēs; tandem Caesar certum diem conloquendī dīcit. 3. Galli sibi Germānōs adiūnxerant ad sociōs nostrōs vel comprehendendōs vel interficiendōs; ex omnibus partibus Galliae eōdem concurrēbant hostēs. 4. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum nē sibi sociis que nocēret; dixērunt sē iūra, agrōs, arma Rōmānīs sōlīs permittere. 5. Perfacile factū esse dēmōnstrat sine ūllā suspicīōne omnia quae ad proficiscendum pertineant, comparāre. 6. Aliī cursū et pūgnā dēfessī interficti sunt pūgnantēs; aliī<sup>2</sup> novā speciē equitum nostrōrum permōtī sē dedērunt. 7. Praetereā lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt ūrātum ut sibi potestās excēdendī fieret. 8. Pūgnātum est utrimque vehementer sub mūris; ubi nostri locō cēdere vīsī sunt, hūc undique concurritur. 9. Equitātū potius quam peditātū māximē valēbat imperātor noster; itaque suīs cōpiīs plērumque ad vastandōs agrōs hostium utēbātur. 10. Undique ad Haeduōs dēfendendōs convēnērunt ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus pūgnārent.

**455**   1. On the next day Caesar led forth his forces from each camp and gave the enemy a chance to fight.<sup>3</sup>  
 2. Caesar was confident that no one would after that cross into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war.  
 3. The Gauls sent ambassadors to ask for aid, that they

---

<sup>1</sup> **aut** is exclusive: **aut Caesar aut nūllus**, either Caesar or nobody; but **vel** gives a choice: **vel hīc vel ille**, either this man or that (as you please).

<sup>2</sup> Compare 358, 7.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 454, 7.

might not be obliged to fight in others' territory rather than in their own. 4. He showed him that it was very easy to get possession of the royal power in his state. 5. They got ready everything that was of use for besieging a town. 6. They injured the enemy greatly by laying waste their fields and setting fire to their buildings. 7. They sent an ambassador to beg that Caesar would not deprive them of their rights and their lands.

---

## LESSON LVII

## NUMERALS

**456** LEARN the Cardinal numbers to 1,000 and the ordinals through the twenty-first, **473**.

**457** Review the declension of *ūnus*, and learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, **469**; the other cardinals through *centum* are not declined except those compounds which have *ūnus*, *duo*, or *trēs*. The hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

**458** Review the declension of *mille*, **252**. All ordinals are declined like *bonus*.

**459** 1. *Discessū hostium Caesar exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit*; *quattuor legiōnēs mīlia passuum quīndecim in Haeduōs dūxit*. 2. *Ducentī hominēs pūgnantēs utrimque interficiuntur*; *omnia aedificia longē lātēque incenduntur*. 3. *Adiūnxit sibi sex cohortēs atque diē octāvō ex suis in fīnīs aliēnōs prōgressus est*. 4. *Spē rēgnandī novīs rēbus studēbat*; *sed illī in libertātē manēre quam servitūtem*

ferre mālēbant. 5. Etsī ille mīlia passuum quīnque abesse hostīs certior factus est, tamen mīsit equitēs qui cōgnōserent quālis esset nātūra montis. 6. Fidē sociōrum perspectā, cum novem cohortibus peditum īfrā pontem mīlibus passuum quattuordecim flūmen trānsiit. 7. Quōscumque adiit, hortābātur ut sē cum Germānīs coniungerent; quīntō diē multa mīlia illōrum in ūnum locum convēnerant. 8. Diēs continuōs trēs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et hostibus potestātem pūgnandī fēcit. 9. Haeduī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cōgnitō Caesaris discessū, eōdem unde pridiē vēnerant, rediērunt. 10. Urbis dēfendendae causā mūrum fēcit in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fos-samque novem pedum dūxit.

**460** 1. He made a ten-foot ditch and a wall twelve feet high. 2. Three cohorts were left as a protection for the baggage, five were sent among the Haeduans. 3. On the eighth day he drew up his army in line across the river. 4. He learned that the enemy were twenty-five miles distant from the camp. 5. On the fifth day twenty thousand men arrived to defend the town. 6. The spears of these people are two feet shorter than those which the Haeduans use. 7. The soldiers worked at building<sup>1</sup> the camp thirty consecutive hours. 8. Two ships were carried out of their course<sup>2</sup> by the wind and were unable to make<sup>3</sup> the harbor.

<sup>1</sup> Simply *built*.

<sup>2</sup> dēferō.

<sup>3</sup> capiō.

461

## READING EXERCISE

*Caesar's First Invasion of Britain (B. G. IV, 20-36)*

*In the late summer of 55 B. C. Caesar, having returned from a brief invasion of Germany, decided to cross to Britain in order to overawe the tribes living there and to put an end to the support given by them to the Gauls*

1. Exiguā parte aestatis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibūs nostrīs inde 5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominū perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mer-10 cātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter īram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique

[The numerals preceding the notes refer to the lines above.]

1. 1. **exiguā . . . reliquā:** abl. abs., **392.**
2. **ad septentriōnēs:** *toward the north.*
4. **bellīs:** abl. of time when, **176.**
5. **subministrāta (esse):** inf. in ind. disc.—**sī:** equivalent to **etsī.**—**ad bellum gerendum:** **450, b.**
6. **sibi ūsuī:** **415-418.**—**fore:** the subject is contained in the clauses **sī . . . cōgnōvisset;** in translating use the pronoun *it: he thought it would be . . ., if, etc.*
- 7 f. **adīsset, perspēxisset, cōgnōvisset:** in ind. disc. representing the fut. perf. of the direct; **adierō, perspēxerō, cōgnōverō.**
8. **loca:** **132.**
9. **incōgnita;** probably the Gauls were not so ignorant as they seemed; but they were unwilling to help Caesar.
10. **illō:** adv., *to that place.*—**hīs ipsīs:** i. e., **mercātōribus.**
12. **Galliās:** plural with reference to the separate divisions of Gaul.

mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō,  
 neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem  
 15 ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īstitūtis ūterentur,  
 neque qui essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem  
 idōnei portūs reperīre poterat.

*Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions*

2. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum face-  
 ret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī  
 longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus  
 rēbus ad sē quam p̄imū revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus  
 5 cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus  
 in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex fīnitimīs  
 regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum  
 bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō  
 ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā  
 10 complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt  
 qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rō-  
 mānī obtemperāre.

Quibus auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in  
 eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum  
 15 iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: ind. questions depending on **reperīre**,  
 1. 17. What do they represent of the direct discourse?

14. **incolerent**: supply **eam**, i. e., **īnsulam**.

15. **ūsum**: *skill*.

2. 1. **priusquam . . . faceret**: 368.

2. **idōneum**: he did not, however, succeed in his attempt.—**nāvī longā**: *ship-of-war*.

4. **quam**: p. 100, n. 2.

5. **Morinōs**: this tribe lived nearest Britain.

7. **quam**: agreeing with **classem**, l. 8.—**Veneticum**: the Veneti,  
 who lived in the northwestern part of Gaul, had been con-  
 quered in 56 b. c.

11. **polliceantur**: 280.—**dare**: 327.—**imperiō**: 411.

15. **Atrebātibus**: a tribe living south and west of the Morini,  
 conquered in 57 b. c.

rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regionibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque ut 20 populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regionibus quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, qui nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

*After preparing a fleet of ninety-eight transports besides his men-of-war and receiving assurances of loyalty from the Morini, Caesar crosses the channel*

3. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigationem tempestātem tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvis cōncendere et sē sequī iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum pīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus exposītās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec.

16. *ibi*: i. e., among the Atrebates.

17. *fidēlem*: yet three years later he turned against Caesar.

18. *māgnī*: gen. of value.—*habēbātur*: *was considered*.

19. *possit*: subordinate clause in ind. disc., 335.—*adeat, hortētur, nūntiet*: 335.

20. *fidem sequantur*: *accept the protection of*.

22. *facultātis*: modifying *quantum*, 409.

23. *audēret*: 282.

24. *revertitur, renūntiat*: see p. 138, n. 1.

3. 1. **Hīs . . . rēbus**: i. e., his preparations.

2. *tertiā vigiliā*: about midnight, as the night was divided into four watches. The date was very near August 26th, when the tide was high at 7.30 P. M.—*solvit*: *cast off*.

3. *ulteriōrem portum*: a harbor eight Roman miles off, where eighteen transports had been detained by the wind.

4. *paulō tardius*: they did not sail until three days later.

5. *hōrā . . . quartā*: about nine o'clock. The distance across is about thirty miles; the Romans landed not far from Dover.

erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbā-  
tur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī postes.  
10 Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribū-  
nīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnō-  
visset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mili-  
15 tāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque īstābilem mōtum habērent) ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmis-  
sīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum  
20 septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvīs cōnstituit.

*The Britains resist a landing*

4. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficul-  
5 tās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōn-

8. **montibus**: the cliffs which come close to the water's edge.

11 f. **dum . . . convenīrent**: *for the other ships to come up*, 370.

—**hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 p. m.

14 ff. **monuit**: the object clause depending directly on this is [ut] **ad nūtum . . . administrārentur**, *charged that everything be done, etc.* — **ut . . . postulārent**: *as the art of war and especially seamanship required.* These clauses have the imperf. subj., representing Caesar's **postulant**, as they are an integral part of the command. Why is the imperf. used?

15. **ut quae . . . habērent**: characterizing clause, *since they are things which involve.*

18. **aestum**: the tide set to the north and east about 6.30 p. m.

20. **lītore**: probably between Walmer Castle and Deal, northeast of Dover.

4, 2. **essedāriis**: *fighters in war-chariots.* — **quō . . . genere**: both horsemen and chariots. — **cōnsuērunt**: = **cōnsuērunt**.

5. **altō**: *deep water.*

stitui nōn poterant; militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, māgnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut 10 ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membris expedītis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs īsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritātē āc studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs 15 cōsuērant ūtēbantur.

*Caesar manoeuvres for an advantage—Bravery of a centurion*

5. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertisit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī 5 atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs propelli āc submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militiī 10 bus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī

6. **militibus**: dat. of agent with **dēsiliendum**, etc., 443.

7. **manibus**: abl. abs.—**oppressis**: agreeing with **militibus**.

9. **cum illī**: while the enemy, 376.

12. **īnsuēfactōs**: trained to this action.

13. **generis**: gen. w. **imperītī**.

14. **pedestribus**: on land.

5, 1. **nāvīs**: subject of **removērī**, **incitārī**, **cōstituī**.

2. **inūsitātior**: less familiar, i. e., than that of the transports.

4. **latus apertum**: the right, for the enemies' shields protected their left.

5. **inde**: i. e., from the ships-of-war.

6. **quae rēs**: a manoeuvre which.

10. **quī**: i. e., is **quī**.

decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret: “Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commīlitiōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praesti-  
15 terō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prō-iēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortatī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvē-  
20 runt.

*The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue the Britons*

6. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque āriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ūrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgno-  
5 pere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cō-spēxerant, incitatīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, sca-

11. **obtestātus**: *appealing to*. The direct form of his appeal was: *Quod vōbis fēlīciter ēveniat, dēsilīte*, etc.

17. **inter sē**: *one another*.—**tantum dēdecus**: as the loss of the legion's eagle would be.

18. **ūniversī**: *with one accord*.

19. **subsecūtī**: i. e., the soldiers, the same as the subject of **cō-spēxissent**.

6, 1. **ab utrīsque**: *on both sides*.

2. **firmiter īsistere**: *get a firm footing*.

3. **poterant**: notice the number of imperfects describing the progress of the battle.—**alius aliā ex nāvī**: *men from different ships*.

6 f. **ubi . . . cōspēxerant, adoriēbantur**, etc.: a general statement, *whenever they saw*, etc.—**singulārīs**: *scattered soldiers*.

9. **seaphās**: *row-boats*.

10 phās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitībus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs cōnspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī 15 potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

*Envoy from the Britons sue for peace*

7. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā re-cēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pol-licitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās 5 vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britan-niam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ūrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehendērunt atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in

11. **speculātōria nāvigia**: *scouting boats*, light and swift.—**quōs . . . cōnspēxerat . . . submittēbat**: compare l. 6 above.
13. **simul**: = *simul atque, as soon as*.—**suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs**: *and all their comrades had joined them*. Notice that this is *logically* parallel to the preceding clause, but that by the use of the abl. abs. variety in expression is secured.
- 14 f. **neque**: *and yet . . . not*.—**longius**: *very far*.—**quod equitēs**, etc.: the cavalry were still waiting for a favorable wind. See 8, 2 ff.
16. **capere**: *make*.
17. **fortūnam**: Caesar firmly believed in his own “good luck.”
- 7, 3. **datūrōs, factūrōs esse**: the subject of both is the same as that of **pollicitī sunt**.—**quae imperāsset**: ind. disc.; in the direct, **quae imperāveris, faciēmus**.
5. **suprā**: 2, 14 ff.
6. **praemissum [esse]**: perf. inf. pass.—**illī**: i. e., the Britons.—**ēgressum**: *when he had landed*.—**cum**: concessive.
7. **ūrātōris modō**: *in the character of (or as) an envoy*.

10 multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut  
 īgnōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum  
 ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petis-  
 sent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūden-  
 tiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem  
 15 statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arces-  
 sitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs  
 remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique con-  
 venīre et sē cīvitatēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepē-  
 runt.

*Caesar's cavalry transports encounter a violent storm*

8. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfīrmātā, post diem quartum  
 quam est in Britanniā ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī dē  
 quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,  
 ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum ad-  
 5 propinquārent Britanniā et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta  
 tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre  
 posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur,  
 aliae ad īferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius  
 sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur;

11. **īgnōscerētur**: impersonal, sc. **sibi**, *that their action might be pardoned.*

13. **bellum sine causā**: the Britons were actually resisting an armed invasion.—**īgnōscere**: the subject is the same as that of **dīxit**.

15. **arcessītam**: *when fetched.*

18. **convenīre**: *with coēpērunt.*

8, 1. **post diem quartum**: *three days after*, according to our reckoning. The Roman counted the day with which he started as the first.

3. **suprā**: chap. 3.—**sustulerant**: *had received on board.*

5. **Britanniāe**: **344**.

6. **tempestās**: a northeast wind, blowing from the North Sea.

7. **aliae . . . aliae**: *some . . . others.*

8. **īferiōrem partem**: somewhere southwest of Deal.

10 quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōiectae continentem petiērunt.

*The fleet is almost wrecked by the storm and high tide*

9. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvīs, quibus Caesar exercitūm trānsportandum 5 cūrāverat quāsque Caesar in āridūm subdūixerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvībus frāctīs reliquae cum essent—fūnībus, ancorīs reli-10 quīsque armāmentīs āmissīs—ad nāvigandūm inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtūs exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deērant, quae ad

10. **complērentur**: *began to fill*; the impf. indicates that the action was incomplete.

11. **adversā nocte**: *in the face of darkness*; concessive, 392.

9, 1. **eādem nocte**: probably August 30th.—**ut esset**: 269.

2. **aestūs māximōs**: in the English Channel the high tides vary from twenty to thirty feet, and these were naturally very strange to the Italians, since the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible.

4. **nāvīs**: obj. of **complēbat**.—**trānsportandum cūrāverat**: *had had the army brought*. The gerundive in agreement with the object is thus used with verbs of Giving, Sending, Caring, Permitting, Undertaking, and the like to express purpose. One of the most common verbs in this construction is **cūrō**. W. 644, 2; B. 337, 7 b, 2; AG. 294 d; H. 622.

8. **administrandī**: *of handling them*.

9. **fūnībus . . . āmissīs**: abl. abs., giving the reason for the ships' being *ad nāvigandūm inūtilēs*.

11. **māgna**: with **perturbātiō**.—**id quod**: *a thing which, as*.

13. **quibus . . . possent**: 282.

reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat  
 15 hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in  
 hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

*The Britons plan to renew hostilities*

10. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs p̄rincipēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deēsse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum 5 exiguitāte cōgnōserent,—quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū inter- 10 clūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īferendī causā in Britanniā trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūratiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

*Caesar suspects their purpose*

11. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur.

14. ūsuī: 416.—omnibus cōnstābat: all were agreed. The subject is hiemārī . . . oportēre.

15 f. in hiemem: for the winter.

10, 1. p̄rincipēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 7.

3 ff. cum . . . intellegerent, cōgnōserent: 376.

5. quae: referring to castrōrum.—hōc: abl. of cause, expanded in quod . . . trānsportāverat.

7. optimum factū: 451, b.

8. rem . . . prōdūcere: to prolong the campaign.

9. hīs . . . interclūsīs: if these should be overcome, etc. Abl. abs. expressing condition, circumstances, 392.—reditū: 206.

11, 2. ex ēventū: from what had befallen his ships.—ex eō quod: from the fact that.

3. fore: = futūrum esse.—suspicābatur: began to suspect.

Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et 5 frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsūi, ex continentī comparāri iubēbat. Itaque cum 10 summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

*He plans to thwart them. They attack a foraging party*

12. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti- 5 tāret, eī qui prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Cae- sarī nūntiāvērunt pulvērem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum

6. māteriā atque aere: *timber and metal.* aes means both copper and bronze, which were used for bolts and to sheathe the beaks of the men-of-war, etc.

7. quae: neuter; the antecedent is the (unexpressed) subject (ea) of comparārī.

10. ut . . . posset : 269.—nāvigārī : impersonal, subj. of pos- set. Translate, *so that they could sail.*

12. 1. geruntur: 370.

2. frūmentātum: 452.

3 f. cūm . . . remanēret, ventitāret: causal.—hominū: i. e., the Britons.—ventitāret: *kept coming and going;* frequentative verb, W. 273, 2; B. 155, 2; AG. 167 b; H. 364.

6. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: *than usual.*

8 f. id quod erat: *the true state of the case,* explained by aliquid cōnsili.—novī cōnsili: 409.—initum [esse]: perf. pass. infin.

9. cohortēs: belonging to the 10th legion. Four cohorts, being ready, started at once, two took their places on guard, and the remaining four followed as quickly as they could arm.

10 in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōnicī animadvertisit.  
 15 Nam quod omni ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucis imperfectīs reliquōs incertīs ūrūnībus perturbāverant,  
 20 simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

*The Britons' use of chariots in battle*

13. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnæ. Prīmō per omnis partēs perequitant et tēla cōniunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ūrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvē-  
 5 runt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurī-  
 gæ interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

11. *armārī*: reflexive, *to arm themselves*.

12. *paulō longius*: *some little distance*.

13. *sustinēre*: *were holding their own*.—*cōferta*: *crowded together*.

16. *pars ūna*: *only one part*; i. e., as yet uncut.—*suspicātī*: *supposing*.

17 f. *dispersōs . . . occupātōs*: agreeing with *nostrōs*, brought over from the line above.

19. *incertī ūrūnībus*: *because their ranks were unsteady*, 392.

13, 1. *ex essedīs*: modifying *pūgnæ*. These war-chariots of the Britons were drawn by two horses, and held six fighting men (*essedāriī*) besides the driver (*aurīga*).

3. *equōrum*: subjective gen., *caused by the horses*.

4. *cum . . . īnsinuāvērunt*: *when they have worked their way in among*, 374.—*equitum turmās*: apparently the Britons' cavalry, so their fighting-line was made up of horse and foot, the dismounted *essedāriī*.

conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac 10 tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitatiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecepitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

*Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force*

14. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitātē pūgnæ tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad laccessendum hostem et com-5 mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et 10 nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibē-

7. illī : the fighting *essedāriī*.

8. expeditum : *ready*.

9. praestant : *display*.

10. tantum . . . efficiunt : *become so expert*.

11. incitātōs : *at full speed*.—*sustinēre* : *to check*.

12. brevī : *within a short space*.

13. iugō : which rested on the necks of the horses and supported the pole (*tēmō*).

14. cōsuērint : shortened form of *cōsuēverint*.

14. 1. perturbātīs nostrīs : dat. with **auxilium** tulit.

5. aliēnum : *unfavorable*.

7 f. nostrīs . . . occupātīs : with fortifying camp and getting supplies.

8. quī . . . reliquī : i. e., the Britons. The antecedent of *quī* is the (unexpressed) subject of *discessērunt*; compare 11, 7.

9 f. quae . . . continērent, prohibērent : *such as to*, etc., 282.

rent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendaē atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētūr, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

*They are defeated in battle*

15. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) 5 sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt; deinde omnibus 10 longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

*Caesar returns to Gaul*

16. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostib⁹ missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īfīrmīs nāvi-

13 f. **praedae faciendaē, suī liberandī**: objective gen. with **facultās**, 157; see also 450.—**darētūr, expulissent**: what do these represent of the direct discourse?

15, 1. **idem**: subject of **fore**, and explained by **ut . . . effugerent**.

3. **equitēs trīgintā**: too few to be of service except in pursuit of a defeated enemy.

4. **ante**: 2, 15; 7, 4.

8. **tantō spatiō**: *over as much distance.*—**quantum . . . potuērunt**: *as their strength enabled them to run.*

16, 4. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: abl. abs.; the equinox is still thought to be a stormy season.—**īfīrmīs nāvibus**: abl. abs.

5 bus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat.  
Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium  
noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-  
tem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae eōsdem por-  
tūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īfrā  
10 dēlātae sunt.

---

5. **hiemī**: *stormy weather.*—**subiciendam** : sc. esse.

7. **solvit**: Napoleon III reckoned that the return to Gaul was made on September 11th or 12th, so that the stay in Britain lasted about three weeks.

9. **capere**: *to make.*—**paulō īfrā**: to the southwest.



## APPENDIX

### TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

#### NOUNS

462

#### FIRST DECLENSION

##### Stem in ā

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	rosa	rosae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs
Accu.	rosam	rosās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs

463

#### SECOND DECLENSION

##### Stem in o

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	servus, serve	servī	dōnum	dōna
Gen.	servī	servōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
Dat.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs
Accu.	servum	servōs	dōnum	dōna
Abl.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
Accu.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	vir	virī
Gen.	virī	virōrum
Dat.	virō	virīs
Accu.	virum	virōs
Abl.	virō	virīs

## 464

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Mute Stems

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	prīnceps	rēx	miles
Gen.	prīncipis	rēgis	militis
Dat.	prīncipi	rēgi	militi
Accu.	prīncipem	rēgem	militem
Abl.	prīncipe	rēge	militē

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
Gen.	prīncipum	rēgum	militum
Dat.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus
Accu.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
Abl.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs	caput
Gen.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
Dat.	vōci	obsidī	virtūtī	capitī
Accu.	vōcem	obsidem	virtūtem	caput
Abl.	vōce	obside	virtūte	capite

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
Gen.	vōcum	obsidum	virtūtum	capitum
Dat.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus
Accu.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
Abl.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

## Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cōsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōsulīs	vīctōris	hominis
DAT.	cōsulī	vīctōrī	homini
ACCU.	cōsulem	vīctōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōsule	vīctōre	homine

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	vīctōrūm	hominūm
DAT.	cōsulibūs	vīctōribūs	hominibūs
ACCU.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōsulibūs	vīctōribūs	hominibūs

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōmini	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminūm	honōrum	corporūm
DAT.	nōminibūs	honōribūs	corporibūs
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibūs	honōribūs	corporibūs

## Stems in i

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cīvis	hostīs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostīs	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACCU.	cīvēm	hostēm	nūbēm
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hostē	nūbe

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālis
DAT.	marī	animālī
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	marī	animālī

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	maria	animālia
GEN.	—	animālium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus
ACCU.	maria	animālia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus

## Mixed Stems

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	arx	urbs	cliēns
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arcī	urbī	clientī
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	clientēs, -īs
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

465

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## Stem in u

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	<b>manus</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>domus</b>
GEN.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b>	<b>domūs</b>
DAT.	<b>manuī, -ū</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>domuī, -ō</b>
ACCU.	<b>manum</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>domum</b>
ABL.	<b>manū</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>domū, -ō</b>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>domūs</b>
GEN.	<b>manuum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>	<b>domuum, -ōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>manibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>domibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>domūs, -ōs</b>
ABL.	<b>manibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>domibus</b>

466

## FIFTH DECLENSION

## Stem in ē

## SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diēī</b>	<b>rei</b>
DAT.	<b>diēī</b>	<b>rei</b>
ACCU.	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>
ABL.	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>
DAT.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>
ACCU.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>

## ADJECTIVES

467

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<b>bonus</b> , bone	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
Gen.	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
Dat.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
Accu.	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
Abl.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
Gen.	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
Accu.	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
Abl.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<b>niger</b>	<b>nigra</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
Gen.	<b>nigrī</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrī</b>
Dat.	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrō</b>
Accu.	<b>nigrum</b>	<b>nigram</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
Abl.	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrā</b>	<b>nigrō</b>

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	<b>nigrī</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigra</b>
Gen.	<b>nigrōrum</b>	<b>nigrārum</b>	<b>nigrōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>
Accu.	<b>nigrōs</b>	<b>nigrās</b>	<b>nigra</b>
Abl.	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Accu.	miserum	misera	miserum
Abl.	miserō	misera	miserō

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Accu.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

468

## THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER		MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	audāx	audāx		audācēs	audācia
Gen.		audācis			audācium
Dat.		audāci			audācibus
Accu.	audācem	audāx		audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Abl.		audāci			audācibus

## SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER		MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	amāns	amāns		amantēs	amantia
Gen.		amantis			amantium
Dat.		amantī			amantibus
Accu.	amantem	amāns		amantis, -ēs	amantia
Abl.		amante, -ī			amantibus

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER		MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte		fortēs	fortia	
GEN.		fortis			fortium	
DAT.		fortī			fortibus	
ACCU.	fortem	forte		fortīs, -ēs	fortia	
ABL.		fortī			fortibus	
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācībus	ācībus	ācībus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācīs, -ēs	ācīs, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācībus	ācībus	ācībus

## 469

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular and *-ī* in the Dative Singular: *ūnus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūllus*, *nūllus*, *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *neuter*. In the plural they are all declined like *bonus*. The following paradigms show the declension of four in the singular:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūniūs	utriūs	utriūs	utriūs
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACCU.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	alteriūs	alteriūs	alteriūs
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACCU.	alium	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

## THE NUMERALS DUO AND TRÉS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	tribus
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACCU.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -īs	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

470

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.		fortiōris		fortiōrum
DAT.		fortiōrī		fortiōribus
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
ABL.		fortiōre		fortiōribus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris		plūrium
DAT.	—	—		plūribus
ACCU.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre		plūribus

471

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult</i>	<i>difficilior</i>	<i>difficillimus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i>	<i>dissimilior</i>	<i>dissimillimus</i>
<i>humilis, low</i>	<i>humilior</i>	<i>humillimus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracilior</i>	<i>gracillimus</i>
( <i>posteri</i> ) <i>posterior, later</i>	{ <i>postrēmus, latest, last</i>	
	{ <i>postumus, late born</i>	
( <i>exteri</i> ) <i>exterior, outer</i>	{ <i>extrēmus</i>	{ <i>outermost</i>
	{ <i>extimus,</i>	
( <i>inferi</i> ) <i>inferior, lower</i>	{ <i>īfimus</i>	{ <i>lowest</i>
	{ <i>īmus</i>	
( <i>superi</i> ) <i>superior, higher</i>	{ <i>suprēmus, last</i>	
	{ <i>summus, highest</i>	

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare <i>prae, before</i> ) <i>prior, former</i>	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>
" <i>citrā, this side of</i>	<i>citerior, hither</i>	<i>citimus, hithermost</i>
" <i>ultrā, beyond</i>	<i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest, last</i>
" <i>in, intrā, in, within</i>	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
" <i>prope, near</i> ) <i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, nearest, next</i>

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, ill</i>	<i>pēius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimū</i>
<i>parum, (too) little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>māximē</i>

478

## NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	II
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	III or IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII or XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sexturnus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XVIII or XIX
20. vīgintī	vīcēnsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus (or ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēnsimus prīmus (ūnus et vīcēnsimus, etc.)	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quādrāgēnsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXIX or XC
100. centum	centēnsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus prīmus, etc.	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400. quadrēgentī	quadrēgentēnsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	IO, or D
600. sescentī	sescentēnsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1,000. mille	millēnsimus	CIO, or M
5,000. quīnque mīlia	quīnquiēns millēnsimus	ICCI
10,000. decem mīlia	deciēns millēnsimus	CCIO
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēns millēnsimus	CCCCOOO

## PRONOUNS

474

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

#### SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
Nom., Voc.      ego	tū	—
Gen.            meī	tuī	suī
Dat.            mihī, mī	tibī	sibī
Accu.           mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Abl.            mē	tē	sē, sēsē

#### PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	nōs	vōs	—
Gen.	nostrum, nostri	vestrum, vestri	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibī
Accu.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

475

### DEMONSTRATIVE

#### SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	hic	haec	hōc
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic
Accu.	hunc	hanc	hōc
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	hi	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACCU.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	īdem	e'adēm	idem
GEN.	ēius'dem	ēiusdēm	ēiusdēm
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACCU.	eun'dem	eāndēm	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādēm	eōdem

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedēm	e'adēm
GEN.	eōrun'dem	eārundēm	eōrundēm
DAT.	{ eīs'dem iīs'dem	eīsdēm iīsdēm	eīsdēm iīsdēm
ACCU.	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adēm
ABL.	{ eīsdēm iīsdēm	eīsdēm iīsdēm	eīsdēm iīsdēm

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	iste	ista	istud
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus
DAT.	istī	istī	istī
ACCU.	istum	istam	istud
ABL.	istō	istā	istō

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACCU.	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istīs	istīs	istīs

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACCU.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACCU.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

476

## RELATIVE

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

## PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	qui	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACCU.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

477

## INTERROGATIVE

## SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

## PLURAL

Like **qui** relative

(a) When the adjective form **qui** is used, the declension throughout coincides with that of the relative

478

## INDEFINITE

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis (-qui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACCU.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

## PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACCU.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
Gen.	cūius'dam	cūiūsdam	cūiūsdam
Dat.	cūīdam	cūīdam	cūīdam
Accu.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

## PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACCU.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(a) *quisque, each, quisquam, any at all; si quis, if any, nē quis, that not (lest) any* are all declined like *quis (qui)* interrogative.

**REGULAR VERBS**

479

FIRST CONJUGATION

Stem in ā

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

amō, *I love*  
 amās, *thou lovest (you love)*  
 amat, *he (she, it) loves*  
 amāmus, *we love*  
 amātis, *you love*  
 amant, *they love*

PASSIVE

amor, *I am loved*  
 amāris (-re), *you are loved*  
 amātūr, *he is loved*  
 amāmūr, *we are loved*  
 amāmīnī, *you are loved*  
 amantur, *they are loved*

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I loved, was loving*  
 amābās, *you loved*  
 amābat, *he loved*  
 amābāmus, *we loved*  
 amābātis, *you loved*  
 amābant, *they loved*

amābar, *I was loved*  
 amābāris (-re), *you were loved*  
 amābātūr, *he was loved*  
 amābāmūr, *we were loved*  
 amābāmīnī, *you were loved*  
 amābāntur, *they were loved*

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love*  
 amābis, *you will love*  
 amābit, *he will love*  
 amābīmus, *we shall love*  
 amābitis, *you will love*  
 amābunt, *they will love*

amābor, *I shall be loved*  
 amāberis (-re), *you will be loved*  
 amābitūr, *he will be loved*  
 amābīmūr, *we shall be loved*  
 amābīmīnī, *you will be loved*  
 amābūntur, *they will be loved*

## PERFECT

## ACTIVE

amāvī, *I loved*  
 amāvistī, *you loved*  
 amāvit, *he loved*  
 amāvimus, *we loved*  
 amāvistis, *you loved*  
 amāvērunt (-ēre), *they loved*

## PASSIVE

amātus amātī	sum, <i>I was loved</i> es, <i>you were loved</i> est, <i>he was loved</i> sumus, <i>we were loved</i> estis, <i>you were loved</i> sunt, <i>they were loved</i>
-----------------	---

## PLUPERFECT

amāveram, *I had loved*  
 amāverās, *you had loved*  
 amāverat, *he had loved*  
 amāverāmus, *we had loved*  
 amāverātis, *you had loved*  
 amāverant, *they had loved*

amātus amātī	eram, <i>I had been loved</i> erās, <i>you had been loved</i> erat, <i>he had been loved</i> erāmus, <i>we had been loved</i> erātis, <i>you had been loved</i> erant, <i>they had been loved</i>
-----------------	--

## FUTURE PERFECT

amāverō, *I shall have loved*  
 amāveris, *you will have loved*  
 amāverit, *he will have loved*  
 amāverimus, *we shall have loved*  
 amāveritis, *you will have loved*  
 amāverint, *they will have loved*

amātus amātī	erō, <i>I shall have been loved</i> eris, <i>you will have, etc.</i> erit, <i>he will have, etc.</i> erimus, <i>we shall have, etc.</i> eritis, <i>you will have, etc.</i> erunt, <i>they will have, etc.</i>
-----------------	--

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

amem amēs amet amēmus amētis ament	amer amēris (-re) amētur amēmur amēminī amentur
---	--

## IMPERFECT

## ACTIVE

amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

## PASSIVE

amārer  
amārēris (-re)  
amārētur  
amārēmur  
amārēminī  
amārentur

## PERFECT

amāverim  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

amātus { sim  
              { sis  
              { sit  
amātī { sīmus  
              { sītis  
              { sint

## PLUPERFECT

amāvissem  
amāvissēs  
amāvisset  
amāvissēmus  
amāvissētis  
amāvissent

amātus { essem  
              { essēs  
              { esset  
amātī { essēmus  
              { essētis  
              { essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

amā, love (*thou*)  
amāte, love (*ye*)

amāre, be (*thou*) loved  
amāminī, be (*ye*) loved

## FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*  
amātō, *he shall love*  
amātōte, *ye shall love*  
amantō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*  
amātor, *he shall be loved*

---

amantor, *they shall be loved*

## INFINITIVE

## ACTIVE

PRES.	<i>amāre</i> , <i>to love</i>	<i>amāri</i> , <i>to be loved</i>
PERF.	<i>amāvisse</i> , <i>to have loved</i>	<i>amātus esse</i> , <i>to have been loved</i>
FUT.	<i>amātūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to be loved</i>	<i>amātum irī</i> , <i>to be about to be loved</i>

## PASSIVE

PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	<i>amāns</i> , <i>-antis</i> , <i>loving</i>	
	GER.	<i>amandus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>to be loved</i>
FUT.	<i>amātūrus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>about to love</i>	
	PERF.	<i>amātus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>loved</i> , <i>having been loved</i>

## GERUND

NOM.	_____	SUPINE
GEN.	<i>amandi</i> , <i>of loving</i>	<i>amātum</i> , <i>to love</i> .
DAT.	<i>amandō</i> , <i>for loving</i>	<i>amātū</i> , <i>to love, to be loved</i>
ACCU.	<i>amandum</i> , <i>loving</i>	
ABL.	<i>amandō</i> , <i>by loving</i>	

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>amātūrus sum</i> , { <i>I am about to love</i>	<i>amātūrus sim</i>
IMPERF.	" <i>eram</i>	" <i>essem</i>
FUT.	" <i>erō</i>	
PERF.	" <i>fui</i>	" <i>fuerim</i>
PLUP.	" <i>fueram</i>	" <i>fuissem</i>
FUT. PERF.	" <i>fuerō</i>	

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>amātūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to love</i>
PERF.	" <i>fuisse</i> , <i>to have been about to love</i>

## PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	amandus sum, { <i>I have to (must) be loved</i>	amandus sim
IMPERF.	" eram	" essem
FUT.	" erō	
PERF.	" fui	" fuerim
PLUP.	" fueram	" fuissem
FUT. PERF.	" fuerō	

## INFINITIVE

PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved*  
 PERF. " fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

480

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## Stem in ē

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
habeō, <i>I have, etc.</i>	habeor, <i>I am had, held</i>	
habēs	habēris (-re)	
habet	habētur	
habēmus	habēmur	
habētis	habēminī	
habent	habentur	

## IMPERFECT

habēbam, <i>I was having, etc.</i>	habēbar, <i>I was had, held</i>
habēbās	habēbāris (-re)
habēbat	habēbātur
habēbāmus	habēbāmur
habēbātis	habēbāminī
habēbānt	habēbāntur

## FUTURE

## ACTIVE

habēbō, *I shall have*, etc.  
 habēbis  
 habēbit  
 habēbimus  
 habēbitis  
 habēbunt

## PASSIVE

habēbor, *I shall be had, held*  
 habēberis (-re)  
 habēbitur  
 habēbimur  
 habēbimini  
 habēbuntur

## PERFECT

habui, *I have had*, etc.

habuisti  
 habuit

habuimus  
 habuistis  
 habuērunt (-ēre)

habitus { sum, *I have been*  
           { es      [had, held]  
           { est

habitī { sumus  
           { estis  
           { sunt

## PLUPERFECT

habueram, *I had had*, etc.

habuerās  
 habuerat

habuerāmus  
 habuerātis  
 habuerant

habitus { eram, *I had been*  
           { erās      [had, held]  
           { erat

habitī { erāmus  
           { erātis  
           { erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

habuerō, *I shall have had*, etc.

habueris  
 habuerit

habuerimus  
 habueritis  
 habuerint

habitus { erō, *I shall have been*  
           { eris      [had, held]  
           { erit

habitī { erimus  
           { eritis  
           { erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeam	habear
habeās	habeāris (-re)
habeat	habeātur
habeāmus	habeāmur
habeātis	habeāminī
habeant	habeantur

## IMPERFECT

habērem	habērer
habērēs	habērēris (-re)
habēret	habērētur
habērēmus	habērēmur
habērētis	habērēminī
habērent	habērentur

## PERFECT

habuerim	habitus	{ sim	
habueris		sīs	
habuerit		sit	
habuerimus	habitī	{ sīmus	
habueritīs		sītis	
habuerint		sint	

## PLUPERFECT

habuissem	habitus	{ essem	
habuissēs		essēs	
habuisset		esset	
habuissēmus	habitī	{ essēmus	
habuissētis		essētis	
habuissent		essent	

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

**habē,** *have (thou)*  
**habēte,** *have (ye)*

**habēre,** *be (thou) had, held*  
**habēmini,** *be (ye) had, held*

## FUTURE

**habētō,** *thou shalt have*  
**habētō,** *he shall have*  
**habētōte,** *ye shall have*  
**habentō,** *they shall have*

**habētor,** *thou shalt be had,*  
**habētor,** *he shall, etc.* [held  


---

  
**habentor,** *they shall be had,*  
[held]

## INFINITIVE

PRES. **habēre,** *to have*

**habēri,** *to be had*

PERF. **habuisse,** *to have had*

**habitus esse,** *to have been had*

FUT. **habitūrus esse,** *to be  
about to have*

**habitum īrī,** *to be about to  
be had*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. **habēns, -entis,** *having*

GER. **habendus, -a, -um,** *to*

FUT. **habitūrus, -a, -um,**

*be had*

*about to have*

PERF. **habitus, -a, -um,** *had,*

*having been had*

## GERUND

NOM. —

## SUPINE

GEN. **habendi**

ACCU. **habitum**

DAT. **habendō**

ABL. **habitū**

ACCU. **habendum**

ABL. **habendō**

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. **habitūrus sum,** *I am about to have.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. **habendus sum,** *I must be had.* Etc.

481

## THIRD CONJUGATION

Stem in ē  
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
regō, <i>I rule</i> , etc.	regor, <i>I am ruled</i> , etc.	
regis	regeris (-re)	
regit	regitur	
regimus	regimur	
regitis	regiminī	
regunt	reguntur	

## IMPERFECT

regēbam, <i>I was ruling</i> , etc.	regēbar, <i>I was ruled</i> , etc.
regēbās	regēbāris (-re)
regēbat	regēbātur
regēbāmus	regēbāmur
regēbātis	regēbāminī
regēbant	regēbantur

## FUTURE

regam, <i>I shall rule</i> , etc.	regar, <i>I shall be ruled</i> , etc.
regēs	regēris (-re)
reget	regētur
regēmīs	regēmūr
regētīs	regēmīnī
regent	regentur

## PERFECT

rēxī, <i>I have ruled</i> , etc.	rēctus { sum, <i>I have been</i>
rēxistī	es [ruled, etc.]
rēxit	est
rēximus	sumus
rēxistis	estis
rēxērunt (-re)	sunt

## PLUPERFECT

## ACTIVE

rēxeram, *I had ruled*, etc.

rēxerās

rēxerat

rēxerāmus

rēxerātis

rēxerant

## PASSIVE

erām, *I had been*  
erās [ruled, etc.  
eraterāmus  
erātis  
erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled*,

rēxeris

rēxerit

rēxerimus

rēxeritis

rēxerint

erō, *I shall have been*  
etc. rēctus  
eris [ruled, etc.  
eriterimus  
eritis  
erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

regam

regar

regās

regāris (-re)

regat

regātur

regāmus

regāmur

regātis

regāmini

regant

regantur

## IMPERFECT

regerem

regerer

regerēs

regerēris (-re)

regeret

regerētur

regerēmus

regerēmur

regerētis

regerēmini

regerent

regerentur

## PERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rēxerim	sim
rēxeris	rēctus { sis
rēxerit	sit
rēxerimus	sīmus
rēxeritis	rēctī { sītis
rēxerint	sint

## PLUPERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rēxissem	essem
rēxisſes	rēctus { essēs
rēxisset	esset
rēxiſſēmus	essēmus
rēxiſſētis	rēctī { essētis
rēxiſſent	essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rege, rule ( <i>thou</i> )	regere, be ( <i>thou</i> ) ruled
regite, rule ( <i>ye</i> )	regimini, be ( <i>ye</i> ) ruled

## FUTURE

rēgitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
rēgitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
rēgitōte, ye shall rule	—
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

## INFINITIVE

PRES. regere, to rule	regi, to be ruled
PERF. rēxisse, to have ruled	rēctus esse, to have been ruled
FUT. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule	rēctum īrī, to be about to be ruled

## PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	<i>regēns, ruling</i>	<i>regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled</i>
FUT.	<i>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</i>	<i>rēctus, -a, -um, ruled, having been ruled</i>
	GERUND	SUPINE
NOM.	—	<i>rēctum</i>
GEN.	<i>regendī</i>	<i>rēctū</i>
DAT.	<i>regendō</i>	
ACCU.	<i>regendum</i>	
ABL.	<i>regendō</i>	

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

	ACTIVE
PRES.	<i>rectūrus sum, I am about to rule.</i> Etc.
	PASSIVE
PRES.	<i>regendus sum, I must be ruled.</i> Etc.

Verbs in -iō  
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

## INDICATIVE

	PRESENT	PAST
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
capiō, <i>I take, etc.</i>		<i>capior, I am taken, etc.</i>
capis		<i>caperis (-re)</i>
capit		<i>capitur</i>
capimus		<i>capimur</i>
capitis		<i>capimini</i>
capiunt		<i>capiuntur</i>

## IMPERFECT

## ACTIVE

capiēbam

## PASSIVE

capiēbar

## FUTURE

capiam

capiar

capiēs

capiēris (-re)

capiet, etc.

capiētur, etc.

## PERFECT

cēpī

captus sum

## PLUPERFECT

cēperam

captus eram

## FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō

captus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

capiam

capiar

capiās

capiāris (-re)

capiat

capiātur

capiāmus

capiāmur

capiātis

capiāmini

capiant

capiantur

## IMPERFECT

caperem

caperer

## PERFECT

cēperim

captus sim

## PLUPERFECT

cēpissem

captus essem

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

cape, *take (thou)*  
capite, *take (ye)*

## PASSIVE

capere, *be (thou) taken*  
capimini, *be (ye) taken*

## FUTURE

capitō, *thou shalt take,*  
etc.

capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*  
etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, *to take*

capi, *to be taken*

PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken*

captus esse, *to have been  
taken*

FUT. captūrus esse, *to be  
about to take*

captum irī, *to be about to be  
taken*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, *taking*

GER. capiendus, -a, -um, *to*

FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, *about  
to take*

be taken

PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken*

## GERUND

GEN. capiendi, etc.

## SUPINE

captum                    captū

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. captūrus sum, *I am about to take.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. capiendus sum, *I must be taken.* Etc.

483

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

Stem in ī

**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

audiō, *I hear, etc.*

audis

audit

audīmus

audītis

audiunt

## PASSIVE

audior, *I am heard, etc.*

audīris (-re)

audītur

audīmur

audīminī

audiuntur

## IMPERFECT

audiēbam, *I was hearing, audiēbar, I was heard, etc.*

audiēbās [etc. audiēbāris (-re)]

audiēbat

audiēbāmus

audiēbātis

audiēbant

audiēbāmur

audiēbāminī

audiēbantur

## FUTURE

audiam, *I shall hear, etc. audiār, I shall be heard, etc.*

audiēs audiēris (-re)

audiēt audiētur

audiēmus audiēmur

audiētis audiēminī

audient audientur

## PERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
audīvī, <i>I have heard</i> , etc.	
audīvistī	auditūs { sum, <i>I have been</i>
audīvit	es [heard, etc.]
audīvimus	est
audīvistis	
audīvērunt (-re)	auditī { sumus estis sunt

## PLUPERFECT

audīveram, <i>I had heard</i> , etc.	
audīverās	auditūs { eram, <i>I had been</i>
audīverat	erās [heard, etc.]
audīverāmus	erat
audīverātis	
audīverant	auditī { erāmus erātis erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

audīverō, <i>I shall have heard</i> ,	
audīveris	auditūs { erō, <i>I shall have</i>
audīverit	eris [been heard,
	{ erit [etc.]
audīverimus	
audīveritis	auditī { erimus
audīverint	eritis { erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiām	audiār
audiās	audiāris (-re)
audiāt	audiātur
audiāmus	audiāmur
audiātis	audiāminī
audiānt	audiāntur

## IMPERFECT

## ACTIVE

audīrem  
audīrēs  
audīret  
audīrēmus  
audīrētis  
audīrent

## PASSIVE

audīrer  
audīrēris (-re)  
audīrētur  
audīrēmur  
audīrēminī  
audīrentur

## PERFECT

audīverim  
audīveris  
audīverit  
audīverimus  
audīveritis  
audīverint

audītus { sim  
              { sis  
              { sit  
audītī { simus  
              { sitis  
              { sint

## PLUPERFECT

audīvissem  
audīvissēs  
audīvisset  
audīvissēmus  
audīvissētis  
audīvissent

audītus { essem  
              { essēs  
              { esset  
audītī { essēmus  
              { essētis  
              { essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

audī, hear (*thou*)  
audīte, hear (*ye*)

audīre, be (*thou*) heard  
audīminī, be (*ye*) heard

## FUTURE

audītō, thou shalt hear, etc.  
audītō  
audītōte  
audiuntō

audītor, thou shalt be heard,  
auditor [etc.  
—  
audiunctor

## INFINITIVE

## ACTIVE

PRES. **audīre**, *to hear*  
 PERF. **audīvisse**, *to have heard*  
 FUT. **audītūrus esse**, *to be about to hear*

## PASSIVE

**audīrī**, *to be heard*  
**audītus esse**, *to have been heard*  
**audītum irī**, *to be about to be heard*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. **audiēns**, *hearing*  
 FUT. **audītūrus**, *-a, -um, about to hear*

GER. **audiendus, -a, -um**, *to be heard*  
 PERF. **audītus, -a, -um**, *heard, having been heard*

## GERUND

**audiendi**, *-dō, -dum, -dō*

## SUPINE

**audītum, audītū**

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. **audītūrus sum**, *I am about to hear.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. **audiendus sum**, *I must be heard.* Etc.

CONJ. I	<b>hortor</b> ,	<b>hortārī</b> ,	<b>hortātus</b> ,	<i>to urge</i>
CONJ. II	<b>vereor</b> ,	<b>verērī</b> ,	<b>veritus</b> ,	<i>to fear</i>
CONJ. III	<b>sequor</b> ,	<b>sequī</b> ,	<b>secūtus</b>	<i>to follow</i>
CONJ. IV	<b>potior</b> ,	<b>potirī</b> ,	<b>potitus</b> ,	<i>to get possession</i>

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potirīs (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitūr
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmī	verēmī	sequimī	potimī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
	eram	eram	eram	eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secutus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secutus	potītus
	essem	essem	essem	essem

## IMPERATIVE

hortāre, etc. verēre, etc. sequere, etc. potire, etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secutus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potītūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potītūrus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secutus	potītus

## GERUND

hortandī,	verendī,	sequendī,	potiendī,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## SUPINE

hortatum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū potitum, -tū

(a) Notice that Deponent Verbs have the Active form of the Future Infinitive and the Participles of both voices.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

485

Sum, esse, fuī

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

sum, *I am*  
es, *you are*  
est, *he (she, it) is*

## PLURAL

sumus, *we are*  
estis, *you are*  
sunt, *they are*

## IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*  
erās, *you were*  
erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*  
erātis, *you were*  
erant, *they were*

## FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*  
eris, *you will be*  
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*  
eritis, *you will be*  
erunt, *they will be*

## PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*  
fuistī, *you have been, were*  
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, were*  
fuistis, *you have been, were*  
fuērunt (-ēre), *they have  
been, were*

## PLUPERFECT

## SINGULAR

fueram, *I had been*  
 fuerās, *you had been*  
 fuerat, *he had been*

## PLURAL

fuerāmus, *we had been*  
 fuerātis, *you had been*  
 fuerant, *they had been*

## FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*  
 fueris, *you will have been*  
 fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*  
 fueritis, *you will have been*  
 fuerint, *they will have been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

sim  
 sis  
 sit

sīmus  
 sītis  
 sint

## IMPERFECT

essem  
 essēs  
 esset

essēmus  
 essētis  
 essent

## PERFECT

fuerim  
 fueris  
 fuerit

fuerīmus  
 fuerītis  
 fuerint

## PLUPERFECT

fuissem  
 fuiſſēs  
 fuiſſet

fuissēmus  
 fuissētis  
 fuissent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

es, *be (thou)*

este, *be (ye)*

## FUTURE

estō, *thou shalt be*  
 estō, *he shall be*

estōte, *ye shall be*  
 suntō, *they shall be*

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	<i>esse, to be</i>	FUT. <i>futūrus, -a, -um, about</i>
PERF.	<i>fuisse, to have been</i>	<i>to be</i>
FUT.	<i>futūrus, esse</i> <i>(fore), to be about to be</i>	

(a) *possum, posse, potui, to be able, can*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>possum, I can</i>	<i>possim</i>
	<i>potes, you can</i>	<i>possis</i>
	<i>potest, he can</i>	<i>possit</i>
	<i>possimus, we can</i>	<i>possimus</i>
	<i>potestis, you can</i>	<i>possitis</i>
	<i>possunt, they can</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPF.	<i>poteram, I could</i>	<i>possem</i>
FUT.	<i>poterō, I shall be able</i>	
PERF.	<i>potui, I could</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
PLUP.	<i>potueram, I had been able</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
F. P.	<i>potuerō, I shall have been able</i>	
INFIN. PRES.	<i>posse, to be able</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse, to have</i>
PART.	<i>potēns (adj.), powerful</i>	[ <i>been able</i>

(b) *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, to help*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>prōsum, I help</i>	<i>prōsim</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōsis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsit</i>
	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPF.	prōderam, <i>I was helping</i>	prōdessem
FUT.	prōderō, <i>I shall help</i>	
PERF.	prōfui, <i>I helped</i>	prōfuerim
PLUP.	prōfueram, <i>I had helped</i>	prōfuissem
F. P.	prōfuerō, <i>I shall have helped</i>	
IMPER.	prōdes, prōdestō, etc.	
INFIN. PRES.	prōdesse	PERF. prōfuisse
PART.	prōfutūrus, <i>about to help</i>	FUT. prōfutūrus esse

487      volō, velle, volui, —, *to be willing, will, wish*  
           nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, *to be unwilling, will not*  
           mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *to be more willing, prefer*

	INDICATIVE	
PRES.	volō, <i>I wish</i>	nōlō, <i>I will not</i>
	vīs	nōn vīs
	vult	nōn vult
	volumus	nōlumus
	vultis	nōn vultis
	volunt	nōlunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō

	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	velim	nōlim
	velis	nōlis
	velit	nōlit
	velimus	nōlimus
	velitis	nōlitis
	velint	nōlint

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*)

IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī	—
		nōlīte	
FUT.	—	nōlītō, etc.	—

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

488

1 eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itūrus, go

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	eō, īs, it	eam, eās, eat
	īmus, itis, eunt	ēāmus, eātis, eant
IMPF.	ībam, ibās, ibat	īrem, īrēs, īret
	ibāmus, ibātis, ibant	īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
FUT.	ibō, ibis, ibit	
	ibimus, ibitis, ibunt	
PERF.	(īvī), ii	(iverim) ierim
PLUP.	(iveram) ieram	(ivisse) īsse
F. P.	(iverō) ierō	

## IMPERATIVE

ī, īte, ītō, ītō, ītōte, euntō

## INFINITIVE

PRES. īre	PERF. (ivisse) īsse	FUT. itūrus esse
-----------	---------------------	------------------

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. **iēns, euntis**      FUT. **itūrus**      GER. **eundum**

GERUND: **eundi, -dō, -dum, -dō**      SUPINE: **itum, itū**

(a) The compounds **adeō**, *approach*, **ineō**, *enter*, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive:

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<b>adeor</b>	IMPF.	<b>adibar</b>
	<b>adiris</b>	FUT.	<b>adibor</b>
	<b>aditur</b>	PERF.	<b>aditus sum</b>
	<b>adimur</b>	PLUP.	<b>aditus eram</b>
	<b>adimini</b>	F. P.	<b>aditus erō</b>
	<b>adeuntur</b>		

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<b>adear</b>
	<b>adirer</b>
	<b>aditus sim</b>
	<b>aditus essem</b>
	<b>aditus esse</b>
	<b>aditus adeundus</b>

(b) In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

2 **fiō, fieri, factus sum, to be made, become**

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<b>fiō</b>		SUBJUNCTIVE	<b>fiam</b>
	<b>fīs</b>			<b>fiās</b>
	<b>fit</b>			<b>fiat</b>
	<b>fīmus</b>			<b>fiāmus</b>
	<b>fītis</b>			<b>fiātis</b>
	<b>fīunt</b>			<b>fiant</b>
IMPF.	<b>fiēbam</b>			<b>fierem</b>
FUT.	<b>fiam</b>			
PERF.	<b>factus sum</b>			<b>factus sim</b>
PLUP.	<b>factus eram</b>			<b>factus essem</b>
F. P.	<b>factus erō</b>			

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	<b>fi</b>	<b>fite</b>	INFINITIVE	<b>fieri</b>
FUT.	<b>fitō</b>	<b>fitōte</b>		<b>factus esse</b>
	<b>fitō</b>	<b>fiuntō</b>	FUT.	<b>factum irī</b>

## PARTICIPLES

PERF. factus, -a, -um      GER. faciendus, -a, -um

489

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear

## ACTIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris (-re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tuli	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUP.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum irī

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus

GERUND : ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō      SUPINE : lātum, -tū

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THE following vocabulary contains all the words used in the preceding lessons and in the account of Caesar's Invasion of Britain given in § 461; but the words given in the special vocabularies to the reading exercises are not repeated here. The present infinitive only is given of verbs conjugated like **amō**. The component parts of compound verbs are shown in parentheses immediately after the verbs; allied words follow the meanings as in the vocabularies to the lessons. A numeral after the meanings refers to the lesson in which the word is first used, unless preceded by the sign of a section. The few abbreviations will be readily understood.

### A

**ā**, **ab**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. abl., *from, by*, 9.  
**abdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus (**ab** + **dō**), *to put away, to hide; sē abdere, to hide one's self; abditus, -a, -um, hidden*, 51.  
**abeō**, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (**ab** + **eō**), *to go off, go away*, 47.  
**absum**, -esse, āfūī, āfutūrus (**ab** + **sum**), *to be away, absent*, 13.  
**āc**, conj., see **atque**.  
**accēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ad** + **cēdō**), *to approach, draw near*, 49.  
**accidō**, -ere, -cidī, —, *to fall, happen*, 51.  
**acciipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**ad** + **capiō**), *to receive, accept, get*, 37.  
**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *sharp, keen, active*, 21.

**aciēs**, -ēī, f., *line of battle*, 26.  
**āriter**, adv., *sharply, eagerly (ācer)*, 25.  
**ad**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *to, toward; w. names of towns, in the vicinity of*, 13.  
**addūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (**ad** + **dūcō**), *to lead to, bring, induce*, 50.  
**adeō**, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (**ad** + **eō**), *to go to, approach*, 53.  
**adferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (**ad** + **ferō**), *to bear to, bring up*, 51.  
**adflictō**, -āre, *to dash against, wreck, shatter*, § 461.  
**adfligō**, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *to shatter, injure*, § 461.  
**adgregō**, -āre, *to gather, join*, § 461.  
**adigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (**ad** + **agō**), *to drive to, hurl, cast*, § 461.

**aditus**, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival, access* (**adeō**), 53.  
**adiungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnetus, *to join to, attach, unite*, 55.  
**adiuvō**, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, aid*, 28.  
**administrō**, -āre, *to manage, carry on*, 15.  
**admittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (**ad** + **mitto**), *to commit, allow, bring on one's self*, § 461.  
**adorior**, -īrī, -ortus (**ad** + **orior**), *to rise up against, attack*, 44.  
**adpropinquō**, -āre, *to approach* (**propinquus**), 17.  
**adsum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (**ad** + **sum**), *to be present*, 25.  
**adulēscēns**, -ntis, adj., *young; as a substantive, young man*, 46.  
**adventus**, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*, 31.  
**adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *opposite, unfavorable*, 51.  
**aedificium**, -ī, n., *building* (**aedificō**), 27.  
**aedificō**, -āre, *to build*, 9.  
**aeger**, *aegra, aegrum*, adj., *sick, feeble*, 7.  
**aegrē**, adv., *feeably, with difficulty*, § 461.  
**Aemilius**, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, 37.  
**aequinoctium**, -ī, n., *equinox (aequus, nox)*, § 461.  
**aequus**, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal, fair*, 39.  
**aes**, *aeris*, n., *metal, copper, bronze*, § 461.  
**aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer*, 20.  
**aestus**, -ūs, m., *tide*, § 461.  
**aetās**, -ātis, f., *age, time of life*, 39.

**Africa**, -ae, f., *Africa*, 32.  
**ager**, *agrī*, m., *field, land*, 6.  
**agmen**, -inis, n., *line of march* (**agō**), 26.  
**agō**, -ere, *ēgī, āctus, drive, lead, do, discuss; grātiās agere, to express thanks*, 32.  
**agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer* (**ager**), 4.  
**alacritās**, -ātis, f., *eagerness, zeal*, § 461.  
**Alcibiadēs**, -is, m., *Alcibiades*, 35.  
**aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *another's, others' foreign* (**alius**), 56.  
**aliquis**, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some, any* (declined, § 478), 52.  
**alius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; aliis . . . aliis, one . . . another* (decl. § 469), 41.  
**alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the other of two* (declined, § 469), 44.  
**altitūdō**, -inis, f., *height* (**altus**), 24.  
**altum**, -ī, n., *the deep* (**altus**), § 461.  
**altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*, 22.  
**amīcitia**, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance, friendly relations* (**amīcūs**), 11.  
**amīcūs**, -ī, m., *friend* (**amō**), 4.  
**āmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (**ā** + **mittō**), *to let go, lose*, 31.  
**amō**, -āre, *to love* (conj. § 479), 1.  
**amor**, -ōris, m., *love, affection* (**amō**), 17.  
**ancilla**, -ae, f., *maid-servant*, 1.  
**aneora**, -ae, f., *anchor*, § 461.  
**angustē**, adv., *narrowly, closely* (**angustus**), § 461.

**angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, close, confined*, § 461.

**animadvertisō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus (*animum + advertō*), *to turn the mind to, notice*, 52.

**animal**, -ālis, n., *living being, animal*, 18.

**animus**, -ī, m., *mind, courage, soul*, 11.

**annus**, -ī, m., *year*, 20.

**ante**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *before*, 15.

**antequām** (*ante + quam*), conj., *before* (see § 367, n. 1), 47.

**anteā**, adv., *before, previously (ante)*, 34.

**Antiochus**, -ī, m., *Antiochus*, 34.

**antīquus**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old (ante)*, 6.

**apertus**, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*, § 461.

**appellō**, -āre, *address, call, name*, 9.

**Appius**, -ī, m., *Appius*, 31.

**apud**, prep. w. accu., *with, before, by, near, among*, 17.

**Āpūlia**, -ae, f., *Apulia*, 37.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water*, 27.

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle, standard, of a legion*, § 461.

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar*, 3.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to think, suppose*, 41.

**arbor**, -oris f., *tree*, 17.

**arcessō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *to summon, send for*, § 461.

**argentum**, -ī, n., *silver, money*, 5.

**āridus**, -a, -um, adj., *dry; neut. as substantive, āridum, -ī, dry land, beach*, § 461.

**arma**, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons (armō)*, 10.

**armāmenta**, -ōrum, n. plur., *equipment, tackle, rigging (armō)*, § 461.

**armō**, -āre, *to arm, equip*, 21.

**arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*, 19.

**Asia**, -ae, f., *Asia*, 28.

**Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj., *Athenian; as subst., an Athenian*, 28.

**atque**, -āc, conj., *and, and also*, 31.

**Atrebās**, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatician*;

**Atrebātēs**, -um, m. plur., *the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul*, § 461.

**atrōx**, -ōcis, adj., *savage, frightful*, 22.

**attīngō**, -ere, -tīgī, -tactus, *to touch, reach*, § 461.

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority*, 28.

**audācia**, -ae, f., *boldness, daring (audāx)*, 16.

**audāctēr**, adv., *boldly (audāx)*, 25.

**audāx**, -ācis, adj., *bold, daring* 21.

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep. v., *to dare (see § 295)*, 38.

**audiō**, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -ītus, *to hear (conj. § 483)*, 34.

**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, magnify*, 28.

**aurīga**, -ae, m., *a charioteer, driver*, § 461.

**aut**, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or*, 40.

**autem**, conj., *but, moreover, however*, 49.

**auxiliōr**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to help, aid (auxilium)*, § 461.

**auxilium**, -ī, n., *help, assistance*, 7.

**Avaricum**, -ī, n., *Avaricum*, now Bourges, 54.  
**avidus**, -a, -um, adj., *eager*, 17.

## B

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarian*, 28.  
**beātus**, -a, -um, adj., *happy, fortunate*, 23.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians*, 12.  
**bellum**, -ī, n., *war*, 6.  
**bene**, adv., *well (bonus)*, 25.  
**beneficium**, -ī, n., *kindness, favor (bene, faciō)*, 50.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., *good (decl. §§ 62, 467)*, 1 ff.  
**brevī**, adv., *in a short time (brevis)*, § 461.  
**brevis**, -e, adj., *brief, short*, 21.  
**Britannī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons*, 6.  
**Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain, England*, 3.

## C

**caedēs**, -is, f., *slaughter, massacre*, 18.  
**caelum**, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*, 27.  
**Caesar**, -aris, m., (*Caius Julius Caesar*, 12.)  
**campus**, -ī, m., *field, plain*, 4.  
**capiō**, -ere, cēpī, *captus, to take, seize, capture (conj. § 482)*, 33.  
**captīvus**, -ī, m., *captive (capiō)*, 27.  
**caput**, -itis, n., *head*, 16.  
**Carthāginiēnsis**, -e, adj., *Carthaginian; as substantive, a Carthaginian*, 32.  
**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear*, 2 ff.

**Cassivelauṇus**, -ī, m., *Cassivelanus*, a leader of the Britons, 49.  
**castra**, -ōrum, n. plur., *a fortified camp*, 13.  
**cāsus**, -ūs, m., *accident, event, occurrence*, 49.  
**causa**, -ae, f., *cause, reason*; abl. causā w. gen., *for the sake of*, 10.  
**caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, *cautus, to be on one's guard, take care*, 45.  
**cēdō**, -ere, cessā, cessūrus, *to withdraw, yield*, 42.  
**celer**, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick*, 23.  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f., *swiftness, speed (celer)*, 30.  
**celeriter**, adv., *swiftly, quickly (celer)*, 16.  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., *centurion*, 41.  
**certē**, adv., *certainly, at least (certus)*, § 461.  
**certus**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, determined, certain; aliquem certiōrem facere, to inform one*, 22.  
**cēterī**, -ae, -a, adj., *all the rest, the others*, 7.  
**Chersonēsus**, -ī, f., *the Chersonesus*, a peninsula of Thrace, 28.  
**Cīneas**, -ae, m., *Cineas*, a friend and envoy of king Pyrrhus, 31.  
**circiter**, adv., *about (with numerals; circum)*, § 461.  
**circum**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *around*, 41.  
**circumdō**, -āre, -dedī, -datus (*circum + dō*), *to put around, surround*, § 461.  
**circumsistō**, -ere, -stetī, —, *to surround, beset*, § 461.  
**circumveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-

**tus** (*circum + veniō*), *to come around, surround, invest*, 46.

**citō**, adv., *rapidly, quickly; superl. citissimē, with the greatest speed*, § 461.

**citerior**, -ius, adj. comp., *hither, nearer* (comp. § 471), 24.

**cīvis**, -is, m. and f., *citizen*, 18.

**cīvitās**, -ātis, f., *citizenship, state (cīvis)*, 19.

**clādēs**, -is, m., *loss, disaster*, 18.

**clam**, adv., *secretly*, 33.

**clāmor**, -ōris, m., *shout*, 17.

**clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, famous*, 3 ff.

**classis**, -is, f., *fleet*, 31.

**Claudius**, -ī, m., *Claudius*, 31.

**cliēns**, -entis, m., *dependent, client*, 19.

**coepī**, **coepisse**, **coepitus**, *defect. v., to begin; the present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere, 46.*

**cōgitō**, -āre, *to think, consider, plan*, 53.

**cōgnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognise*, 34.

**cōgō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (*cum + agō*), *to compel, force, collect*, 32.

**cohors**, -hortis, f., *a cohort, one tenth of a legion*, 19.

**cohortor**, -ārī, -ātus (*cum + hortor*), dep. v., *to encourage*, § 461.

**collis**, -is, m., *a hill*, 18.

**com-**, **con-**, **co-**, adverbial prefix = *cum, with, together*.

**comes**, -itis, m. and f., *a companion*, 15.

**commeātus**, -ūs, m., *transportation, supplies*, § 461.

**commendō**, -āre, *commit, entrust*, § 461.

**commīlitō**, -ōnis, m., *fellow-soldier (mīles)*, § 461.

**committō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (*cum + mittō*), *to engage in battle*, 31.

**Commius**, -ī, m., *Commius*, a chief of the Atrebates, § 461.

**commodē**, adv., *conveniently, fitly, easily*, § 461.

**commūnis**, -e, adj., *common*, 50.

**comparō**, -āre (*cum + parō*), *to get ready, prepare*, 14.

**compleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *to fill, cover*, 47.

**complūrēs**, -a or -ia, adj. plur., *several, a good many*, 45.

**comprehendō**, -ere, **prehendī**, *prehensus, to arrest, seize*, 53.

**concēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (*cum + cēdō*), *to yield, withdraw*, 47.

**concilium**, -ī, n., *council, conference*, 14.

**concurrō**, -ere, -currī or -cūcurrī, -cursūrus, *to run together*, 54.

**condiciō**, -ōnis, f., *terms*, 32.

**cōfertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, close*, § 461.

**cōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (*cum + ferō*), *to bring together*, 53.

**cōfestim**, adv., *promptly, hastily*, § 461.

**cōficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -feetus (*cum + faciō*), *to finish, perform, wear out*, 45.

**cōfidō**, -ere, -fīsus (*cum + fidō*), *to trust, be confident*, 38.

**cōnfirmō**, -āre, *to strengthen, establish*, 20.

**cōnicō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw together, cast, hurl*, § 461.

**coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to join together, unite*, 54.

**coniūnx**, -iugis, m. or f., *husband or wife (coniungō)*, 15.

**coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, plot (coniūrō)*, § 461.

**coniūrō**, -āre, *to swear together, plot, conspire*, 12.

**conlocō**, -āre, *to station, place*, 18.

**conloquor**, -loquī, -locūtus, dep. v., *to converse*, 54.

**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to attempt*, 36.

**cōnscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to mount, go on board ship*, § 461.

**cōsequor**, -ī, -secūtus (*cum + sequor*), dep. v., *to overtake*, 37.

**cōnsilium**, -ī, n., *plan, design, counsel*, 13.

**cōsistō**, -ere, -stitī, —, *to take a position, stand, halt*, 43.

**cōspiciō**, -ēre, -spexī, -spectus, *to see, make out, observe*, § 461.

**cōnstituō**, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to establish, place, station*, 41.

**cōnstō**, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, *to agree; impers., it is agreed, is an established fact*, 51.

**cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *to become accustomed*, 51.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, f., *custom, habit*, 51.

**cōnsul**, -is, m., *consul*, 17.

**cōnsulō**, -ere, cōnsulūtus, *cōnsultus, to have regard for, care*

*for, consult ; aliquem cōnsulere, to consult a person ; alieni cōnsulere, to look out for a person's interests*, 49.

**contendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to exert one's self, hasten*, 32.

**continēns**, -ntis, m., *mainland, continent*, § 461.

**contineō**, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus (*cum + teneō*), *to hold back, keep in check*, 27.

**continuus**, -a, -um, adj., *consecutive, successive*, 20.

**contrā**, prep. w. accu., *against*, 12.

**conveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (*cum + veniō*), *to come together, assemble*, 42.

**convocō**, -āre (*cum + vocō*), *to call together, assemble*, 13.

**coōrior**, -īrī, -ortus (*cum + orior*), *arise, spring up*, § 461.

**cōpia**, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance* ; plur. **cōpiae**, *troops, forces*, 11.

**cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army*, 26.

**corpus**, -oris, n., *body*, 17.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, adj., *daily (cotidiē)*, 38.

**cotidiē**, adv., *every day, daily*, 36.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*, 51.

**culpa**, -ae, f., *fault, blame*, § 461.

**cum**, conj., *when, because, since, although* (see §§ 374–376), 48.

**cum**, prep. w. abl., *with*, 6.

**cunetātor**, -ōris, m., *the Delayer*, a term applied to Quintus Fabius Maximus (**cunctor**), 33.

**cunctor**, -āri, -ātus, dep. v., *to delay*, § 461.

**cupiō**, -ere, -īvī (-īlī), -ītus, *to desire, be eager*, 33.

**cūr**, adv., *why*? 30.

**cūra**, -ae, f., *care* (**cūrō**), 2.

**cūrō**, -āre, *to care for; w. gerundive, to have a thing done*, 4.

**currus**, -ūs, m., *chariot*, § 461.

**cursus**, -ūs, m., *running, speed*, 54.

**custōs**, -ōdis, m., *a guard*, 15.

## D

**dē**, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning*, 9.

**dē-**, adverbial prefix, *down from, away from*.

**dea**, -ae, f., *goddess* (**deus**); dat. and abl. plur., **deābus**, 3.

**dēbeō**, -ere, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, *owe, ought*, 44.

**decem**, adj. indeclin., *ten*, 23.

**dēcertō**, -āre, *to fight*, 13.

**decimus**, -a, -um, adj., *tenth (decem)*, § 461.

**dēclīvis**, -e, adj., *sloping down, down hill*, § 461.

**dēdecus**, -oris, n., *disgrace*, § 461.

**dēdō**, -ere, **dēdidī**, **dēditus** (**dē + dō**), *give up, surrender*, 34.

**dēdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -duetus (**dē + dūcō**), *to lead away, withdraw*, 33.

**dēfendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend*, 33.

**dēferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (**dē + ferō**), *to bring down, report*, 55.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, *tired out, wearied*, 45.

**dēficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**dē + faciō**), *to fail, be wanting*, 48.

**dēiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**dē + iaciō**), *to throw down, cast*, § 461.

**deinde**, adv., *then, secondly, next*, 32.

**dēligō**, -āre, *to bind fast, moor*, § 461.

**dēlitēscō**, -ere, -litū, —, *to hide, conceal*, § 461.

**dēmessus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of the following verb.

**dēmetō**, -ere, -messuī, -messus, *to reap, cut down*, § 461.

**dēmōnstrō**, -āre, *to point out, show*, 53.

**dēniqūe**, adv., *finally*, 33.

**dēpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (**dē + pōnō**), *to put off, lay aside*, § 461.

**dēsilō**, -īre, -siluī, -sultus, *to leap down, jump overboard*, § 461.

**dēsistō**, -ere, -stitī, —, *to cease, cease from, give up*, 40.

**dēspērō**, -āre (**dē + spērō**), *to give up hope, despair*, 38.

**dēsum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (**dē + sum**), *to fail*, 38.

**dēterreō**, -ere, -terrū, -terrītus (**dē + terreō**), *to frighten off, deter*, 33.

**deus**, -ī, m., *god*, 10.

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, on the right hand*, 26.

**dīcō**, -ere, **dīxī**, *dictus, to say, tell, speak*, 31.

**diēs**, -ēlī, m., *a day, time*, 26.

**differō**, -ferre, **distulī**, **dīlātus** (**dis + ferō**), *to spread, scatter; in the pres. system, to differ*, 54.

**difficilis**, -e, adj., *difficult (faciliis; compared, § 471)*, 23.

**dīfficūltās**, -ātis, f., *difficulty, trouble* (*difficilis*), 41.

**dīgnus**, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*; w. abl., *worthy of*, 40.

**dīligenția**, -ae, f., *care, pains, attention*, 11.

**dīmīcō**, -āre, *to fight*, 21.

**dīmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus  
(*dis + mittō*), *to send away, let go*, 39.

**dis-**, **dī-**, **dif-**, adverbial prefix, *apart, away*.

**dīscēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus  
(*dis + cēdō*), *to go away, depart*, 42.

**dīscēssus**, -ūs, m., *departure* (*dīscēdō*), 55.

**dīpersus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of *dispergō*, *to scatter*, § 461.

**dīssimilis**, -e, adj., *unlike* (*similis*; compared § 471), 23.

**dīū**, adv., *long*, 10.

**dīūtius**, adv., comp. of **dīū**.

**dīvidō**, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *to divide, separate*, 50.

**dō**, **dāre**, **dēdī**, **dātus**, *to give*, 2 ff.

**dolōr**, -ōris, m., *pain, grief*, 37.

**domīnus**, -ī, m., *master, owner*, 4.

**domus**, -ūs, f., *house, home* (decl. § 465), 42.

**dōnum**, -ī, n., *gift* (**dō**), 5.

**dubitō**, -āre, *to doubt, hesitate* (*dubius*), 33.

**dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful*, 10.

**dūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *to lead* (*dux*), 32.

**dūm**, conj., *while, so long as, until*, 47.

**duodecīm**, adj. indeclin., *twelve*, § 461.

**duodēvīgīntī**, adj. indeclin., *eighteen*, § 461.

**duplicō**, -āre, *to double* (**duo**), § 461.

**dūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *hard*, 22.

**dux**, *dueis*, m. or f., *leader*, 15.

## E

**ē**, *ex*, prep. w. abl., *out of, from*, 18.

**ē-**, *ex-*, *ef-*, adverbial prefix, *out of, out, completely*.

**ēdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (**ē** + **dūcō**), *to lead forth, lead out*, 46.

**efficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (*ex* + *faciō*), *to accomplish*, 33.

**effugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (*ex* + *fugiō*), *to escape*, § 461.

**ēiūs modī**, adj. phrase, *of that sort, such*, 37.

**egēns**, -ntis, adj., *needy, poor*, 22.

**egō**, -meī, pers. pron., *I* (declined § 474), 40.

**ēgredīor**, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go out, depart*, 49.

**Ēlis**, -idis, f., *Elis*, a district in the western Peloponnesus, 36.

**enīm**, conj., *for* (compare **nam**), 30.

**ēō**, -ire, (*īvī*) *iī*, *itūrus*, *to go* (conjugated § 488), 46.

**ēō**, adv., *to that place* (**is**), 49.

**ēōdem**, adv., *to the same place* (*īdem*), 55.

**Ēpirus**, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a district in northwestern Greece, 31.

**epistula**, -ae, f., *letter, epistle* (compare **littera**), 2.

**equēs**, -itis, m., *horseman, knight* (*equus*), 19.

**equester**, -*tris*, -*tre*, adj., *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian (eques)*, 21.

**equitātus**, -*ūs*, m., *horsemen, cavalry (eques)*, 26.

**equus**, -*ī*, m., *horse*, 7.

**errō**, -*āre*, *to wander, stroll*, 4 ff.

**ēruptiō**, -*ōnis*, f., *sally, sortie*, 47.

**esseda**, -*ae*, f., or **essedum**, -*ī*, n., *a war-chariot*, § 461.

**essedārius**, -*a*, -*um*, *one who fights from a chariot, a charioteer (esseda)*, § 461.

**et**, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, 1.

**etiam**, adv. and conj., *also, even, 19.*

**etsī** (*et + sī*), conj., *even if, although*, 39.

**Eurōpa**, -*ae*, f., *Europe*, 28.

**ēveniō**, -*īre*, -*vēnī*, -*ventūrus* (*ē + veniō*), *to result*, § 461.

**ēventus**, -*ūs*, m., *outcome, event, § 461.*

**excēdō**, -*ere*, -*cessī*, -*cessūrus* (*ex + cēdō*), *to go out from, depart*, 55.

**excitō**, -*āre*, *to arouse*, 45.

**exeō**, -*īre*, -*iī*, -*itūrus* (*ex + eō*), *to go out, leave, depart*, 50.

**exercitatiō**, -*ōnis*, *practice, training*, § 461.

**exercitus**, -*ūs*, m., *army*, 26.

**exiguitās**, -*ātis*, f., *scantiness, shortness (exiguus)*, § 461.

**exiguus**, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *small, scanty, short*, § 461.

**existimō**, -*āre*, *to reckon, think*, 42.

**expediō**, -*īre*, -*īvī* (*iī*), -*ītus*, *to get ready, arrange (compare impediō)*, 35.

**expedītus**, -*a*, -*um*, perf. part. of **expediō**, *unencumbered, lightly burdened*, 46.

**expellō**, -*ere*, -*pulī*, -*pulsus* (*ex + pellō*), *to drive out*, 36.

**experior**, -*īrī*, -*pertus*, dep. v., *to try, prove, experience*, 37.

**explōrō**, -*āre*, *to seek, search out, investigate*, § 461.

**expōnō**, -*ere*, -*posuī*, -*positus* (*ex + pōnō*), *to set forth, display*, § 461.

**expūgnō**, -*āre* (*ex + pūgnō*), *to capture by storm (compare oppūgnō)*, 11.

**exspectō**, -*āre*, *to look out for, wait for, expect*, 13.

**exterior**, -*ius*, comp. of **exter-  
rus**.

**exterus**, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *outer, foreign (rare in positive; compared, § 471)*, 24.

**extrā**, prep. w. accu., *outside of, 47.*

**extrēmus**, -*a*, -*um*, super. of **exter-  
rus**, *last, farthest*, 24.

## F

**Fabius**, -*ī*, m., *Fabius, a famous Roman general*, 33.

**fābula**, -*ae*, f., *story*, 1.

**facile**, adv., *easily (facilis)*, 25.

**facilis**, -*e*, adj., *easy (compared § 471)*, 23.

**faciō**, -*ere*, -*fēcī*, -*factus*, *to do, make; pass., fīō, fierī, factus* (*§ 488*), 33.

**facultās**, -*ātis*, f., *opportunity*, 45.

**fāma**, -*ae*, f., *fame, reputation, report*, 3.

**fēlīciter**, adv., *happily, luckily, successfully*, 25.

**ferē**, adv., *nearly, about, almost,* 44.  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, to bear, carry** (conjugated § 489), 51.  
**fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful**, § 461.  
**fidēs, -ei, f., faith, pledge** (**fidō**), 29.  
**fidō, -ere, fīsus, semi-dep. v., to trust**, 37.  
**figūra, -ae, f., shape**, § 461.  
**fīlia, -ae, f., daughter; dat. and abl. plur., fīliābus** (**fīlius**), 2.  
**fīlius, -ī, m., son; voc. sing., fīlī**, 5.  
**fīnis, -is, m., end, limit; plur., boundaries, territory**, 18.  
**fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring, bordering on; m. plur. as subst., neighbors** (**fīnis**), 11.  
**fiō, flerī, factus, pass. of faciō, to be made, happen, result** (conjugated, § 488), 46.  
**fīrmiter, adv., firmly, steadily**, § 461.  
**flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus, to turn, direct, guide**, § 461.  
**fluctus, -ūs, m., wave**, § 461.  
**flūmen, -inis, n., river**, 19.  
**fore, fut. inf. of sum, = futūrum esse**, § 461.  
**fortis, -e, adj., brave**, 21.  
**fortiter, adv., bravely** (**fortis**), 10.  
**fortitūdō, -inis, f., bravery** (**fortis**), 28.  
**fortūna, -ae, f., fortune**, 42.  
**fossa, -ae, f., ditch; fossam dūcere, to dig a ditch**, 43.  
**frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, to break**, § 461.

**frāter, -tris, m., brother**, 18.  
**frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, to get grain, forage** (**frūmentum**), § 461.  
**frūmentum, -ī, n., grain, supplies**, 11.  
**fruor, fruī, frūctus, dep. v., to enjoy**, 38.  
**frūstrā, adv., in vain**, 49.  
**fuga, -ae, f., flight** (**fugō, fugiō**), 19.  
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, to flee** (**fuga, fugō**), 33.  
**fugō, -āre, to put to flight** (**fuga, fugiō**), 5.  
**funda, -ae, f., sling**, § 461.  
**fūnis, -is, m., a rope, cable**, § 461.

**G**

**Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul**, 10.  
**Gallieus, -a, -um, adj., Gallie** (**Gallus**), § 461.  
**Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic**; as subst., *a Gaul* (**Gallia**), 10.  
**gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus, semi-dep. v., to rejoice**, 37.  
**gēns, gentis, f., family, tribe, clan**, 19.  
**genus, -eris, n., kind, family, race**, § 461.  
**Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German**; as subst., *a German*, 16.  
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, to carry on, perform**, 31.  
**gladius, -ī, m., sword**, 5.  
**Graecia, -ae, f., Greece**, 3.  
**Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek**; as subst., *a Greek*, 28.  
**grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, favor, kindness**; **grātiās agere, to thank**; **grātiām habēre, to feel**

*grateful*; **grātiām referre**, *to repay a favor*, 5.

**grātūs**, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, grateful (grātiā)*, 3.

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious*, 22.

**graviter**, adv., *severely, seriously (gravis)*, 39.

**grex, gregis**, m., *flock, herd*, 15.

## H

**habeō, -ere, habuī, habitus**, *to have, hold*; **grātiām habēre**, *to feel grateful*; **ōrātiōnem habēre**, *to deliver a speech*, 2 ff.

**habitō, -āre**, *to live, dwell (habēō)*, 3 ff.

**Haeduī, -ōrum**, m. plur., *the Haeduans*, an important people of Gaul, living between the Loire and the Saône, 12.

**Hannibal, -alis**, m., *Hannibal*, the famous leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, 33.

**Hasdrubal, -alis**, m., *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal, 40.

**hasta**, -ae, f., *spear*, 10.

**herba**, -ae, f., *grass*, 7.

**hiberna**, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters*, 27.

**hīc, haec, hōc**, demonst. pron., *this*; **hīc . . . ille**, *the latter . . . the former* (declined § 475), 12.

**hīc**, adv., *here, in this place*, 13.

**hiemō, -ōre**, *to spend the winter, winter (hiems)*, 20.

**hiems, hiemis**, f., *winter*, 20.

**Hispānia**, -ae, f., *Spain (Hispānus)*, 34.

**Hispānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Spaniard*; as a subst., *a Spaniard (Hispānia)*, 39.

**hodiē**, adv. (*hoc + diē*), *to-day*, 29.

**homō, -inis**, m. and f., *human being, man (compare vir)*, 17.

**honor, -ōris**, m., *honor*, 17.

**hōra, -ae**, f., *hour, season*, 20.

**Horātiūs**, -ī, m., *Horace*, a famous Latin poet, 5.

**hortor, -ārī, -ātūs**, dep. v., *to encourage, urge, exhort*, 36.

**hortus**, -ī, m., *garden*, 4.

**hostis, -is**, m., *enemy*, 18.

**hūc**, adv., *to this place, hither (hīc)*, 53.

**humilis, -e**, adj., *low (compared § 471)*, 23.

## I

**iam**, adv., *already, now*, 13.

**ibi**, adv., *there, in that place (is)*, 3.

**idem**, *eadem, idem*, demons. pron., *the same* (decl. § 475; is), 40.

**idōneus, -a, -um**, adj., *suitable*, 13.

**ignis, -is**, m., *fire*, 18.

**ignōscō, -ere**, *ignōvī, ignōtus*, *to pardon (see § 411)*, § 461.

**ignōtus, -a, -um**, adj., *unknown*, § 461.

**ille, illa, illud**, demons. pron., *that; ille . . . hīc, the former . . . the latter* (decl. § 475), 12.

**illō**, adv., *to that place (ille)*, § 461.

**impedimentum**, -ī, n., *hindrance; plur., baggage (impediō)*, 25.

**impediō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus, to hinder,** 34.

**impeditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of impediō, hindered, entangled, embarrassed,** § 461.

**imperātor, -ōris, m., general (imperō),** 27.

**imperitus, -a, -um, adj., unskilled (peritus),** 41.

**imperium, -ī, n., a command (imperō),** 27.

**imperō, -āre, to command, order,** 22.

**impetrō, -āre, to obtain one's request,** 18.

**impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset,** 27.

**imprōvīsō, adv., unexpectedly,** 44.

**imprudētia, -ae, f., lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion,** § 461.

**īmus, -a, -um, superlative of īferus, lowest (see § 471),** 24.

**in, prep. w. accu. and abl., into, in, within,** 4 and 14.

**in-, adverbial prefix w. verbs, in, upon, towards; negative prefix w. adjectives, not.**

**incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, to set fire to, burn, kindle,** 35.

**incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain (certus),** 45.

**incitō, -āre, to urge on, arouse, incite,** 11.

**ineōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown (compare cōgnōscō),** § 461.

**inecola, -ae, m., inhabitant (in-colō),** 9.

**inecolō, -ere, -coluī, —, to dwell, inhabit,** 49.

**incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed,** 36.

**inde, adv., from that place, thence, then,** 54.

**indīgnus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy; w. abl., unworthy of (dīgnus),** 32.

**ineō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (in + eō), to go into, enter, begin,** 49.

**īnferior, -ius, comp. of īferus, lower (§ 471),** 24.

**īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (in + ferō), to carry, bring upon,** 51.

**īnferus, -a, -um, adj., low (compared § 471),** 24.

**īnflimus, -a, -um, superl. of īferus, lowest,** 24.

**īnfīrmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, infirm,** § 461.

**īnfrā, prep. w. accu., below,** 54.

**ingēns, -ntis, adj., great, huge, serious,** 32.

**īnimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly; as subst., private enemy (amīcus),** 10.

**īnīquus, -a, -um, adj., unequal, unfair (aequus),** 41.

**īniūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury, outrage,** 34.

**īnopia, -ae, f., want, lack, need, dearth,** 11.

**īnquit, defect. v., said he, used in direct quotations,** 36.

**īnsīgnis, -e, adj., marked, remarkable, notable,** 23.

**īnsinuo, -āre, to thrust in, make way into,** § 461.

**īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand upon, keep one's footing,** § 461.

**īnstābilis, -e, adj., unsteady, uncertain,** § 461.

**īnstitūtum**, -ī, n., *practice, custom, institutions* (**īnstituō**), § 461.

**īnstituō**, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, *to begin, establish*, 45.

**īnstruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up*, 48.

**īnsuēfactus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **īnsuēfaciō**, *trained, accustomed*, § 461.

**īnsula**, -ae, f., *island*, § 461.

**īnteger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, fresh*, 51.

**īntellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand*, 42.

**īnter**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *between, among*, 12.

**īnterclūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off*, 47.

**īntereā**, adv., *meanwhile* (**inter**), 12.

**īnterficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**inter + faciō**), *to kill*, 35.

**īnterim**, adv., *in the meantime* (**inter**), 43.

**īnterior**, -ius, comp. adj., *inner* (compared § 471; **inter**), 24.

**īntermittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (**inter + mittō**), *to stop, interrupt, let pass*, 44.

**īnterpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (**inter + pōnō**), *to put between, interpose*, § 461.

**īntimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **īnterior**, *innermost* (compared § 471), 24.

**īntrō**, -āre, *to enter*, 12.

**īnūsitātus**, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed*, § 461.

**īnūtilis**, -e, adj., *useless*, § 461.

**īnvītus**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*,

36.

**īipse**, **īpsa**, **īpsum**, intens. demons. pron., *self, very* (declined § 475), 40.

**īs**, **īa**, **īd**, demons. pron., *that; he, she, it* (declined § 475), 14.

**īste**, **īsta**, **īstud**, demons. pron., *that, that of yours* (declined § 475), 40.

**ītalia**, -ae, f., *Italy*, 3.

**īta**, adv., *thus, in that way* (**īs**), 21.

**ītaque**, adv., *therefore* (**īta**), 4.

**ītem**, adv., *likewise, also* (**īs**), 54.

**īter**, **ītineris**, n., *journey, march*, 17.

**īterum**, adv., *again, a second time*, 31.

**īubeō**, -ēre, **īussī**, **īussus**, *to command, order*, 40.

**īūdex**, -icis, m., *Judge* (**īūs**), 15.

**īūdicō**, -āre, *to judge* (**īūdex**, **īūs**), 40.

**īugum**, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*, 50.

**īulia**, -ae, f., *Julia*, 1.

**īūs**, **īūris**, n., *right, justice, law*, 56.

**īuvenis**, -is, m., *a youth* (**īuventus**), 28.

**īuventus**, -ūtis, f., *youth; collectively, young men, the youth*, 21.

**īuvō**, -āre, **īūvī**, **īūtus**, *to help, aid*, 13.

## L

**īlabor**, -ōris, m., *work, labor*, 17.

**īlabōrō**, -āre, *to work, toil* (**ībor**), 4.

**īLacedaemōn**, -onis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta*, 36.

**īLacedaemonius**, -a, -um, adj., *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*, 32.

laceſſō, -ere, -ſīvī, -ſītus, *to provoke, challenge, harass*, 49.  
 laetē, adv., *gladly*, 25.  
 lātē, adv., *broadly, widely* (lā-tus), 55.  
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*, 1.  
 latus, -eris, n., *side, flank*, 46.  
 laudō, -āre, *to praise* (laus), 3 ff.  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory*, 16.  
 lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy, legation* (lēgātus), 31.  
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador*, *lieutenant* (lēgātiō), 14.  
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*, 19.  
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lectus, *to read*, 48.  
 lenis, -e, adj., *gentle, mild*, § 461.  
 levis, -e, adj., *light, slight*, 24.  
 leviter, adv., *lightly*, 25.  
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*, 7.  
 liber, librī, m., *a book*, 6.  
 liberāliter, adv., *generously, kindly* (liber), § 461.  
 līberī, -ōrum, m. plur., *freeborn children* (līber), 6.  
 līberō, -āre, *to free* (līber), 7.  
 libertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom* (līber), 36.  
 licet, -ēre, *licuit or licitum est*, impers. v., *it is permitted, one may*, 33.  
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*, 54.  
 littera, -ae, f., *letter*, of the alphabet; plur., *a letter, an epistle*, 48.  
 lītus, -oris, n., *shore*, § 461.  
 locus, -ī, m., *place, spot*; plur. loca, n., *places, situation*; locī, m., *topics*, 13.

longē, adv., *far off, at a distance, by far* (longus), 13.  
 longinquoſ, -a, -um, adj., *long, far, remote* (longus), 54.  
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, distant*, 1 ff.  
 loquor, -ī, locūtus, dep. v., *to speak, talk*, 38.  
 lūna, -ae, f., *the moon*, § 461.  
 lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*, 9.  
 lupus, -ī, m., *wolf*, 5.  
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*, 15.

M

magis, adv. comp., *more*; superl. māximē, *most* (compared § 472; māgnus), 25.  
 magister, -trī, m., *master, teacher*, 6.  
 magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy, office, a magistrate* (magister), 35.  
 māgnitūdō, -inis, f., *size, greatness* (māgnus), 40.  
 māgnoperē, adv., *greatly*, 16.  
 māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, loud* (compared § 471), 1 ff.  
 māior, -ius, adj., comp. of māgnus, *larger, elder*; māiōrēs, *elders, ancestors*, 29.  
 male, adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully* (malus), 25.  
 mālō, mālle, māluī (magis + volō), *to prefer*, 44.  
 malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, ill*, 2 ff  
 mandāta, -ōrum, n. plur., *orders, commands* (mandō), § 461.  
 mandō, -āre, *entrust, commit, command*, § 461.  
 māne, adv., *in the morning, early*, 39.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *to remain*, 27.

manus, -ūs, f., *band, company, troop*, 26.

Marcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*, 4.

mare, maris, n., *sea*, 18.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the sea, maritime (mare)*, 50.

māter, -tris, f., *mother*, 22.

māteria, -ae, f., *stuff, timber*, § 461.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *early, ripe*, § 461.

māximē, superl. adv., *most*, 25.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, in the middle of*, 37.

membrum, -ī, n., *limb, of the body*, § 461.

memoria, -ae, f., *memory*, 29.

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, merchant*, 45.

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, *to reap, cut*, § 461.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *mine, 3.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier, private*, 15.

militāris, -e, adj., *relating to a soldier; military; rēs militāris, the science of war (mīles)*, 44.

mille, adj. indeclin., *a thousand*; plur. mīlia, -ium; the plural is used as a substantive, while the singular is an adjective, 30.

Miltiadēs, -is, m., *Miltiades*, the Greek commander at Marathon, 480 b. c., 28.

minimē, adv., superl. of minus, *least (compared § 472)*, 25.

minor, minus, adj., comp. of parvus, *less, smaller (compared § 471)*, 24.

minus, comp. adv., *less*, 25.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unfortunate*, 7.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *to send, throw (weapons)*, 31.

mōbilitās, -ātis, f., *quickness, speed*, § 461.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to control, manage*, § 461.

modo, adv., *only, but, even; nōn modo, not only*, 40.

modus, -ī, m., *manner, measure*, 31.

moenia, -ium, n. plur., *walls of a city, fortifications*, 18.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill; summus mōns, top of the hill*, 19.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*, 14.

Morinī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Morini, a people living in Belgic Gaul*, § 461.

moriōr, morī, mortuus, dep. v. *to die (mors)*, 39.

moror, -ārī, morātūs, *to delay (mora)*, 38.

mors, mortis, f., *death (moriōr)*, 19.

mōs, mōris, m., *habit, customs*, 35.

mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, disturbance, uprising (moveō)*, § 461.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move; castra movēre, to break camp; sīgna movēre, to advance*, 29.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*, 22.

multitūdō, -inis, f., *crowd, multitude*, 30.

**multō**, adv., (*by*) *much*, *by far* (*multus*), 23.  
**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; plur., *many* (compared § 471), 2 ff.  
**mūniō**, -īre, -īvī (iī), -ītus, *to fortify*, 36.  
**mūnītiō**, -ōnis, f., *fortification*, *defenses* (*mūniō*), 48.  
**mūrus**, -ī, m., *wall*, 9.  
**Mūsa**, -ae, f., *a muse*, 5.

## N

**nam**, conj., *for* (compare *enim*), 14.  
**namque**, conj., *for*, § 461.  
**nancīscor**, -ī, *nactus*, dep. v., *to find*, 39.  
**narrō**, -āre, *to tell*, *narrate*, 2 ff.  
**nāscor**, -ī, *natus*, dep. v., *to be born*, 48.  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, f., *race*, *nation* (*nāscor*), 27.  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature* (*nāscor*), 13.  
**nauta**, -ae, m., *sailor* (*nāvigō*), 3.  
**nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, f., *sailing*, *voyage*, *navigation* (*nāvigō*), § 461.  
**nāvigium**, -ī, n., *a boat*, § 461.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, *to sail* (*nāvis*), 4 ff.  
**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*; **nāvis longa**, *man-of-war*, 19.  
**-ne**, interrogative enclitic, 1.  
**nē**, adv. and conj., *not*, *that not*, *in order that not*, *lest*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, 29, 40.  
**nec**, see *neque*.  
**necessāriō**, adv., *necessarily*, *of necessity* (*necessārius*), § 461.  
**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary*, *needful* (*necesse*), 28.

**necesse**, adj. indeclin., *necessary* ; **necesse est**, *one must*, 39.  
**necō**, -āre, *to kill*, 26.  
**nēmō**, **neminis**, m., *no one*, *no body*, 23.  
**nēquāquam**, adv., *not at all*, *by no means*, § 461.  
**neque**, conj., *and not*; **neque . . . neque** . . . *neither . . . nor*, 17.  
**Nerviī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul, 12.  
**neuter**, **neutra**, **neutrūm** (nē + *uter*), *neither* (declined § 469), 52.  
**niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**, adj., *black*, 7.  
**nihil**, n. indeclin., *nothing*, 23.  
**nisi**, conj. (nē + sī), *if not*, *unless*, 39.  
**noceō**, -ēre, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus**, *to harm*, *injure*; **nocēns**, *hurtful*, *guilty*, 46.  
**noctū**, adv., *by night* (*nox*), 46.  
**nocturnus**, -a, -um, adj., *by night*, *in the night* (*nox*), 48.  
**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī** (ne + volō), *to be unwilling*, *not to wish* (conjugated § 487), 44.  
**nōmen**, -inis, n., *name*, 17.  
**nōn**, adv., *not*; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*, 2, 40.  
**nōndum**, adv. (nōn + dum), *not yet*, 46.  
**nōnnūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (nōn + nūllus), *some*, 36.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, adj., *ninth* (nōvem), § 461.  
**noster**, **nostra**, **nostrūm**, poss. pron., *our* (*nōs*), 14.  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *known*, *familiar*, § 461.

**novitās**, -ātis, f., *newness, novelty, strangeness (novus)*, § 461.  
**novus**, -a, -um, adj., *new*, 2 ff.  
**nox**, *noctis*, f., *night*, 20.  
**nūbēs**, -is, f., *cloud*, 18.  
**nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (*nē + ūlus*), *none (declined § 469)*, 42.  
**Nūma**, -ae, f., *Numa*, the second king of Rome, 30.  
**numerus**, -ī, m., *number*, 12.  
**numquam**, adv., *never*, 37.  
**nunc**, adv., *now (compare iam)*, 12.  
**nūntiō**, -āre, *to announce, report (nūntius)*, 12.  
**nūntius**, -ī, m., *a messenger*, 27.  
**nūtus**, -ūs, m., *nod, sign*, § 461.

## O

**ob**, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 36; adverbial prefix, *towards, against*.  
**oblīvīscor**, -ī, -lītus, dep. v., *to forget*, used with an objective genitive, 38.  
**obses**, -idis, m. and f., *hostage*, 16.  
**obtemperō**, -āre, *to obey*, § 461.  
**obtestor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to implore*, § 461.  
**obtineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (*ob + teneō*), *to hold, keep, possess*, 55.  
**occāsus**, -ūs, m., *falling, setting, the west*, § 461.  
**occīdō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to cut down, kill*, 35.  
**occultō**, -āre, *to hide*, 17.  
**occupō**, -āre, *to seize*, 16.  
**occurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *to go to meet, resist*, 43.  
**ōceanus**, -ī, m., *the ocean*, 4.

**octōdecim**, indeclin. num., *eighteen*, § 461.  
**odium**, -ī, n., *hatred*, 11.  
**offerō**, -ferre, *obtulī*, *oblātus* (*ob + ferō*), *to bring to, offer*, 55.  
**officium**, -ī, n., *duty, office*, 56.  
**ōlim**, adv., *once, formerly*, 10.  
**omnīnō**, adv., *altogether, at all*, 44.  
**omnis**, -e, adj., *every, all*, 21.  
**onerārius**, -a, -um, adj., *of burden*; *nāvēs onerāriae, transports (onus)*, § 461.  
**onus**, *oneris*, n., *load, burden, weight*, § 461.  
**opera**, -ae, f., *work, attention*; *operam dare, to take pains*, 34.  
**opīniō**, -ōnis, f., *belief, expectation, reputation*, 53.  
**opertet**, -ēre, *oportuit*, *impers. v., it is proper, one ought*, 50.  
**oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to a town; as subst., a townsman, inhabitant (oppidum)*, 9.  
**oppidum**, -ī, n., *town*, 6.  
**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *opportune, advantageous*, § 461.  
**opprimō**, -ere, -pressī, -presus (*ob + premō*), *to overwhelm*, 46.  
**oppūgnātiō**, -ōnis, f., *siege, attack (oppūgnō)*, 42.  
**oppūgnō**, -āre (*ob + pūgnō*), *to besiege, attack*, 10.  
**opus**, *operis*, n., *work*, 45.  
**ōra**, -ae, f., *shore, coast*, § 461.  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *speech (ōrō)*, 43.  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, m., *speaker, pleader, envoy (ōrō)*, § 461.  
**ōrdō**, -inis, m., *order, rank*, 23.  
**ōrō**, -āre, *to speak, beg*, 30.

**ostendō**, -ere, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, *to show*, 42.

## P

**pācō**, -āre, *to pacify, subdue* (pāx), 12.

**paene**, adv., *almost* (compare *fere*), 38.

**palam**, adv., *openly, publicly* (compare *clam*), 53.

**pār**, **paris**, adj., *like, equal*, 51.

**parātus**, -a, -um, perf. partic. of **parō**, *ready, prepared*, 13.

**parō**, -āre, *to make ready, prepare*, 12.

**pars**, **partis**, f., *part, share*, 21.

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj., *small, little* (compared § 471), 1 ff.

**passus**, -ūs, m., *step, pace; as a measure of length about five feet; mille passūs*, 5,000 (*Roman*) feet, *a (Roman) mile*, 30.

**pater**, **patris**, m., *father*, 22.

**patiōr**, -ī, *passus*, dep. v., *suffer, bear, allow*, 44.

**patria**, -ae, f., *native land* (compare *pater*), 2.

**paucī**, -ae, -a, adj. plur., *few*, 28.

**paucitās**, -ātis, f., *small number* (paucī), § 461.

**paulātim**, adv., *little by little, gradually*, 51.

**paulō**, adv., *by a little, slightly*, 23.

**paulum**, adv., *a little, a short distance*, 41.

**pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace* (pācō), 15.

**pecūnia**, -ae, f., *money* (pecus), 38.

**pecus**, -oris, n., *cattle, a herd, a flock*, 17.

**pedes**, -itis, m., *a foot-soldier; plur., infantry* (pēs), 36.

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, adj., *belonging to the infantry, foot* (pedes), 39.

**peditātus**, -ūs, m., *infantry, foot (pedes)*, 43.

**pēior**, **pēius**, adj., comp. of **malius**, *worse* (§ 471), 24.

**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, *to drive*, 34.

**per**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *through, over, across, by means of*, 16.

**perecurrō**, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursūrus, *to run through, run along*, § 461.

**perequitō**, -āre, *to ride over, ride through*, § 461.

**perfacilis**, -e (per + facilis); adj., *very easy*, 56.

**perferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (per + ferō), *to bear through, endure*, § 461.

**perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per + faciō), *to accomplish, finish*, 48.

**perīculōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *full of danger, dangerous* (perīculum), 37.

**perīculum**, -ī, n., *danger*, 5.

**perītus**, -a, -um, adj., *skilled*, 32.

**permaneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-sūrus (per + maneō), *to remain, stay*, § 461.

**permittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (per + mittō), *to let go, allow, permit*, 46.

**permoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (per + moveō), *to move deeply, excite, arouse*, 50.

**perpetuuſ, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, perpetual*, 54.**

**Persa, -ae, m., *a Persian*, 35.**

**Persicus, -a, -um, adj., *Persian (Persa)*, 28.**

**perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *to see through, examine, learn*, § 461.**

**persuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *to persuade*, 31.**

**perterreō, -ere, -terrūl, -territus, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*, 38.**

**pertineō, -ere, -tinuī, —, *to pertain to, to reach*, 50.**

**perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *confusion, disorder, alarm (perturbō)*, § 461.**

**perturbō, -āre, *to throw into confusion, alarm*, § 461.**

**perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrūs (*per + veniō*), *to come through, arrive*, 35.**

**pēs, pedis, m., *foot; pedem referre, to retreat*, 22.**

**pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of malus, *worst* (compared § 471), 24.**

**petō, -ere, petīvī (-īl), petītus, *to seek, ask*, 31.**

**Pharnabāzus, -ī, m., *Pharnabāzus, a Persian satrap*, 35.**

**pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin, a heavy spear*, 42.**

**plānus, -a, -um, adj., *flat, level*, § 461.**

**plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*, § 461.**

**plēriquē, plēraeque, plēraque, adj. plur., *many, very many, the most*, 35.**

**plērumque, adv., *for the most part, generally*, 54.**

**plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of multus, *most, very many* (compared § 471), 24.**

**plūs, plūris, compar. of multus, *more* (compared § 471; declined § 470), 24.**

**poena, -ae, f., *punishment*, 36.**

**poēta, -ae, m., *poet*, 3.**

**polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, dep. v., *to promise*, 43.**

**pōnō, -ere, posuī, *positus, to place, put, put aside*, 39.**

**pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*, 19.**

**populus, -ī, m., *people*, 5.**

**porta, -ae, f., *gate*, 30.**

**portō, -āre, *to carry*, 11.**

**portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*, 30.**

**poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *to demand, ask*, 47.**

**possum, posse, potuī (potis + sum), *to be able, can* (conjugated § 486), 43.**

**post, prep. w. accu., *after, behind*, 18.**

**posteā, adv., *afterwards (post)*, 25.**

**posterior, -ius, comp. of posterus, *later* (compared, § 471), 24.**

**posterus, -a, -um, adj., *the following, next; plur., posterī, descendants*, 25.**

**postquam (post + quam), conj., *after*, 30.**

**postrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of posterus, *last, latest*, 24.**

**postrīdiē (posterus + diēs), adv., *the next day*, 49.**

**postulō, -āre, *to demand, ask*, 14.**

**potestās, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*, 35.**

**potior, -īrī, potītus, dep. v., *to get possession of*, 37.**

**potius**, adv., *rather*, 56.  
**praecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus  
 (*prae* + *cēdō*), *to go before, excel, surpass*, 54.

**praeceps**, *praecipitis*, adj., *head-long, in haste, steep*, § 461.

**praeda**, -ae, f., *booty*, 13.

**praedīcō**, -āre, *to make known, announce*, § 461.

**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus  
 (*prae* + *faciō*), *to set over, put in command of*, 35.

**praemittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus  
 (*prae* + *mittō*), *to send forward*, 35.

**praemium**, -ī, n., *reward*, 6.

**praesertim**, adv., *especially*, 55.

**praesidium**, -ī, n., *guard, protection, assistance*, 9.

**praestō**, -stāre, -stitī, —, *to excel, exhibit, perform*, 56.

**praesum**, -esse, -fuī (*prae* + *sum*), *to be over, in command of*, 43.

**praeter**, prep. w. accu., *besides, except, beyond*, 53.

**praetereā**, adv., *besides, moreover (praeter)*, 56.

**premō**, -ere, *pressī, pressus*, *to press, attack, oppress*, 36.

**pridiē**, adv., *on the day before*, 49.

**prīmō**, adv., *at first (prīmus)*, 54.

**prīnum**, adv., *first (prīmus)*, 31.

**prīmus**, -a, -um, superl. of *prior*, *first* (compared § 471), 20.

**prīnceps**, *prīcipis*, m., *leader, chief*, 15.

**priōr**, *prius*, comparative, positive wanting, *former* (compared § 471), 24.

**prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., *old, former*, § 461.

**prīnsquām** (*prīus* + *quam*), conj., *before*, 47.

**privō**, -āre, *to deprive*, 24.

**prō**, prep. w. abl., *for, for the sake of, in the place of*, 16.

**prō-**, adverbial prefix, *forward, before*.

**probō**, -āre, *to approve*, 37.

**prōcēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus  
 (*prō* + *cēdō*), *to go forward, advance*, 46.

**procul**, adv., *far, far off*, 41.

**prōdō**, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus (*prō* + *dō*), *to betray*, § 461.

**prōdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -duetus  
 (*prō* + *dūcō*), *to lead forward, advance*, 48.

**proelior**, -ārī, -ātūs, dep. v., *to fight (proelium)*, § 461.

**proelium**, -ī, n., *battle*, 10.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *departure, setting out (proficīscor)*, 43.

**proficīscor**, -ī, *profectus*, dep. v., *to set out, depart*, 37.

**progredior**, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go forward, advance*, 41.

**prohibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus  
 (*prō* + *habeō*), *to prevent, hinder*, 29.

**prōiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (*prō* + *iaciō*), *to throw forward*, § 461.

**prope**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *near*, 44.

**prōpellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus  
 (*prō* + *pellō*), *to drive away, dislodge*, § 461.

**properō**, -āre, *to hurry, hasten*, 13.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, *near, neighboring; propinquī, -ōrum*, m. plur., *relatives (prope)*, 48.

**propior, -ius**, comparative, positive wanting, *nearer* (compared § 471; *prope*), 24.

**prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (*prō* + *pōnō*), *to set forth, tell, offer*, 43.

**propter**, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 39.

**prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus** (*prō* + *sequor*), dep. v., *to pursue, follow*, § 461.

**prōsum, -esse, -fuī** (*prō* + *sum*), *to be useful, be of advantage to, to profit* (conjugated § 486), 43.

**prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus**, *to carry forward*, § 461.

**prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus** (*prō* + *videō*), *to provide*, 47.

**prōvincia, -ae**, f., *province*, 25.

**proximus, -a, -um**, superl. of *propior*, *nearest, next* (compared § 471), 10.

**puella, -ae**, f., *girl (puer)*, 1.

**puer, puerī**, m., *boy*, 6.

**pūgna, -ae**, f., *battle*, 31.

**pūgnō, -āre**, *to fight* (*pūgna*), 9.

**pulcher, -chra, -chrūm**, adj., *beautiful, pretty*, 2 ff.

**pulvis, -eris**, m., *dust*, § 461.

**putō, -āre**, *to think*, 41.

**Pyrrhus, -ī**, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus, 31.

## Q

**quā**, rel. adv., *where*, 53.

**quaerō, -ere, quæsīvī, quæsītus**, *to ask, seek*, 42.

**quālis, -e**, interrog. and rel. adj., *of what sort? as*, 55.

**quam**, conj., *than*; with superlatives, *as possible*, 22.

**quamquam**, conj., *although*, 45.

**quantus, -a, -um**, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great? as great, as*, 44.

**quārē**, interrog. and rel. phrase (*quā* + *rē*), *why? wherefore, 52.*

**quartus, -a, -um**, *fourth (quatuor)*, 21.

**-que**, enclitic conj., *and*, 18.

**queror, -ī, questus**, dep. v., *to complain*, 50.

**qui, quae, quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (declined § 476), 13.

**quia**, conj., *because*, 49.

**quicunque, quaecunque, quodcumque**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, one, a* (declined § 478), 37.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, in fact; nē . . . quidem, not even*, 45.

**quiēs, -ētis**, f., *rest, sleep*, 19.

**quīn**, conj., *but that, from, without* (used chiefly after negative expressions of doubting and hindering, §§ 270, 271), 33.

**Quīntus, -ī**, m., *Quintus*.

**quis (qui), (quae), quid (quod)**, interrog. pron., *who?* (for use of forms see § 136 a, b), 14.

**quisquam, —, quidquam (quodquam)**, indef. pron., *any one, anything* (used chiefly in sentences in which a negative is expressed or implied; declined § 478), 41.

**quisque, quæque, quidque (quodque)**, indef. pron., *each, every* (declined § 478), 44.

**quisquis**, —, **quidquid**, indef.  
rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*  
(declined § 476), 52.

**quō**, interrog. and rel. adv.,  
*whither? to what place? into  
which place, where*, 43.

**quō**, conj., *in order that* (used to  
introduce a purpose clause which  
contains a comparative, § 280 b),  
35.

**quoniam**, conj., *since, because*, 49.

**quoque**, conj., *also, too; follow-*  
*ing the word to which it be-*  
*longs*, 5.

**quot**, indeclin. interrog. adj.,  
*how many? relative, as many  
as*, 36.

## R

**ratiō**, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan,  
method*, 33.

**re-**, *red-*, adverbial prefix, *back,  
again*.

**rebelliō**, -ōnis, f. (*re + bellum*),  
*renewal of war, revolt*, § 461.

**receptus**, -ūs, m., *a retreat, ref-  
uge*, § 461.

**recipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (*re  
+ capiō*), *to take back, recover;  
sē recipere, to betake one's  
self*, 35.

**reddō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus (*re +  
dō*), *to return, give back*, 32.

**redeō**, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (*re + eō*),  
*to go back, retire, return*, 52.

**reditus**, -ūs, m., *return* (*redeō*),  
§ 461.

**redūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (*re  
+ dūcō*), *to bring back, lead  
back*, 35.

**referō**, -ferre, *retulī, relātus*  
(*re + ferō*), *to carry back, re-*

*port; pedem referre, to retire,  
retreat*, 51.

**reflēciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (*re +  
faciō*), *to make over, repair, re-  
build*, § 461.

**rēgīna**, -ae, f., *queen* (*rēx*), 2.

**regiō**, -ōnis, f., *region, direction*,

27.

**rēgius**, -a, -um, adj., *royal* (*rēx*),  
39.

**rēgnūm**, -ī, n., *kingdom* (*rēgnō*),  
55.

**Rēgulus**, -ī, m., *Regulus*, a fa-  
mous Roman, 32.

**relinquō**, -ere, *relīquī, reli-  
tus, to leave, abandon*, 34.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remain-  
ing, left*, 14.

**remaneō**, -ere, -mansī, -mānsū-  
rus (*re + maneō*), *to stay be-  
hind, remain*, § 461.

**Rēmī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi*,  
a people of Belgic Gaul, 13.

**remigrō**, -āre, *to return, move  
back*, § 461.

**remittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (*re  
+ mittō*), *to send back*, § 461.

**removeō**, -ere, -movī, -mōtus, *to  
move back, remove*, § 461.

**rēmus**, -ī, m., *oar*, § 461.

**renūntiō**, -āre (*re + nūntiō*), *to  
take back word, report*, 31.

**reperiō**, -īre, *repperī, reper-  
tus, to find out, learn*, 49.

**reportō**, -āre (*re + portō*), *to  
carry back*, § 461.

**rēs**, **rei**, f., *matter, affair, busi-  
ness, thing*; **rēs mīlitāris**, *the  
art of war, military science*;

**rēs pūblica**, *the state*, 26.

**respondeō**, -ere, -spondī, -spōn-  
sus, *to answer, reply*, 39.

**revertor, revertī, reversus, dep.** v., *to return*; in the perfect system the active forms **revertī, reverteram**, etc., are used, 42.  
**revocō, -āre** (*re + vocō*), *to call back, recall*, 35.  
**rēx, rēgis**, m., *king* (*rēgnō*), 15.  
**Rhēnus, -ī**, m., *the Rhine*, 27.  
**rīpa, -ae**, f., *bank*, 19.  
**rogō, -āre**, *to ask, request*, 18.  
**Rōma, -ae**, f., *Rome*, 6.  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, adj., *Roman* (*Rōma*), 5.  
**rosa, -ae**, f., *a rose*, 1.  
**rota, -ae**, f., *wheel*, § 461.  
**rūrsus, adv.**, *back, again*, 32.

## S

**sacer, saera, sacrūm**, adj., *sacred, holy*, 7.  
**sacerdōs, -ōtis**, m., *priest (sacer)*, 16.  
**saepe**, adv., *often*, 28.  
**sagitta, -ae**, f., *arrow*, § 461.  
**Saguntum, -ī**, n., *Saguntum*, a city in Spain, 33.  
**salūs, -ūtis**, f., *safety*, 42.  
**sapienter**, adv., *wisely*, 25.  
**satis**, adv., *enough*, 35.  
**scapha, -ae**, f., *skiff, boat*, § 461.  
**sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**, *to know*, a fact (compare *cōgnōscō*), 34.  
**Scīpiō, -ōnis**, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family, 39.  
**scūtum, -ī**, n., *shield*, 5.  
**secundus, -a, -um**, adj., *following, favorable (sequor)*, 24.  
**sed**, conj., *but*, 2.  
**semper**, adv., *always*, 6.  
**senātus, -ūs**, m., *senate (senex)*, 32.

**senex, senis**, m., *old man* (declined p. 91, n. 1), 26.  
**sententia, -ae**, f., *opinion, view, purpose (sentīō)*, 32.  
**sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, *to feel, perceive, think*, 35.  
**septem**, indeclin. adj., *seven*, 20.  
**septentriōnēs, -um**, n. plur., *the seven plow-oxen* (the stars in the constellation of the Great Bear), *the north*, § 461.  
**septimus, -a, -um**, adj., *seventh (septem)*, 20.  
**sequor, -ī**, *secūtus*, dep. v., *to follow*, 37.  
**servitūs, -ūtis**, f., *slavery, servitude (servus)*, 55.  
**servō, -āre**, *to save, preserve*, 5.  
**servus, -ī**, m., *slave*, 4.  
**sī**, conj., *if*, 29.  
**sīc**, adv., *so*, 38.  
**Sicilia, -ae**, f., *Sicily*, 35.  
**signum, -ī**, n., *sign, standard*; **signa īferre**, *to advance, charge*, 29.  
**silentium, -ī**, n., *silence*, 40.  
**silva, -ae**, f., *wood, forest*, 2.  
**similis, -e**, adj., *like, similar to (compared § 471)*, 23.  
**simul**, adv., *at the same time; simul āc (atque), at the same time as, as soon as*, 34.  
**sine**, prep. w. abl., *without*, 10.  
**singulāris, -e**, adj., *single*, § 461.  
**singulī, -ae, -a**, adj., *one by one, singly*, 53.  
**sinister, -tra, -trum**, adj., *left, on the left hand*, 26.  
**socius, -ī**, m., *ally*, 14.  
**sōl, sōlis**, m., *sun*, 41.  
**soleō, -ēre, solitus**, semi-dep. v., *to be accustomed, be wont*, 37.

**sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only**  
(declined § 469), 52.

**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, to unbind, loose, weigh anchor,**  
§ 461.

**spatiū, -ī, n., space, § 461.**

**speciēs, -ēi, f., sight, appearance,**  
§ 461.

**speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj., scouting, § 461.**

**spērō, -āre, to hope (spēs), 41.**

**spēs, speī, f., hope, 29.**

**spoliō, -āre, to strip, despoil,**  
24.

**stabilitās, -ātis, f., firmness,**  
steadiness, § 461.

**statim, adv., at once, immediately, 30.**

**statiō, -ōnis, f., post, guard,**  
duty, § 461.

**strepitus, -ūs, m., noise, din,**  
uproar, § 461.

**studeō, -ēre, stnduī, —, to be eager for, desire (studium),**  
55.

**studium, -ī, n., eagerness, devotion, zeal, 21.**

**sub, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu. and abl., under, to the foot of, at the foot of, 34.**

**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**  
(sub + dūcō), to lead up, draw up, § 461.

**subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (sub + iaciō), to throw under, place under, § 461.**

**subitō, adv., suddenly (subitus),**  
25.

**subitus -a -um, adj., sudden, unexpectedly, 54.**

**subministrō, -āre, to supply,**  
furnish, § 461.

**submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**  
(sub + mittō), to send up, send to one's assistance, § 461.

**submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**  
(sub + moveō), to drive off, dislodge, § 461.

**subsequor, -ī, -secūtus (sub + sequor), dep. v., to follow closely, § 461.**

**subsidiū, -ī, n., reserve, support, resource, 44.**

**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrns**  
(sub + cēdō), to come up, approach, take the place of, 51.

**Snēbī, -ōrum, m. plur., the Suebians, a powerful German people, 41.**

**suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē, reflexive pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it (declined § 474), 40.**

**summus, -a, -um, superl. of superus, highest, the top of (compared § 471), 24.**

**Superbus, -ī, m., the Proud, the name given King Tarquin, 27.**

**superior, -ius, compar. of superus, upper, higher (compared § 471), 24.**

**superō, -āre, to surpass, excel, conquer, 11.**

**supplicium, -ī, n., punishment, 36.**

**suprā, adv. and prep. w. accu., above, beyond, 41.**

**suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion, 53.**

**suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to suspect, § 461.**

**sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus**  
(sub + teneō), support, hold out against, withstand, 27.

**sustulī, perf. indic. of tollō.**

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his own, her own, its own* (*sui*), 28.

**Syria**, -ae, f., *Syria*, 34.

T

**tālis**, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind*, 41.

**tam**, adv., *so*, 38.

**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still*, 29.

**tandem**, adv., *at last*, 43.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, 30.*

**tardē**, adv., *slowly, late; paulō tardius, rather slowly*, § 461.

**Tarentīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *Tarentine, relating to Tarentum, a city of southern Italy*, 31.

**Tarquinius**, -ī, m., *Tarquin, the last king of Rome*, 27.

**tēlūm**, -ī, n., *weapon, spear*, 29.

**temerē**, adv., *recklessly, rashly, § 461.*

**tēmō**, -ōnis, m., *pole (of a chariot or wagon)*, § 461.

**tempestās**, -ātis, f., *weather, storm (tempus)*, § 461.

**templum**, -ī, n., *temple*, 10.

**tempus**, -oris, n., *time*, 21.

**teneō**, -ēre, *tenuī, tentus, to hold*, 27.

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young*, 7.

**tergum**, -ī, n., *back*, 33.

**terra**, -ae, f., *earth, land*, 4.

**terreō**, -ēre, *terrūi, territus, to frighten*, 30.

**terror**, -ōris, m., *fright, alarm, § 461.*

**tertius**, -a, -um, adj., *third (trēs), 20.*

**Tiberis**, -is, m., *the Tiber*, 27.

**timeō**, -ēre, *timuī, —, to be afraid, fear*, 28.

**timidus**, -a, -um, adj., *timid, frightened (timeō)*, 22.

**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear (timeō), 17.*

**tollō**, -ere, *sustulī, sublātus, to lift up, raise, destroy*, 41.

**tormentum**, -ī, n., *engine (for throwing missiles)*, § 461.

**tot**, indeclin. adj., *so many*, 32.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire (declined § 469)*, 20.

**trā**, = **trāns**.

**trādō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus (*trāns + dō*), *to hand over, yield up, surrender*, 33.

**trādūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (*trāns + dūcō*), *to lead over, lead across*, 32.

**trāiectus**, -ūs, m., *a crossing over, passage*, § 461.

**trāns**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *over, across*, 20.

**trānseō**, -īre, -īi, -itūrus (*trāns + eō*), *to go over, cross*, 47.

**trānsportō**, -āre (*trāns + portō*), *to carry across*, § 461.

**tribūnus**, -ī, m., *a tribune, a military officer, six of whom were attached to each legion*, 26.

**trīgintā**, indeclin. num., *thirty, § 461.*

**tristis**, -e, adj., *sad*, 22.

**tū**, *tuī, second pers. pron., thou, you (declined § 474)*, 40.

**Tullia**, -ae, f., *Tullia*, 1.

**tum**, adv., *then*, 29.

**turma**, -ae, f., *troop, squadron of cavalry*, § 461.

**turris**, -is, f., *tower*, 18.

**tūtō**, adv., *safely (tūtus)*, 25.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*, 22.  
 tuus, -a, -um, pass. pron., *thy, your* (tū), 3.

## U

ubi, rel. adv., *where, when*; ubi

prīnum, *as soon as*, 3.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any* (declined § 469), 52.

ulterior, -ius, comparative adj.,  
 positive wanting, *farther, beyond* (compared § 471; **ultrā**), 24.

ultimus, -a, -um, superlative of  
 ulterior, *farthest, most remote* (compared § 471), 24.

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. accu.,  
*beyond, on the farther side*, 54.

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side,*  
*voluntarily*, § 461.

ūnā, adv., *along with, in company*  
*with*, 54.

unde, rel. adv., *whence, from*  
*which*, 52.

undique, adv., *from every side,*  
*everywhere*, 43.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all*, § 461.

umquam, adv., *ever, with a negative*, 37.

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., *one, sole,*  
*alone* (declined § 469), 32.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*, 19.

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, experience,*  
*profit* (**ūtor**), 50.

ut (**ūtī**), conj., *that, in order that,*  
*so that; after expression of*  
*fear, that not*, 30.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog. and  
 rel. pron., *which (of two)?* (declined § 469), 33.

uterque, utraque, utrumque,  
 pron., *each (of two), both (uter)*,  
 50.

utī, = ut.

utinam, adv., used to introduce  
 wishes, 29.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep. v., *to use,*  
*enjoy, profit by*; used with an  
 abl. of means instead of direct  
 object, 37.

utrimque, adv., *on both sides,*  
*from both sides*, 55.

## V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty of,*  
*without*, 24.

vadum, -ī, n., *a ford*; plur.,  
*shoals*, § 461.

valeō, -ēre, valūī, —, *to be*  
*strong*, 52.

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong,*  
 6.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, 37.

vāsto, -āre, *to destroy, devastate,*  
 11.

vehementer, adv., *violently, impetuously*, 36.

vel, conj. and adv., *or*; vel . . .  
 vel, *either, or (as you please)*;  
 as adv., *even*, 56.

vēlōciter, adv., *swiftly* (**vēlōx**),  
 43.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick*,  
 21.

Venetius, -a, -um, adj., *of the*  
*Veneti*, a tribe in northwestern  
 Gaul, § 461.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, vēntūrus, *to*  
*come*, 34.

ventitō, -āre, *to come often, keep*  
*coming, come and go*, § 461.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind*, 27.

<b>vēr</b> , <i>vēris</i> , n., <i>spring</i> ; <b>prīmō</b>	<b>vīlicus</b> , -ī, m., <i>steward</i> , 4.
<b>vēre</b> , <i>at the beginning of spring</i> , 24.	<b>vīlla</b> , -ae, f., <i>country house</i> , 4.
<b>vereor</b> , -ērī, <b>veritus</b> , dep. v., <i>to fear, dread</i> , 36.	<b>vincō</b> , -ere, <b>vīcī</b> , <b>vīctus</b> , <i>to conquer</i> , 35.
<b>vergō</b> , -ere, —, —, <i>to slope, look towards</i> , § 461.	<b>vineulum</b> , -ī, n., <i>chain</i> , § 461.
<b>vērō</b> , adv., <i>in truth, certainly</i> , § 461.	<b>vir</b> , <b>virī</b> , m., <i>man</i> , 6.
<b>Vertiscus</b> , -ī, m., <i>Vertiscus</i> , a chief of the Remi, 17.	<b>virtūs</b> , -ūtis, f., <i>manliness, courage, virtue (vir)</i> , 16.
<b>vertō</b> , -ere, <b>vertī</b> , <i>versus, to turn</i> , § 461.	<b>vīs</b> , <b>vīs</b> , f., <i>force, violence</i> ; plur. <b>vīrēs</b> , -ium, <i>strength, power</i> , § 461.
<b>Vesta</b> , -ae, f., <i>Vesta</i> , a Roman goddess, 4.	<b>vīta</b> , -ae, f., <i>life</i> , 3.
<b>vester</b> , -tra, -trum, poss. pron., <i>your (vōs)</i> , 16.	<b>vix</b> , adv., <i>hardly, scarcely</i> , 29.
<b>via</b> , -ae, f., <i>road, way</i> , 1.	<b>vocō</b> , -āre, <i>to call (vōx)</i> , 7.
<b>vīctor</b> , -ōris, m., <i>victor (vincō)</i> , 17.	<b>volō</b> , <i>velle, volūī, to wish, will (conjugated § 487)</i> , 44.
<b>vīctorīa</b> , -ae, f., <i>victory (vincō)</i> 10.	<b>voluntās</b> , -ātis, f., <i>wish, desire, consent (volō)</i> , 45.
<b>videō</b> , -ēre, <b>vīdī</b> , <b>vīsus</b> , <i>to see; pass., to seem</i> , 27.	<b>Volusēnus</b> , -ī, m., <i>Volusenus</i> , one of Caesar's military tribunes, § 461.
<b>vigilia</b> , -ae, f., <i>watch, guard</i> , 20.	<b>vōx</b> , <b>vōcis</b> , f., <i>voice</i> , 16.
<b>vīgintī</b> , indeclin. num., <i>twenty</i> , 23.	<b>vulnerō</b> , -āre, <i>to wound (vulnus)</i> , 15.
	<b>vulnus</b> , -eris, n., <i>a wound</i> , 21.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

THE principal parts of verbs and peculiarities of syntax must be learned from the preceding vocabulary and the body of the book. The numbers after verbs indicate the conjugation to which they belong.

### A

- a**, art., usually not translated ; sometimes *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.
- about**, *dē* w. abl.; *circum* w. accu.
- abundance**, *cōpia*, -ae, f.
- acceptable**, *grātus*, -a, -um.
- accustomed (to be)**, *soleō*, 2 (§ 295); **to grow accustomed**, *cōsuēscō*, 3.
- acquainted with (to become)**, *cōgnōscō*, 3.
- across**, *trāns* w. accu.
- act (to)**, *agō*, 3 ; *faciō*, 3.
- advance (to)**, *sīgna* *movēre*, *prōgredior*, 3.
- advantage of (to take)**, *ūtor*, 3.
- advice**, *cōnsilium*, -i, n.
- affairs**, *rēs*, *reī*, f.
- afraid (to be)**, *timeō*, 2 ; *vereor*, 2.
- after**, prep., post w. accu.; conj., *postquam*, *ubi*, *cum*; sometimes abl. abs.; adv., *inde*, *deinde*.
- afterwards**, *posteā*, *deinde*.
- again**, *iterum*, *rūrsus*.
- against**, *contrā* w. accu.
- agreed (to be)**, *cōnstāre* used impersonally.

- aid**, *auxilium*, -i, n.
- aid (to)**, *iuvō*, 1.
- all**, *omnis*, -e ; *tōtus*, -a, -um ; **all other**, *cēterī*, -ae, -a ; **all sides (on)**, *undique*.
- allow (to)**, *permittō*, 3 ; *patior*, 3 ; *licet* used impersonally, 2.
- ally**, *socius*, -i, m.
- almost**, *fere*, *paene*.
- alone**, *sōlus*, -a, -um.
- already**, *iam*.
- also**, *quoque*.
- altar**, *āra*, -ae, f.
- although**, *cum* w. subj.; *quam* w. indic.
- altogether**, *omnīnō*.
- always**, *semper*.
- ambassador**, *lēgātus*, -i, m.
- among**, *inter*, *apud* w. accu.
- ancestors**, *māiōrēs*, m. and f.
- ancient**, *antīquus*.
- and**, *et*, *atque*.
- animal**, *animal*, -ālis, n.
- announce (to)**, *nūntiō*, 1.
- another**, *alius*, -a, -um.
- any**, *ūllus*, -a, -um ; *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* (*aliquod*) ; *quisquam*, —, *quidquam*.

<b>appearance of (to have the),</b> = to be like.	<b>battle,</b> pūgna, -ae. f.; proelium, -ī, n.
<b>approach,</b> iter, itineris, n.; adi- tus, -ūs, m.; adventus, -ūs, m.	<b>be (to),</b> sum (§ 485).
<b>approach (to),</b> adpropinquō, 1; adeō (§ 488).	<b>beautiful,</b> pulcher, -chra, -chrūm.
<b>approve (to),</b> probō, 1.	<b>because,</b> quod; cum; because of, = abl. of cause.
<b>arms,</b> arma, -ōrum, n. plur.	<b>before,</b> conj., antequam; prep., ante w. accu.
<b>army,</b> exercitus, -ūs, m.	<b>beg (to),</b> rogō, 1; petō, 3.
<b>arouse (to),</b> excitō, 1; incitō, 1.	<b>beginning (at the b. of),</b> = the proper case of prīmus, -a, -um.
<b>arrest (to),</b> comprehendō, 3.	<b>behind,</b> post w. accu.
<b>arrival,</b> adventus, -ūs, m.	<b>Belgians,</b> Belgae, -ārum, m.
<b>arrive (to),</b> perveniō, 4.	<b>believe (to),</b> putō, 1.
<b>as,</b> = appositive; prō w. abl. ; quam; quālis; as long as, dum (§ 370); as soon as, cum prīnum; simul atque (āc).	<b>belong (to),</b> = dat. of possessor or possessive gen.
<b>ask (to),</b> rogō, 1; petō, 3; pos- tulō, 1.	<b>below,</b> infrā w. accu.
<b>assemble (to),</b> convocō, 1.	<b>besiege (to),</b> oppūgnō, 1.
<b>assembly,</b> concilium, -ī, n.	<b>best,</b> optimus, -a, -um.
<b>assist (to),</b> iuvō, 1.	<b>betake one's self (to),</b> sē reci- pere.
<b>at once,</b> statim.	<b>between,</b> inter w. accu.
<b>attack (to),</b> oppūgnō, 1.	<b>body,</b> corpus, -oris, n.
<b>attack,</b> impetus, -ūs; oppūgnā- tiō, -ōnis, f.	<b>bold,</b> audāx.
<b>attempt (to),</b> conor, 1.	<b>boldness,</b> audācia, -ae, f.
<b>attendant,</b> comes, -itis, m. and f.	<b>bondage,</b> servitus, -ūtis, f.
<b>auxiliary troops,</b> auxilia, -ōrum, n. plur.	<b>book,</b> liber, librī, m.
<b>avail (to be of),</b> prōsum w. dat. (§ 486).	<b>both . . . and,</b> et . . . et.
<b>await (to),</b> exspectō, 1.	<b>booty,</b> praeda, -ae, f.
<b>aware of (to be),</b> sentiō, 4; sciō, 4.	<b>boy,</b> puer, puerī, m.
B	
<b>bad,</b> malus, -a, -um.	<b>brave,</b> fortis, -e.
<b>baggage,</b> impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.	<b>bravely,</b> fortiter.
<b>band,</b> manus, -ūs, f.	<b>bravery,</b> fortitūdō, -inis, f.
<b>barbarian,</b> barbarus, -a, -um.	<b>break camp (to),</b> castra movēre.
	<b>bridge,</b> pōns, pontis, m.
	<b>bring (to),</b> portō, 1; ferō (§ 489); inferō; <b>bring together,</b> cōgō, 3; <b>bring upon,</b> inferō.
	<b>Briton,</b> Britannus, -i, m.
	<b>broad,</b> lātus, -a, -um.
	<b>brother,</b> frāter, -tris, m.

**build**, aedificō, 1.  
**but**, sed.

## C

**call** (to), appellō, 1; vocō, 1;  
    **call together**, convocō, 1.  
**camp**, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**camp (to pitch)**, castra ponere.  
**can**, be able (to), possum (§ 486).  
**capture (to)**, expūgnō, 1.  
**care for (to)**, cūrō, 1; cōnsulō w.  
    dat., 3.  
**carry (to)**, portō, 1; **carry on**  
    **war**, bellum gerere; **carry out**  
    **of**, dēferre.  
**Carthaginians**, Carthāginiēnsēs,  
    -iūm, m. plur.  
**cavalry**, equites, -um, m. plur.;  
    equitātus, -ūs, m.; adj., eques-  
    ter, -tris, -tre.  
**centurion**, centuriō, -ōnis, m.  
**challenge (to)**, laceſſō, 3.  
**chance**, potestās, -ātis, f.; **chances**,  
    cāſus, ūs, m.  
**charge of (to be in)**, praesum w.  
    dat.; **to put in c. of**, praeſicio  
    w. dat., 3.  
**chase away (to)**, fugō, 1.  
**chief**, prīnceps, -ipis, m.  
**children**, līberī, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**citadel**, arx, arcis, f.  
**citizenship**, cīvitās, -ātis, f.  
**city**, urbs, urbis, f.; oppidum,  
    -ī, n.  
**client**, cliēns, clientis, m.  
**cloud**, nūbēs, -is, f.  
**cohort**, cohors, -tis, f.  
**come (to)**, veniō, 4; **come near**,  
    adpropinquō, 1; **come up**, suc-  
    cēdō, 3.  
**command**, imperium, -ī, n.  
**companion**, comes, -itis, m. and f.

**compel (to)**, cōgō, 3.  
**complain (to)**, queror, 3.  
**conceal (to)**, occultō, 1.  
**condition**, condiciō, -ōnis, f.  
**confident (to be)**, cōfidō (§ 305).  
**conquer (to)**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**consecutive**, continuus, -a, -um.  
**conspire (to)**, coniūrō, 1.  
**consul**, cōnsul, -lis, m.  
**contend in battle (to)**, dēcertō, 1.  
**country**, patria, -ae, f.; fīnēs,  
    -iūm, m. plur.  
**country-house**, villa, -ae, f.  
**courage**, animus, -ī, m.; virtus,  
    -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.  
**cover (to)**, compleō, 2.  
**cut down (to)**, occīdō, 3.

## D

**danger**, periculum, -ī, n.  
**dangerous**, periculōsus, -a, -um.  
**daughter**, filia, -ae, f.  
**dawn**, lūx, lūcis, f.  
**day**, diēs, diēī, m.  
**daybreak (at)**, prīmā lūce.  
**daylight**, lūx, lūcis, f.  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um.  
**death**, mors, mortis, f.  
**decide (to)**, cōnstituō, 3.  
**defeat (to)**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**defend (to)**, dēfendō, 3.  
**delay (to)**, moror, 1.  
**delay**, mora, -ae, f.  
**deliver a speech (to)**, ḍrātiōnem  
    habēre.  
**demand (to)**, postulō, 1.  
**departure**, profectiō, -ōnis, f.;  
    discessus, -ūs, m.  
**deprive (to)**, privō, 1.  
**design of (with the)**, = a pur-  
    pose clause.

**desire (to)**, cupiō, 3; volō (§ 487).  
**desist from (to)**, desistō, 3; intermittō, 3.  
**despair (to)**, dēspērō, 1.  
**destroy (to)**, tollō, 3.  
**deter (to)**, dēterreō, 2.  
**determine (to)**, cōnstituō, 3.  
**devastate (to)**, vastō, 1.  
**die (to)**, morior, 3.  
**different**, dissimilis, -e.  
**difficult**, difficilis, -e.  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, f.  
**diligence**, industria, -ae, f.; dili-  
gentia, -ae, f.  
**diligently**, cum industriā; dili-  
genter.  
**disaster**, clādēs, -is, f.  
**dislodge**, pellō, 3.  
**dispatch (to)**, mittō, 3.  
**disperse (to)**, abeō.  
**distant (to be)**, absum.  
**district**, ager, agrī, m.; regiō,  
-ōnis, f.  
**ditch**, fossa, -ae, f.  
**doubt (to)**, dubitō, 1.  
**doubtful**, dubius, -a, -um; **there  
is no doubt**, nōn est dubium.  
**draw up (to)**, cōnstituō, 3.  
**drive (to)**, fugō, 1; agō, 3; pel-  
lō, 3; **drive away, out, from**,  
fugō, 1; expellō, 3.  
**during**, accu. or abl. of time; in;  
per.  
**dwell (to)**, incolō, 3.

**E**

**each (one)**, quisque, quaque,  
quidque (quodque) (§ 478);  
**each of two**, uterque, utraque,  
utrumque (§ 469).  
**eager**, avidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris,  
ācre.

**eager for (to be)**, studeō, 2; eu-  
piō, 3.  
**early (in the morning)**, māne.  
**easy**, facilis, -e.  
**eighth**, octāvus, -a, -um.  
**embassy**, legatiō, -ōnis, f.  
**employ (to)**, ūtor, 3.  
**end**, finis, -is, m.  
**endure (to)**, patior, 3; ferō (§ 489).  
**enemy**, inimicus, -ī, m.; hostis,  
-is, m.  
**engage with (to)**, pūgnō 1,  
proelium committere.  
**England**, Britannia, -ae, f.  
**enjoy (to)**, fruor, 3.  
**enlarge (to)**, augeō, 2.  
**enough**, satis.  
**enter (to)**, intrō, 1; **enter upon**,  
ineō, incipiō, 3.  
**entire**, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 469).  
**equal**, aequus, -a, -um; similis, -e.  
**erect (to)**, aedificō, 1.  
**especially**, praesertim.  
**establish (to)**, cōnfirmō, 1.  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, -ae, f.  
**even if**, etiam sī.  
**exchange (to)**, dāre et accipere.  
**exhausted**, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**experience (to)**, experior, 4; pa-  
tior, 3.  
**experienced**, peritus, -a, -um.

**F**

**fact**, rēs, reī, f.; often simply the  
neuter of hīc.  
**fail (to)**, dēficiō, 3; dēsum.  
**fall (to)**, accidō, 3; pass. of iaciō,  
3; **fall back**, pedem referre;  
cēdō, 3; revertor, 3.  
**fame**, fāma, -ae, f.  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um; some-  
times ille.

**far**, procul, longē.  
**far away (to be)**, absum.  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, m.  
**farther**, adj., ulterior, -ius; adv., ultrā.  
**father**, pater, pátris, m.  
**fear (to)**, timeō, 2; vereor, 2.  
**fear**, timor, -ōris, m.  
**fear that (for)**, nē.  
**fearlessly**, sine timōre.  
**feel grateful (to)**, grātiam habēre.  
**few**, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; paucī, -ae, -a.  
**field**, ager, agrī, m.; campus, -ī, m.  
**fiercely**, ātrōciter.  
**fifth**, quintus, -a, -um.  
**fight (to)**, pūgnō, 1.  
**fill up (to)**, compleō, 2.  
**finally**, denique.  
**find (to)**, nancīscor, 3.  
**find out (to)**, cōgnōscō, 3.  
**fine**, bonus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chra, -chrūm.  
**finish (to)**, cōnficiō, 3.  
**fire**, ignis, -is, m.  
**first**, adj., prīmus, -a, -um; **first of all**, adv., prīmū; **at first**, primō.  
**five**, quinque.  
**flank**, latus, -eris, n.; cornu, -ūs, n.  
**flee (to)**, fugiō, 3.  
**fleet**, classis, -is, f.  
**flock**, grex, gregis, m.  
**foe**, hostis, -is, m.  
**follow (to)**, sequor, 3.  
**following**, proximus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um; hīc, haec, hōc.  
**foot**, pes, pedis, m.; **foot-sol-**

**ders**, peditēs, -um, m. pl.; peditātūs, -ūs, in.  
**foot of**, infīmus, -a, -um; **to the foot of**, sub w. accu.  
**for**, nam; enim; quod.  
**for the sake of**, prō w. abl.; causā w. gen.  
**force (with great)**, graviter.  
**forced marches**, māgna itinera.  
**forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, f.  
**foresight**, cōnsilium, -ī, n.  
**forest**, silva, -ae, f.  
**forget (to)**, oblīvīscor, 3.  
**former (the)**, ille, illa, illud; prior, prius.  
**formerly**, īlīm.  
**fortification**, mūnītiō, īnis, f.  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4.  
**fortune**, fortūna, -ae, f.  
**free (to)**, liberō, 1.  
**free**, liber, -era, -erum.  
**freedom**, libertās, -ātis, f.  
**fresh**, novus, -a, -um; integer, -gra, -grum.  
**friend**, amīcus, -ī, m.  
**friendship**, amīctia, -ae, f.  
**frighten (to)**, terreō, 2.  
**from**, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex.

## G

**Gallie**, Gallus, -a, -um; Gallicus, -a, um.  
**garden**, hortus, -ī, m.  
**garrison**, praesidium, -ī, n.  
**gate**, porta, -ae, f.  
**gather (to)**, conveniō, 4.  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, f.  
**Gauls**, Gallī, -ōrum, m.  
**general**, imperātor, -ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m.  
**German**, Germānus, -a, -um.  
**Germany**, Germania, -ae, f.

<b>get ready (to)</b> , parō, 1 ; aedificō, 1,	<b>hatred</b> , odium, -ī, n.
<b>gift</b> , donum, -ī, n.	<b>have (to)</b> , habeō, 2.
<b>girl</b> , puella, -ae, f.	<b>height</b> , altitūdō, -inis, f.
<b>give (to)</b> , dō, 1 ; <b>give an opinion</b> , sententiam dīcere.	<b>help</b> , auxilium, -ī, n.
<b>give up (to)</b> , reddō, 3 ; trādō, 3 ; dēsistō, 3.	<b>here</b> , hīc.
<b>gladly</b> , laetē.	<b>hide (to)</b> , occultō, 1.
<b>glory</b> , laus, laudis, f.	<b>hill</b> , collis, -is, m.
<b>go (to)</b> , eō (§ 488) ; exeō ; proficisciō, 3 ; <b>go against, to meet</b> . occurrō, 3.	<b>hinder (to)</b> , prohibeō, 2 ; impe-diō, 4.
<b>goddess</b> , dea, -ae, f.	<b>hither</b> , adj., citerior, -ius.
<b>good</b> , bonus, -a, -um.	<b>hold (to)</b> , habeō, 2.
<b>goods</b> , bona, -ōrum, n. plur.	<b>home</b> , domus, -ūs, m.
<b>gradually</b> , paulātim.	<b>honor</b> , laus, laudis, f.
<b>grain</b> , frūmentum, -ī, n.	<b>hope</b> , spēs, speī, f.
<b>grant (to)</b> , dō, 1.	<b>Horace</b> , Horatius, -ī, m.
<b>grass</b> , herba, -ae, f.	<b>horn</b> , cornū, -ūs, n.
<b>great</b> , māgnus, -a, -um ; clārus, -a, -um.	<b>horse</b> , equus, -ī, m.
<b>greatly</b> , māgnoperē ; vehementer.	<b>horseman</b> , eques, -itis, m.
<b>Greece</b> , Graecia, -ae, f.	<b>hostage</b> , obses, -idis, m.
<b>ground</b> , terra, -ae, f.	<b>hour</b> , hōra, -ae, f.
<b>guard</b> , custōs, -ōdis, m.	<b>house</b> , domus, -ūs, m.

**H**

<b>Haeduans</b> , Haedui, -ōrum, m. plur.
<b>halt (to)</b> , cōnsistō, 3.
<b>hand</b> , manus, -ūs, f.
<b>hand over (to)</b> , trādō, 3.
<b>handsome</b> , pulcher, -chra, -chrūm.
<b>happen (to)</b> , fiō (§ 488).
<b>happy</b> , beātus, -a, -um.
<b>harbor</b> , portus, -ūs, m.
<b>hard</b> , dūrus, -a, -um ; gravis, -e ; atrōx.
<b>hardly</b> , vix ; fere.
<b>haste</b> , celeritās, -ātis, f.
<b>hasten (to)</b> , properō, 1.

**I**

<b>I</b> , egō (§ 474).
<b>immediately</b> , statim.
<b>in</b> , in w. abl.
<b>inasmuch as</b> , cum w. subj.; quod.
<b>increase (to)</b> , augeō, 2.
<b>induce (to)</b> , addūcō, 3.
<b>influence</b> , auctōritās, -ātis, f.
<b>inform (to)</b> , nūntiō, 1 ; aliquem certiōrem facere.
<b>inhabit (to)</b> , incolō, 3.
<b>inhabitant</b> , incola, -ae, m. ; <b>in-habitant of a town</b> , oppidā-nus.
<b>injure (to)</b> , noceō, 2.
<b>injury</b> , iniūria, -ae, f.
<b>inner</b> , interior, -ius.

**in order that**, ut.

**in regard to**, dē w. abl.

**intend (to)**, in animō habēre; volō.

**interior**, interior, -ius.

**into**, in w. accu.

**Italy**, Italia, -ae, f.

### J

**javelin**, pīlum, -ī, n.

**judge**, iūdex, -icis, m.

### K

**keeper**, custōs, -ōdis, m.

**keep from (to)**, prohibeō, 2.

**keep in check (to)**, contineō, 2.

**kill (to)**, necō, 1; interficio, 3; occidō, 3.

**king**, rēx, rēgis, m.

**know (to)**, sciō, 4; cōgnōvī, 3; intellegō, 3; **know how**, sciō w. inf.

### L

**labor**, labor, -ōris, m.

**lack**, inopia, -ae, f.

**lacking (to be)**, dēsum.

**land**, terra, -ae, f.; ager, agrī, m.

**large**, māgnus, -a, -um.

**latter**, hīc, haec, hōc.

**lay waste (to)**, vastō, 1.

**lead (to)**, dūcō, 3; **lead across**, trādūcō, 3; **lead forth**, prō-dūcō, 3; **lead off**, dēdūcō, 3.

**leader**, dux, ducis, m.

**leading man**, princeps, -ipis, m.

**learn (to)**, audiō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3; certior fierī.

**leave (to)**, relinquō, 3.

**left**, reliquus, -a, -um; **on the left hand**, sinister, -tra, -trum.

**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, f.

**letter**, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae, -ārum, f. plur.

**level**, aequus, -a, -um.

**liberate (to)**, liberō, 1.

**liberty**, libertās, -ātis, f.

**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, m.

**life**, vita, -ae, f.; salūs, -ūtis, f.

**light**, levīs, -e.

**like (to)**, amō, 1.

**like**, similis, -e.

**line-of-battle**, aciēs, -ēi, f.

**little**, parvus, -a, -um; **a little**, paulum; paulō; **a little after**, paulō post.

**live (to)**, habitō, 1.

**long**, adj., longus, -a, -um.

**long, for a long time**, adv., diū.

**look out for one's interests (to)**, alicui cōsulere.

**lose (to)**, āmittō, 3.

**loud**, māgnus, -a, -um.

**love (to)**, amō, 1.

**love**, amor, -ōris, m.

**low**, humilis, -e.

### M .

**magistrate**, magistrātus, -ūs, m.

**maid-servant**, ancilla, -ae, f.

**make (to)**, faciō, 3; efficiō, 3;

**make an effort**, conor, 1; operam dāre; **make peace**, pācem cōfirmāre; **make war**, bellum inferre, agere.

**man**, vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m.

**manage (to)**, administrō, 1; agō, 3; faciō, 3.

**manner**, modus, -ī, m.; ratiō, -ōnis, f.; **in what manner**, quō modō.

**many**, multī, -ae, -a.

**march (to)**, iter facere; **march out**, exeō.

<b>march</b> , iter, itineris, n.	<b>night</b> , nox, noctis, f.; <b>by night</b> , noctū.
<b>master</b> , dominus, -ī, m.; magis- ter, -trī, m.	<b>nobility of spirit</b> , māgnitūdō animī.
<b>meantime (in the)</b> , interim; in- terea.	<b>no longer</b> , nōn diūtius.
<b>meet (to go to)</b> , occurrō, 3.	<b>not</b> , nōn, neque; <b>not only . . .</b> <b>but also</b> , nōn modo . . . sed etiam; <b>not yet</b> , nondum.
<b>meet death (to)</b> , morior, 3; pass. of neco, 1; interficiō, 3; occi- dō, 3.	<b>nothing</b> , nihil.
<b>messenger</b> , nūntius, -ī, m.	<b>notice</b> , sentiō, 4.
<b>method</b> , ratiō, -ōnis, f.	<b>now</b> , nunc, iam.
<b>midnight</b> , media nox.	<b>number</b> , numerus, -ī, m.
<b>mile</b> , mille passūs.	
<b>military matters</b> , rēs militāris.	
<b>money</b> , pecūnia, -ae, f.; argen- tum, -ī, n.	
<b>mother</b> , māter, -trīs, f.	
<b>mountain</b> , mōns, montis, m.	
<b>much</b> , adv., multō.	
<b>muse</b> , mūsa, -ae, f.	
<b>my, mine</b> , meus, -a, -um.	

**N**

<b>name</b> , nōmen, -inis, n.	
<b>nation</b> , natiō, -ōnis, f.	
<b>naturally</b> , abl. nātūrā.	
<b>near</b> , prope w. accu.; <b>nearer</b> , propior, -ius; <b>nearest</b> , proxim- mus, -a, -um.	
<b>nearly</b> , ferē; paene.	
<b>needful</b> , necessārius, -a, -um.	
<b>neighbors</b> , fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.	
<b>neither . . . nor</b> , neque . . . neque.	
<b>neither</b> , pron., neuter, -tra, -trum (§ 469).	
<b>Nervians</b> , Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur.	
<b>new</b> , novus, -a, -um.	
<b>next</b> , proximus, -a, -um; poste- rus, -a, -um.	

**O**

<b>obliged (to be)</b> , often expressed by the pass. periphras. conjuga- tion.
<b>ocean</b> , oceanus, -ī, m.
<b>offer</b> , dō, 1; offerō, 3.
<b>often</b> , saepe.
<b>old man</b> , senex, senis, m.
<b>on</b> , in w. abl.; <b>on account of</b> , abl.
<b>once</b> , ūlim; <b>at once</b> , statim.
<b>one . . . another</b> , alius . . . alius.
<b>on land and sea</b> , terrā marīque.
<b>onrush</b> , impetus, -ūs, m.
<b>openly</b> , palam.
<b>opinion</b> , sententia, -ae, f.
<b>opportunity</b> , facultās, -atis, f.; potestās, -ātis, f.
<b>opposite</b> , adversus, -a, -um.
<b>oppress</b> , premō, 3; opprimō, 3.
<b>order (to)</b> , imperō, 1; iubeō, 2; <b>order to furnish</b> , imperō w. dat. of person and accu. of thing.
<b>other</b> , alius, alia, aliud (§ 469); <b>other of two</b> , alter, -tera, -terum (§ 469).

**others (the),** cēterī, -ae, -a ; re-  
liquī, -ae, -a.  
**our,** noster, -tra, -trum.  
**overcome (to),** superō, 1 ; vineō, 3.  
**overtake (to),** cōsequor, 3.  
**owe, ought (to),** debeō, 2.  
**owing (to),** abl. of cause.  
**own (one's),** suus, -a, -um.  
**owner,** dominus, -ī, m.

## P

**pacify (to),** pācō, 1.  
**part,** pars, partis, f. ; **for the**  
most part, plērumque.  
**pass (to let),** intermittō, 3.  
**pass the winter (to),** hiemō, 1.  
**patriotism,** amor patriae.  
**peace,** pāx, pācis, f.  
**people,** populus, -ī, m.  
**perpetual,** perpetuus, -a, -um.  
**Persian,** Persa, -ae, m.  
**persuade (to),** persuādeō, 2.  
**pitch camp (to),** castra pōnere.  
**place (to),** conlocō, 1.  
**place, locus, -ī, m. ; to the same**  
place, eōdem.  
**plain,** campus, -ī, m.  
**plan,** cōsilia, -ī, n.  
**pleasing,** grātus, -a, -um.  
**pledge,** fidēs, -ei, f.  
**plunder,** praeda, -ae, f.  
**poet,** poēta, -ae, m.  
**Pompey,** Pompēius, -ī, m.  
**position,** locus, -ī, m.  
**possession of (to get),** potior, 4 ;  
occupō, 1.  
**possessions,** rēs, rērum, f. plur. ;  
bona, n. plur.  
**power,** imperium, -ī, n. ; potestās,  
-ātis, f.  
**praise (to),** laudō, 1.

**prefer (to),** mālō (§ 487).  
**prepare (to),** parō, 1 ; comparō, 1.  
**present (to be),** adsum.  
**prevent (to),** prohibeō, 2 ; im-  
pediō, 4.  
**previous,** prior, prius.  
**priest,** sacerdōs, -ōtis, m.  
**principal man,** prīnceps, -ipis, m.  
**prisoner,** captīvus, -ī, m.  
**proceed (to),** prōgredior, 3 ; =  
to begin, īstituō, 3.  
**promise (to),** polliceor, 2.  
**protect (to),** muniō, 4.  
**protection,** praeisdium, -ī, n.  
**provision (to make),** subsidia  
parāre ; provideō, 2.  
**provoke (to),** lacessō, 3.  
**punishment,** poena, -ae, f.  
**purpose (to no),** frūstrā.  
**pursue (to),** sequor, 3.  
**put in command (to),** prae-  
ficiō, 3.  
**put to flight (to),** fugō, 1.

## Q

**quantity,** cōpia, -ae, f. ; multus,  
-a, -um.  
**queen,** regīna, -ae, f.  
**quickly,** celeriter.  
**quiet,** quiēs, -ētis, f.

## R

**rain,** aqua dē caelō.  
**rather than,** potius quam.  
**reach (to),** perveniō, 4.  
**read (to),** legō, 3.  
**ready,** parātus, -a, -um.  
**ready (to get),** parō, 1.  
**reason,** causa, -ae, f.  
**recall (to),** revocō, 1.  
**receive (to),** accipiō, 3.

recognise (to), cōgnōscō, 3.	sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
regard to (with), dē w. abl.	sake of (for the), causā w. gen.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.	sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.
relieve (to), succēdō, 3.	same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 475).
remain (to), maneō, 2.	savage, atrōx.
remember (to), in memorīa te-	save (to), servō, 1.
nēre, habēre.	say (to), dīcō, 3; said he, inquit.
remove (to), tollō, 3.	searcity, inopia, -ae, f.
reply (to), respondeō, 2.	sea, mare, maris, n.
report (to), nūntiō, renūntiō, 1.	secretly, clam.
reputation, fāma, -ae, f.	see (to), videō, 2.
rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquī,	seek (to), petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
-ae, -a.	seem (to), videor, 2.
retreat (to), dēcēdō, 3; pedem	seize (to), occupō, 1.
referre.	senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
return (to), reddō, 3; = come	send (to), mittō, 3; send for-
back, revertor, 3; redeō.	ward, praemittō, 3.
revolution, novae rēs, f. plur.	set fire to (to), incendō, 3.
reward, praemium, -ī, n.	set forth (to), proficīscor, 3.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.	set free (to), liberō, 1.
ridge, iugum, -ī, n.	set to work (to), incipiō, 3;
right, iūs, iūris, n.	coepī.
right hand (on the), dexter,	set out (to), proficīscor, 3.
-tra, -trum.	seven, septem.
rise (to), orior, 4.	several, singulī, -ae, -a; nōnnūl-
river, flūnen, -inis, n.	li, -ae, -a.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris,	severe, gravis, -e.
n.; by the shortest road, quā	severely, graviter.
proximum iter est.	shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.	ship, nāvis, -is, f.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.	short, brevis, -e; in a short
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.	time, celeriter; by the short-
rule (as a), plērumque.	est road, quā proximum iter
run together (to), concurrō, 3;	est.
run away, fugiō, 3.	shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
S	show (to), dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3.
sacred, sacer, -era, -erum.	Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sad, tristis, -e.	sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
safety (in), incolumis, -e.	side, latus, -eris, n.; on all sides,
sail (to), nāvigō, 1.	undique.
	signal, sīgnum, -ī, n.

silence, silentium, -ī, n.; in si-	strong, validus, -a, -um; <b>to be</b>
lence, silentiō.	strong, valeō, 2.
since, cum; quod.	subdue (to), pācō, 1; superō, 1;
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.	vincō, 3.
slave, servus, -ī, m.	succeed (to), efficere ut.
slay (to), occidō, 3; interficiō, 3.	successfully, feliciter.
small, parvus, -a, -um.	such, tālis, -e; is, ea, id.
so, tam, ita; = therefore, itaque;	suddenly, subitō, imprōvisō.
so many, tot; so great, tan-	sue for (to), petō, 3.
tus, -a, -um.	suitable, suited, idōneus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, -itis, m.	summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid	sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
(-quod); quīdam, quaedam,	superior (to be), praecēdō, 3.
quiddam (quoddam); some . . .	supply, cōpia, -ae, f.; supplies,
others; aliī . . . aliī.	cōpia; frūmentum, -ī, n.
son, filius, -ī, m.	support, subsidium, -ī, n.
soon, mox.	surrender, sē dēdere.
sort, modus, -ī, m.; of this sort,	surround (to), circumveniō, 4;
tālis, -e; ēiusmodi.	circumdō, 3.
Spaniards, Hispānī, -ōrum, m.	suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, f.
plur.	sustain (to), sustineō, 2.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.	swift, vēlōx.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; to make	swifly, celeriter.
a speech, ōrātiōnem habēre.	sword, gladius, -ī, m.
speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.	
spirit, animus, -ī, m.	T
spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre.	
spring (at the beginning of),	take by storm (to), expūgnō, 1.
prīmō vēre.	take place (to), fīō (§ 488).
state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.	take possession of (to), occu-
station (to), conlocō, 1; cōnsti-	pō, 1.
tuō, 3.	teacher, magister, -tri, m.
stay (to), maneō, 2.	tell (to), narrō, 1; dīcō, 3.
steward, vilicus, -ī, m.	temple, templum, -ī, n.
still, sēd, tamen.	ten, decem.
stir up (to), incitō, 1; excitō, 1.	tender, tener, -era, -erum.
stop (to), intermittō, 3.	terrify (to), terreō, 2.
storm (to), oppūgnō, 1.	territory, finēs, -ium, m. plur.
storming, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.	than, quam; abl. case.
story, fābula, -ae, f.	thank (to), grātiās agere.
strange, novus, -a, -um.	that, in purpose or result clauses,
strengthen (to), cōfirmō, 1.	ut; after verbs of fearing, nē;

after verbs of doubting, etc.,  
 quīn ; **that not**, nē, ut nōn ;  
 after verbs of fearing, ut.  
**that (one)**, ille, illa, illud ; is, ea,  
 id (§ 475) ; **that (of yours)**, iste,  
 ista, istud (§ 475).  
**their**, gen. plur. of is; reflexive  
 suus, -a, -um.  
**then**, deinde ; inde ; tum.  
**there**, ibi.  
**therefore**, itaque.  
**think (to)**, putō, 1.  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um.  
**thirty**, trīgintā.  
**this**, hīc, haec, hōc (§ 475).  
**though**, cum w. subj. ; quam-  
 quam.  
**thousand**, mīlle.  
**three**, trēs, tria.  
**throughout**, per w. accu.  
**thus**, ita, sīc, hōc modō.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, n.  
**tired**, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**to**, dat. case ; ad, in w. accu. ; ex-  
 pressing purpose, ut w. subj.,  
 ad w. gerundive, causā w. gen.  
 of gerund or gerundive, supine.  
**today**, hodiē.  
**together with**, cum w. abl. ;  
 ūnā cum w. abl.  
**top of**, summus, -a, -um.  
**toward**, ad w. accu.  
**tower**, turris, -is, f.  
**town**, oppidum, -i, n. ; urbs, ur-  
 bis f.  
**townsman**, oppidānus, -i, m.  
**trader**, mercātor, -ōris, m.  
**tree**, arbor, -oris, f.  
**tribe**, gēns, gentis, f.  
**tribune**, tribūnus, -i, m.  
**trust (to)**, cōfidō, 3.  
**try (to)**, conor, 1.

**turn one's back (to)**, terga ver-  
 tere, dare.  
**twelve**, duodecim.  
**twenty**, vīgintī.  
**twenty-five**, quīque et vīgintī.  
**two**, duo, duae, duo (§ 473) ;  
**which of two**, uter, utra,  
 utrum (§ 469) ; **each of two**.  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque.

## U

**uncertain**, incertus, -a, -um.  
**undergo (to)**, sustineō, 2.  
**undeserved**, indignus, -a, -um.  
**unhappy**, miser, -era, -erum.  
**unharmed**, incolumis, -e.  
**unless**, nisi.  
**unlike**, dissimilis, -e.  
**until**, dum.  
**unwilling (to be)**, nōlō (§ 487).  
**use**, ūsus, -ūs, m.  
**used to**, etc., imperfect tense ;  
 soleō, 2.  
**useful**, predicate dat. of ūsus.

## V

**valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, f. ; fortitūdō,  
 -inis, f.  
**very**, = superlative degree ; ipse,  
 ipsa, ipsum (§ 475).  
**victor**, vīctor, -ōris, m.  
**victory**, vīctōria, -ae, f.  
**voice**, vox, vocis, f.

## W

**wait for (to)**, exspectō, 1.  
**wall**, mūrus, -i, m. ; moenia,  
 -ium, n. plur.  
**wander (to)**, errō, 1.  
**war**, warfare, bellum, -i, n.  
**watch**, vigilia, -ae, f.

<b>way</b> , via, -ae, f. ; iter, itineris, n.	<b>withdraw (to)</b> , cēdō, 3 ; discēdō, 3 ; pedem referre.
<b>weapon</b> , tēlum, -ī, n.	<b>within</b> , in w. abl. ; of time, abl. case.
<b>well</b> , bene.	<b>without</b> , sine w. abl.
<b>what?</b> quid.	<b>withstand</b> , sustineō, 2.
<b>when</b> , ubi ; cum.	<b>wolf</b> , lupus, -ī, m. ; <b>she-wolf</b> , lupa, -ae, f.
<b>whence</b> , unde.	<b>woman</b> , mulier, -eris, f.
<b>where</b> , ubi.	<b>wood</b> , silva, -ae, f.
<b>which (of two)</b> , uter, utra, utrum (§ 469).	<b>word</b> , verbum, -ī, n.
<b>while</b> , dum.	<b>work (to)</b> , labōrō, 1 ; faciō, 3.
<b>who, which, what</b> , rel., quī, quae, quod (§ 476) ; interrog., quis, quid (§ 477).	<b>work</b> , opus, operis, n.
<b>whosoever</b> , quicunque, quāe- cunque, quocunque.	<b>would that</b> , = optative subj. with or without utinam (§ 242).
<b>wide</b> , lātus, -a, -um.	<b>wound (to)</b> , vulnerō, 1 ; <b>wound- ed</b> , vulnerātus, -a, -um.
<b>wife</b> , coniūnx, -iugis, f.	<b>wrong</b> , iniūria, -ae, f.
<b>will</b> , voluntās, -ātis, f. ; <b>against one's will</b> , contrā voluntātem ; invītus, -a, -um.	
<b>wind</b> , ventus, -ī, m.	<b>Y</b>
<b>wing</b> , cornū, -ūs, n.	<b>year</b> , annus, -ī, m.
<b>winter</b> , hiems, hiemis, f.	<b>you</b> , tū ; plur. vōs (§ 474).
<b>winter-quarters</b> , hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur.	<b>young man</b> , iuvenis, -is, m. ; adulēscēns, -entis, m.
<b>wisely</b> , sapienter.	<b>your</b> , tuus, -a, -um ; vester, -tra, -trum.
<b>wish</b> , volō (§ 487) ; cupiō, 3.	<b>youth</b> , iuvenis, -is, m.
<b>with</b> , eum w. abl.	

(1)

---

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for  
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

**John Henry Wright, A.M., LL.D., Harvard University**

**Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D., Yale University**

**Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D., Princeton University**

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

---

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

---

#### A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

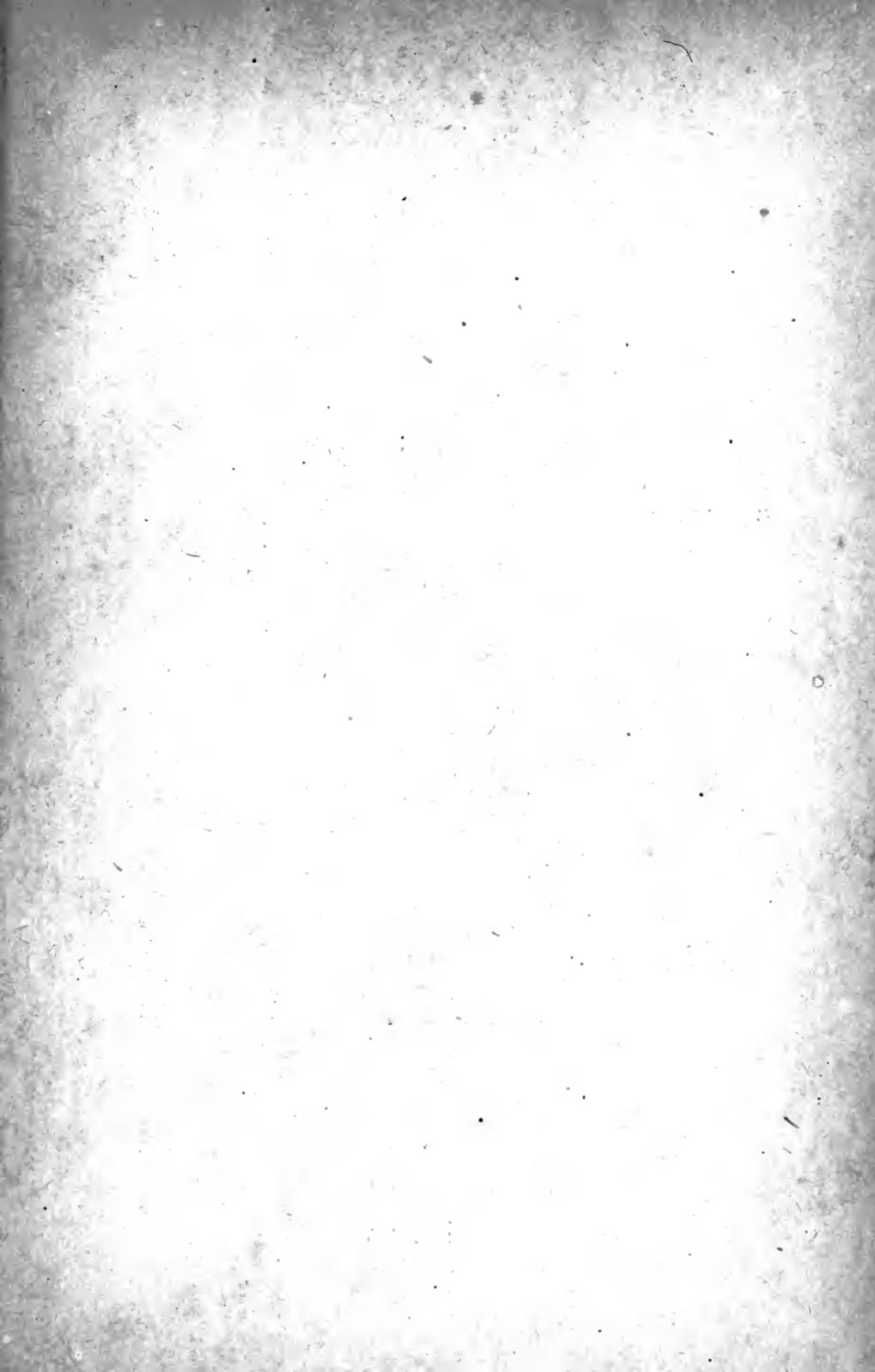
Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

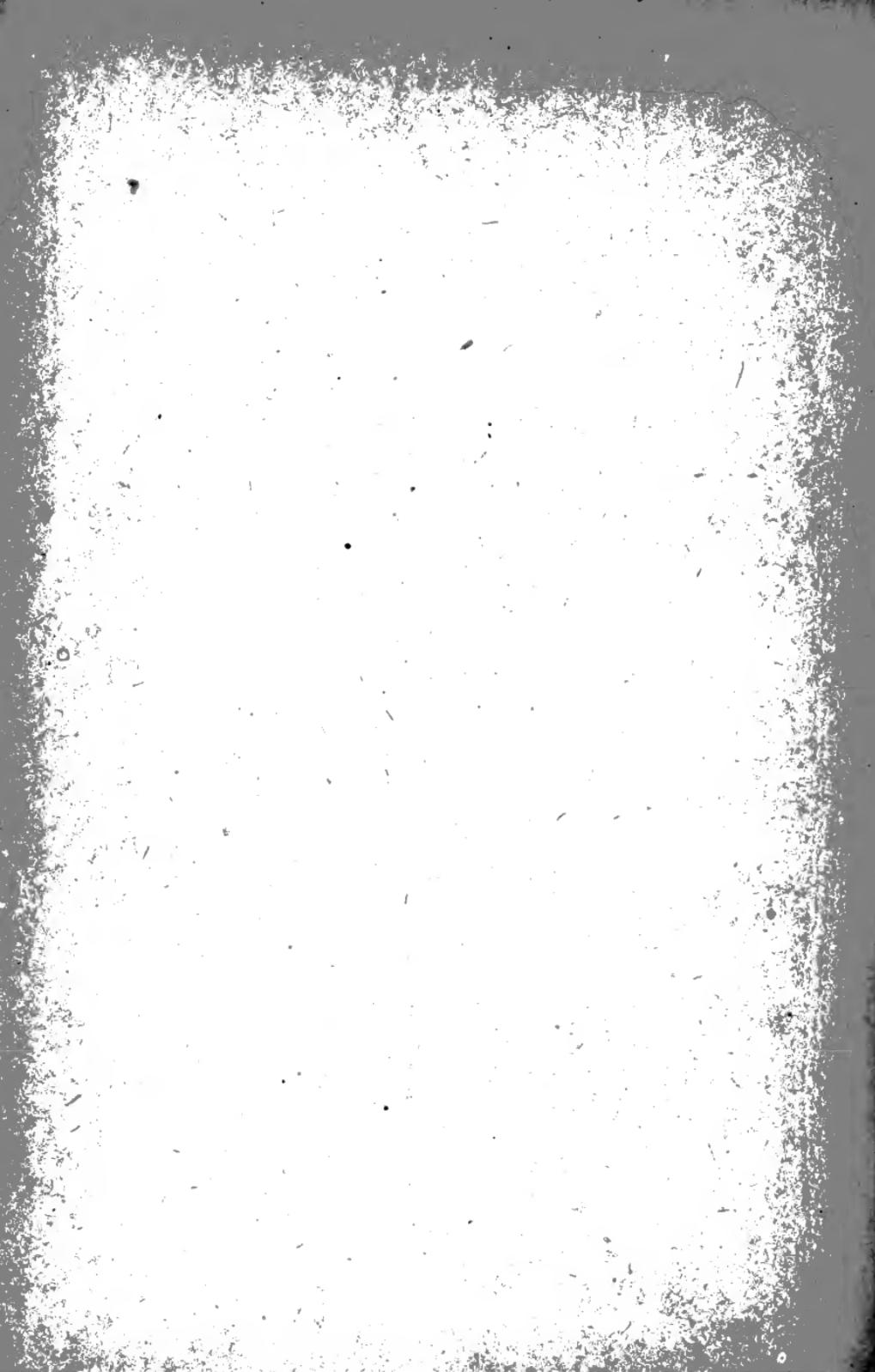
---

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---





YB 00420

M250121

760  
M1821

**THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY**

